

**UC-NRLF**



**\$B 257 368**

**UNIVERSITY**

**UNIVERSITY**

**UNIVERSITY**

REESE LIBRARY  
OF THE  
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA.

Received

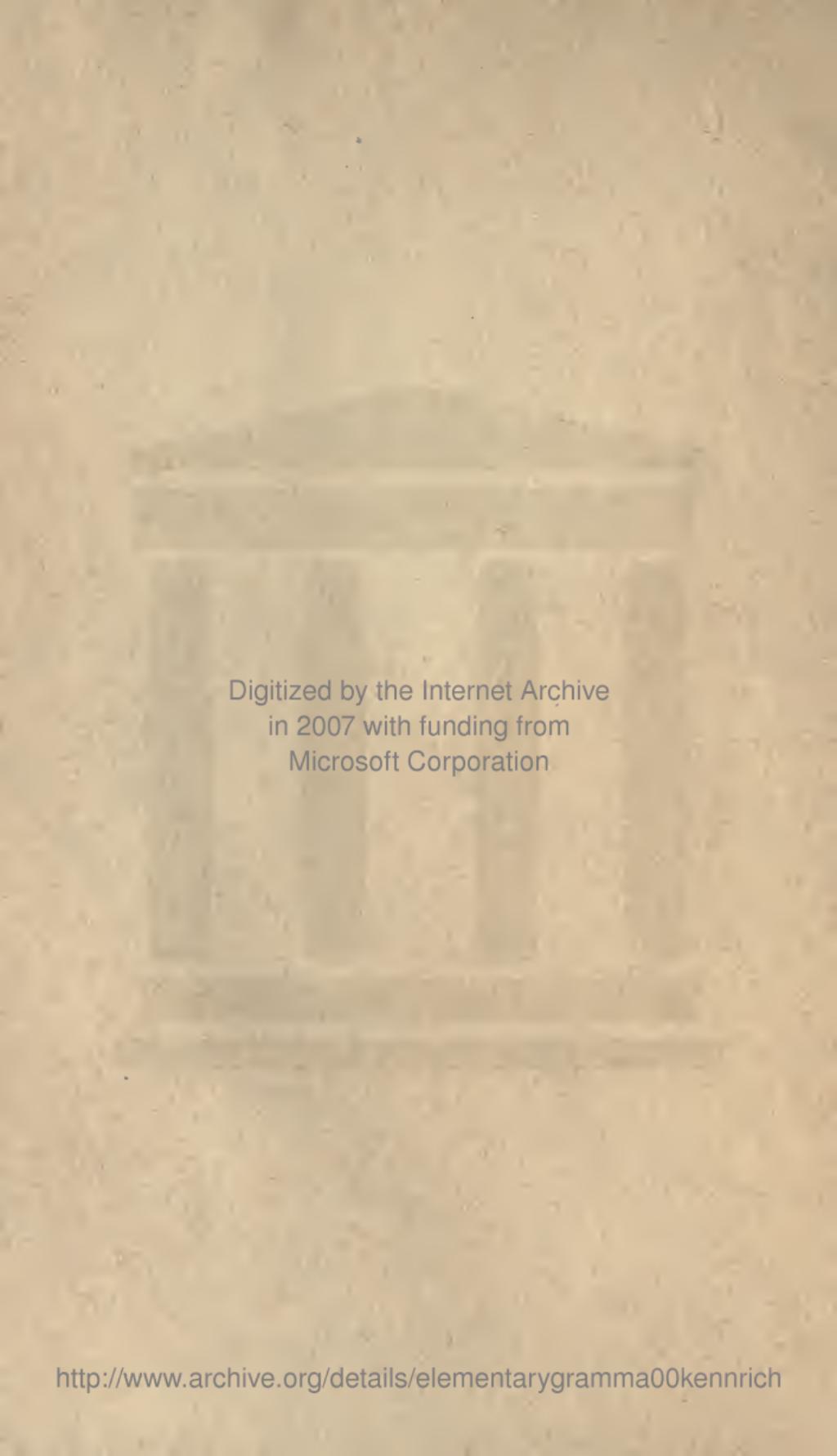
July

, 1900.

Accession No. 80368 . Class No. 760

K35



A very faint, light gray watermark-style illustration of a classical building with four columns and a triangular pediment occupies the background of the page.

Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation



I	ō	ī
II	ū	ē
III	ū	ē
IV	ē	ē

	I	II	III	IV	V	Singula
a	us	s.		us,ū	ēs	
al	ū	is		ūs	ēi	
al	ō	ē	ū	ūs,ū	ēē	
am	um		ēm,ēm;	um,ū	em	
a	ē	s		us,ū	ēs	
ā	ō	ē,ī		ū	e	

	I	II	III	Plural
V+V	al	ī	ēs,a,ia	
G	ārum	um,ōrum; um,ium		
D&A	ēs ābus	ēs,ibus	ibus	
PC.	ās	ōs; aū	ēs,ēs,a,ia	

IV	V
ēs us	ēs
um	ērum
ubus,ibus	ēbus
ēs,ū	ēs

# AN ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR

OF THE

## LATIN LANGUAGE

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS

BY BENJAMIN HALL KENNEDY, D.D.

CANON OF ELY

NEW EDITION



LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.

39 PATERNOSTER ROW, LONDON

NEW YORK AND BOMBAY

1897

80368

PA 2095

K46

## PREFACE

1897

TO

MAIN

### THE THIRD EDITION.

---

The distinctive features of this Elementary Latin Grammar, as compared with that of Lilly, may be stated as follows.

I. *Accidence*.—1. Quantity is briefly noticed in the first chapter, and the quantities of Latin words are marked throughout; thus the learner is impressed with the importance of pronunciation, and prepared for the study of Prosody. 2. The Adjective is set down as a distinct part of speech, instead of the Participle. 3. The use of the Pronoun *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*, in the declension of Nouns is dispensed with as unnecessary,—all that it is intended to teach being supplied by judicious Praxis. (See “the Child’s Latin Primer.”) 4. The term *Conjunctive* Mood is adopted from the best modern writers, its special uses (Potential, Subjunctive, &c.) being reserved for explanation in the Syntax. 5. The Participle, or Gerundive, in *dus* has been deprived of the name of *Future*, to which it certainly has no claim. 6. The Future Perfect in *ro* has been removed from the Conjunctive to its proper place in the Indicative Mood. 7. The Tenses are translated by one sign only, the other English signs being afterwards specially noticed. In like manner, the varying forms, *ere* for *erunt*, *re* for *ris*, *fui* for *sum*, &c., are omitted in the paradigms, and specially noticed in a subsequent place. It is hoped that the paradigms have been made easier to the learner by these changes, and also by the synoptical form in which they are printed. 8. The old memorial hexameters for genders of Nouns, flexion of Verbs, &c., are replaced by rhyming Latin lines

in octosyllabic rhythm, which are learnt (as the Author has found) with infinitely greater ease, remembered quite as well, and applied with at least equal readiness. In adopting this alteration, the Author has followed not only the dictates of his own judgment, but also the general practice of Continental School Grammars.

II. *Smaller Syntax and First Rules of Construing*.—These rules are intended to introduce the beginner to the practice of construing simple sentences, before he enters upon the further study of Syntax.

III. In the *larger Syntax*, the Author has applied the improved principles of modern philology to the memorial system of instruction. He has chosen Latin rules on account of their superior conciseness; and, while he has made the individual rules short and clear enough for memorial citation, he has also adhered as nearly as he might to philosophical accuracy in their arrangement; following the growth of the sentence from its simplest to its complex forms, and carefully explaining the distinction between the simple and compound sentence, as also between the several kinds of compound sentences. It is only by an accurate understanding of these distinctions that a learner can thoroughly master the doctrine of the Subjunctive mood, so eminently important in Latin; and, how easily and perfectly it can be mastered by the method here adopted, the Author knows from long experience. By the Second Part of this Syntax (§§ 180—200) the Author is willing that the merits of this Grammar should be tested: it being remembered that boys are not supposed to study those rules until they are practically grounded in the *Syntaxis Minor*. It has not been thought necessary to append a translation of the higher Syntax.

IV. The elementary rules of *Prosody* are thrown into the form of memorial Latin verses. This plan is appropriate to the subject itself, and suited to learners who have already made some progress in the language. Although it has been impossible in these verses to avoid occasional deviations from approved rhythm, yet, it will

be found that the objectionable lines do not form so much as one tenth part of the whole number; while of verses decidedly inharmonious there are only 5 or 6 out of 225; and even these may be turned to advantage, as examples of what should be avoided in rhythm.

The Author has never departed from the usual Grammatical Nomenclature, except for powerful reasons. In addition to the instances before mentioned, he wishes to draw the attention of scholars to the great advantage of the term *Copulative Verbs*, as applied by him to the class of Verbs (*sum, fio, videor, vocor, &c.*), which couple a Subject and a Nominal Predicate. He is not aware that any collective term has heretofore been invented for them and the Syntax rules affecting them have been consequently vague and loose. In order to appropriate here the word Copulative, the Author has given to *et, que, &c.*, the name of *Sociative Conjunctions*, and to *aut, vel, &c.*, that of *Dissociative*: terms also better in themselves than *Copulative* and *Disjunctive*.





# LATIN GRAMMAR.

---

---

## ACCIDENCE, OR WORD-FORMATION.

---

### SIGNS OF SPEECH.

§ 1. GRAMMAR teaches the rules of speech. Latin Grammar teaches the rules of the Latin speech, which was spoken by the ancient Romans.

§ 2. The Parts of Speech are Words: and the elements of Words are Letters.

§ 3. The Latin LETTERS are twenty-five, being the same as the English without W.

Capitals : A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.

Small : a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

§ 4. Six of the Letters are VOCALES, Vowels, self-sounding, a, e, i, o, u, y: the rest are CONSONANTES, Consonants, which cannot be sounded without a vowel.

§ 5. CONSONANTS are divided into Liquids, Double Consonants, and Mutes.

The Liquids are l, m, n, r; Double Consonants, x, z; the rest are Mutes.

§ 6. A SYLLABLE consists of one or more letters pronounced in one breath ; as *i-lēx*.

A DIPHTHONG is the sound of two vowels meeting in one syllable.

There are three usual diphthongs, *ae*, *oe*, *au*; and three seldom used, *ai*, *ei*, *eu*.

§ 7. Every Syllable is considered SHORT (˘) or LONG (˙) in quantity, according as its vowel is short or long.

A Vowel may be { Short by nature, . . . as *āmōr*.  
Long by nature, . . . as *ēsū*.  
Short by position before another vowel, . . . as *pīōs*.  
Long by position before two consonants or a double consonant, as *pērnōx*.

*Obs.* All diphthongs are long ; as *caūdāe*.

§ 8. PUNCTA, the Signs of Punctuation, or Stops, are the same in Latin as in English : Comma (,), Semicolon (;) ; Colon (:); Full Stop (.); Note of Interrogation (?), Note of Admiration (!).

## PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 9. THE PARTS OF SPEECH, or Words, are of three kinds :

I. NOMINA, Nouns ; which are threefold :

(1) NOMINA SUBSTANTIVA, Nouns Substantive, or names of persons and things : as, *Cāesār*, *Cæsar*; *ōvum*, *an egg*; *vīrtūs*, *virtue*.

(2) NOMINA ADJECTIVA, Nouns Adjective ; which express the qualities of persons and things : as, *clārūs*, *illustrious*; *grāndīs*, *large*; *lībēr*, *free*.

(3) PRONOMINA, Pronouns ; which are used to avoid

the frequent repetition of Substantives : as, ēgō, *I*; tū, *thou*; illē, *he*; quī, *who*.

**Note.** Names of persons and places are called Proper Names : other Substantives are called Common Nouns, or Appellatives.

**II. VERBA,** Verbs ; which express what persons and things do, suffer, or are : as, Cāsār věnīt, *Cæsar comes* ; vīrtūs laūdātūr, *virtue is praised* ; ūvum ēst grāndē, *the egg is large*.

**III. PARTICULÆ,** Particles ; which are four-fold :

- (1) **ADVERBIA,** Adverbs ; which express the qualities of verbs or adjectives : as, běně, *well* ; cělěritěr, *quickly* ; nūnc, *now*.
- (2) **PRÆPOSITIONES,** Prepositions ; which express the relations of nouns to each other : as, Cāsār ĩn Itāliam věnīt, *Cæsar comes into Italy*.
- (3) **CONJUNCTIONES,** Conjunctions ; which connect the other parts of speech : as, ēgō ēt Cāsār, *I and Cæsar* ; věnīt ūt laūdētūr, *he comes that he may be praised*.
- (4) **INTERJECTIONES,** Interjections ; words of exclamation : as, heū, ēheū, hei, vāe, *alas !* heūs, ho ! *O, oh !* ēn, ēccē, *lo !*

#### § 10. THEREFORE the PARTS of SPEECH are Eight ; viz.

1. <i>Substantive</i> ; 2. <i>Adjective</i> ; 3. <i>Pronoun</i> ; 4. <i>Verb</i> ; which are Flēxibiliā, <i>Flexible</i> , or, <i>declined</i> .	5. <i>Adverb</i> ; 6. <i>Preposition</i> ; 7. <i>Conjunction</i> ; 8. <i>Interjection</i> ; which are Inflextibiliā, <i>Inflexible</i> , or, <i>undeclined</i> .
--	--

**Note.** **FLEXIO,** Flexion, is the manner of changing the endings of words in order to show their relations to other words. The flexion of Nouns is called Dēclinatiō, *Declension* ; the flexion of Verbs Cōnjugatiō, *Conjugation*.

## DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 11. THE SUBSTANTIVE is declined by Number and Case.

**NUMERI**, the Numbers, are two :

I. **Singūlārīs**, *Singular*, which speaks of one, as, *Mägīstēr, a master.*

II. **Plūrālīs**, *Plural*, which speaks of more than one, as, *Mägīstrī, masters.*

**CASUS**, the Cases, are six :

I. **Nōminātīvūs**, the *Nominative* (or Subject) Case, usually goes before a Verb, and answers the question Who, or What? as, *Who teaches?* *Mägīstēr dōcēt, the master teaches.*

II. **Gēnītīvūs**, the *Genitive* Case, has the sign *of*, and answers the question, Whose, or Whereof? as, *Whose voice?* *Mägīstrī vōx, the voice of the master.*

III. **Dātīvūs**, the *Dative* Case, has the signs *to*, *for*, and answers the question, To or for Whom? To or for What? as, *To whom do I speak?* *Lōquōr mägīstrō, I speak to the master.*

IV. **Accūsātīvūs**, the *Accusative* (or Object) Case, follows the Verb, and answers the question, Whom or What? as, *Whom do I see?* *Vīdēō mägīstrum, I see the master.* It also follows Prepositions.

V. **Vōcātīvūs**, the *Vocative* Case, is of one called or spoken to : as, *O mägīstēr! O master!*

VI. **Ablātīvūs**, the *Ablative* Case, has the signs *by*, *with*, *from*, *in*, and others, and often follows Prepositions : as, *By whom am I taught?* *Dōcēōr ā mägīstrō, I am taught by the master.*

§ 12. There are Five DECLENSIONS of Latin Substantives, known by the endings of the Genitive Case Singular.

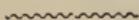
The Genitive Singular of the 1st Declension ends in *æ*.

”	”	2nd	”	”	i.
”	—	3rd	”	”	īs.
”		4th	”	”	ūs.
”		5th	”	”	ei.

§ 13. GENERA, the Genders, of Nouns are three :

- I. Māscūlinum, *Masculine*.
- II. Fēmīnīnum, *Feminine*.
- III. Neūtrum, *Neuter*.

*Note.* When a Noun can be either Masculine or Feminine, its Gender is called Cōmmūnē, *Common* : as, pārēns, *a parent*.



## FIRST DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES

§ 14. The Nominative of the First Declension ends in *a* : except a few Greek words, chiefly Proper Names, which end in *as*, *es*, or *e*.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Mēns-ā, <i>a table</i>	Mēns-āe, <i>tables</i>
Gen.	Mēns-āe, <i>of a table</i>	Mēns-ārum, <i>of tables</i>
Dat.	Mēns-āe, <i>to or for a table</i>	Mēns-īs, <i>to or for tables</i>
Acc.	Mēns-am, <i>a table</i>	Mēns-ās, <i>tables</i>
Voc.	Mēns-ā, <i>O table</i>	Mēns-āe, <i>O tables</i>
Abl.	Mēns-ā, <i>by, with, or from a table.</i>	Mēns-īs, <i>by, with, or from tables.</i>

*Obs.* 1. Some Nouns take *um* as well as *arum* in the Genitive Plural : as, cāelicōlum or cāelicōlārum.

*Obs.* 2. Dēā, *a goddess*, has Dative and Ablative Plural dēābūs. So filiā, *a daughter*, filiābūs.

*Note.* Greek Nouns in *as*, *es*, *e*, are thus declined :—

Nom.	Ænē-ās,	Gen.	āe,	Dat.	āe,	Acc.	ān or am,	Voc.	ā	Abl.	ā.
Nom.	Anchīs-ēs,	Gen.	āe,	Dat.	āe,	Acc.	ēn	Voc.	ē or ā,	Abl.	ā or ē
Nom.	Cybēl-ē,	Gen.	ēs,	Dat.	āe,	Acc.	ēn	Voc.	ē	Abl.	ē

## SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 15. The Nominative of the Second Declension ends in *us*  
or *er*, of the Masculine gender: in *um* of the Neuter  
gender.

## (a) Masculine Substantives.

## 1.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Dōmīn-ūs, <i>a lord</i>	Dōmīn-ī, <i>lords</i>
Gen.	Dōmīn-ī, <i>of a lord</i>	Dōmīn-ōrum, <i>of lords</i>
Dat.	Dōmīn-ō, <i>to or for a lord</i>	Dōmīn-īs, <i>to or for lords</i>
Acc.	Dōmīn-um, <i>a lord</i>	Dōmīn-ōs, <i>lords</i>
Voc.	Dōmīn-ě, <i>O lord</i>	Dōmīn-ī, <i>O lords</i>
Abl.	Dōmīn-ō, <i>by, with, or from a lord.</i>	Dōmīn-īs, <i>by, with, or from lords.</i>

## 2.

		<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Măgîstr-ěr, <i>a master</i>	Măgîstr-ī, <i>masters</i>
Gen.	Măgîstr-ī, <i>of a master</i>	Măgîstr-ōrum, <i>of masters</i>
Dat.	Măgîstr-ō, <i>to or for a master</i>	Măgîstr-īs, <i>to or for masters</i>
Acc.	Măgîstr-um, <i>a master</i>	Măgîstr-ōs, <i>masters</i>
Voc.	Măgîstr-ěr, <i>O master</i>	Măgîstr-ī, <i>O masters</i>
Abl.	Măgîstr-ō, <i>by, with, or from a master</i>	Măgîstr-īs, <i>by, with, or from masters.</i>

## 3.

		<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Pü-ěr, <i>a boy</i>	Pü-ěr-ī, <i>boys</i>
Gen.	Pü-ěr-ī, <i>of a boy</i>	Pü-ěr-ōrum, <i>of boys</i>
Dat.	Pü-ěr-ō, <i>to or for a boy</i>	Pü-ěr-īs, <i>to or for boys</i>
Acc.	Pü-ěr-um, <i>a boy</i>	Pü-ěr-ōs, <i>boys</i>
Voc.	Pü-ěr, <i>O boy</i>	Pü-ěr-ī, <i>O boys</i>
Abl.	Pü-ěr-ō, <i>by, with, or from a boy.</i>	Pü-ěr-īs, <i>by, with, or from boys.</i>

## (b) Neuter.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Rēgn-um, <i>a kingdom</i>	Rēgn-ă, <i>kingdoms</i>
Gen.	Rēgn-ī, <i>of a kingdom</i>	Rēgn-ōrum, <i>of kingdoms</i>
Dat.	Rēgn-ō, <i>to or for a kingdom</i>	Rēgn-īs, <i>to or for kingdoms</i>
Acc.	Rēgn-um, <i>a kingdom</i>	Rēgn-ă, <i>kingdoms</i>
Voc.	Rēgn-um, <i>O kingdom</i>	Rēgn-ă, <i>O kingdoms</i>
Abl.	Rēgn-ō, <i>by, with, or from a kingdom.</i>	Rēgn-īs, <i>by, with, or from kingdoms.</i>

*Obs.* 1. Most Substantives in *er* are declined like *mägistér*, dropping *e* in the Genitive. Those declined like *püér*, keeping *e*, are:

söcér, gěnér, ārmígér,  
ădültér, věspér, sīgnifér.

*Obs.* 2. *Libér*, *a book*, is declined like *mägistér*. *Libér*, *Bacchus*, and *līběři*, *children*, like *püér*.

*Obs.* 3. *Filiüs*, *gěněüs*, and Roman Proper Names in *īüs*, make the Vocative in *i*: as, *fīlī*, *O son*; *gěnī*, *O genius*; *Mērcūrī*, *O Mercurius*; *Cāi*, *O Caius*; *Pōmpēī*, *O Pompeius*.

*Obs.* 4. Genitives in *ii* were anciently contracted into *i*; as *īngěniūm*, *disposition*, *īngěnīlī*, *īngěnī*.

*Obs.* 5. Some Nouns take *um* as well as *orum* in the Genitive Plural: as, *nūmmum* or *nūmmōrum*.

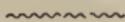
*Note 1.* *Děüs*, *God*, is thus declined: —

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	<i>Děüs</i> , <i>God</i>	<i>Dī</i> (seldom <i>Děī</i> or <i>Dīī</i> ), <i>Gods</i>
Gen.	<i>Děī</i> , <i>of God</i>	<i>Děōrum</i> or <i>Děūm</i> , <i>of Gods</i>
Dat.	<i>Děō</i> , <i>to God</i>	<i>Dīs</i> (seldom <i>Děīs</i> or <i>Dīīs</i> ), <i>to Gods</i>
Acc.	<i>Děum</i> , <i>God</i>	<i>Děōs</i> , <i>Gods</i>
Voc.	<i>Děüs</i> , <i>O God</i>	<i>Dī</i> (seldom <i>Děī</i> or <i>Dīī</i> ), <i>O Gods</i>
Abl.	<i>Děō</i> , <i>by, with, or from God</i> .	<i>Dīs</i> (seldom <i>Děīs</i> or <i>Dīīs</i> ), <i>by with, or from Gods</i> .

*Note 2.* *Vīr*, *a man*, Gen. *vīři*, &c. Plur. Nom. *vīrl*, &c.

*Note 3.* Greek words in *ös*, *ön*, are thus declined. —

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>
Nom.	<i>Dēłös</i>	Nom.	<i>Cōlōn</i>
Gen.	<i>Dēłī</i>	Gen.	<i>Cōlī</i>
Dat.	<i>Dēłō</i>	Dat.	<i>Cōlō</i>
Acc.	<i>Dēłōn</i> or <i>Dēłum</i>	Acc.	<i>Cōlōn</i>
Voc.	<i>Dēłě</i>	Voc.	<i>Cōlōn</i>
Abl.	<i>Dēłō</i> .	Abl.	<i>Cōlō</i> .



### THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 16. The Nominative of the Third Declension ends in *a*, *e*, *o*, *c*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*: the Genitive always ends in *is*, but is formed from the Nominative in many different ways.

## § 17. Formation of the Genitive in Third Declension.

Nom. Termination.

Gender.

A	-	-	Gen. adds <i>tis</i> : as, pōēmā, pōēmātīs. - - -	N.
E	-	-	Gen. <i>is</i> : as mārē, mārīs. - - - -	N.
O	-	-	Gen. adds <i>nīs</i> : as, lēō, lēōnīs; nātīō, nātīōnīs. But cārō, cārnīs. - - - -	M. F.
	DO, GO		Gen. <i>īnīs</i> : as, īrdō, īrdīnīs; vīrgō, vīrgīnīs. So hōmō, nēmō, tūrbō, Apōllō. But līgō, līgōnīs; Mācēdō, Mācēdōnīs. - -	F. M.
C	-	-	Lāc, lāctīs. - - - -	N.
L	-	-	Gen. adds <i>īs</i> : as, sōl, sōlīs. But mēl, mēllīs; fēl, fēllīs; sāl, sālīs. - - - -	N. M.
N	ĀN, ĒN, ĎN		Gen. adds <i>īs</i> : as, Tītān, Tītānīs; rēn. rēnīs. But sīndōn, sīndōnīs; so Gōrgōn; hālcēōn; with others. Some Proper Names make <i>ontīs</i> , as, Xēnōphōn, Xēnōphōntīs. - -	M. F.
	ĒN		Gen. <i>īnīs</i> : as, lūniēn, lūmīnīs: so pēctēn. -	N. M.
R	ĀR		Gen. ārīs : as, cālcār, cālcārīs; or ārīs, as, jūbār, jūbārīs; pār, pārīs. But fār, fārrīs.	N.
	ER		Gen. adds <i>īs</i> : as, cārcēr, cārcērīs; vēr, vērīs. - - - -	M. N.
	TER		Gen. casts out <i>e</i> and adds <i>īs</i> : as, pātēr, patrīs. (So also īmbēr, īmbrīs; and names of months in <i>er</i> ; as, Nōvēmbēr, Nōvēmbriš.) But Jūppitēr, Jōvīs; ītēr, ītinērīs; lātēr, lātērīs. - - - -	M. N.
	OR		Gen. īrīs : as, hōnōr, hōnōrīs; but īrbōr, īrbōrīs; īquōr, īquōrīs; mārmōr, mār- mōrīs; cōr, cōrdīs. - - - -	M. F. N
	UR		Gen. adds <i>īs</i> : as, fūlgūr, fūlgūrīs; fūr, fūrīs. Gen. īrīs : as, ībūr, ībōrīs. But jēcūr, jēcīnōrīs and jēcōrīs. - - - -	N. M.
S	ĀS		Gen. ītīs : as, ītās, ītātīs. But vās, vāsīs; vās, vādīs; mās, mārīs; ās, āssīs. - -	F. M. N
			Gen. īnīs : as, Pāllās, Pāllāntīs; so gīgās; ēlēphās; īdāmās. - - - -	M.
			Gen. īdīs : as, Pāllās, Pāllādīs. - -	F.
rs (parisyl.)	is : as, nūbēs, nūbīs.		- - -	F. M.
es (impari- syl.)	ītīs : as, mīlēs, mīlītīs : so hōspēs; sā- tēllīs; mērgēs.		- - -	M. F.
	ētīs : as, sēgēs, sēgētīs : so īntēprēs, tēgēs.		- - -	M. F.
	ētīs : as, quīēs, quīētīs.		- -	F.
	— idīs : as ōbsēs, ōbsīdīs.		- - -	M. F.
	— ēdīs : only pēs, pēdīs, with its com- pounds.		- - -	M. F.
	— ēdīs : only mērcēs, hērēs.		- -	F. M.
	But Cērēs, Cērērīs; ās, ārīs (N.); prās, prādīs.			

Nom. Termination.		Gender.
is (parisyl.)	Gen. <i>is</i> : as, āvīs, āvīs; āmnīs, āmnīs.	F. M.
is (impari-syl.)	Gen. <i>īdīs</i> : as, lāpīs, lāpīdīs: so cāssīs ( <i>helmet</i> ): tigrīs (also parisyll.). — ērīs : as cīnīs, cīnērīs; pūlvīs, pūl-vērīs. — ītīs : līlīs, lītīs : so Sāmnīs, Quīrīs, Dīs. But sānguīs, sānguīnīs; glīs, glīrīs.	M. F.
os	Gen. <i>ōtīs</i> : as, dōs, dōtīs: so cōs; sācērdōs. — ūrīs : as, flōs, flōrīs; ōs, ūrīs. But cūstōs, cūstōdīs; bōs, bōvīs; ōs, ūssīs.	M. F.
ūs	Gen. <i>ūtīs</i> : as, vīrtūs, vīrtūtīs: so sērvītūs; jūvēntūs; sēnēctūs; sālūs. — ūdīs : as, pālūs, pālūdīs : so incūs. But pēcūs, pēcūdīs. — ūrīs : as, tēllūs, tēllūrīs; and monosyl-lables; as rūs, mūs. But grūs, grūrīs; sūs, sūrīs.	M. N.
ūs	Gen. <i>ērīs</i> : as, vūlnūs, vūlnērīs; Vēnūs, Vēn-ērīs. — ūrīs : as, pēcūs, pēcōrīs.	N. F.
aūs	Gen. <i>aūdīs</i> : only laūs, laūdīs; fraūs, fraūdīs.	N.
ls, ns, rs	Gen. <i>tīs</i> for <i>s</i> : as, pūls, pūltīs; frōns, frōn-tīs; pārs, pārtīs. But frōns, frōndīs; glāns, glāndīs.	F. M.
bs, ps, ms	Gen. inserts <i>i</i> before <i>s</i> : as, trābs, trābīs; stīrps, stīrpīs; hīēms, hīēmīs. But cā-lēbs, cālibīs.	F. M.
cēps	Gen. <i>cīpīs</i> : as mūnīcēps, mūnīcīpīs. So prīncēps, aūcēps.	C.
I	Gen. <i>ītīs</i> : cāpūt, cāpītīs, and its compounds.	N.
X	Gen. <i>ācīs</i> : as, pāx, pācīs. But fāx, fācīs.	F.
ax	Gen. <i>īcīs</i> : as, jūdēx, jūdīcīs: so vīndēx; īndēx; ilēx; cārēx. But vībēx, vībīcīs; vērvēx, vērvēcīs; nēx, nēcīs. — ēgīs : as, lēx, lēgīs. But grēx, grēgīs; rēmēx, rēmīgīs.	M. F.
ex	Remark sēnēx, sēnīs; sūpēllēx, sūpēllēctīlīs.	M. F.
ix	Gen. <i>īcīs</i> : as, cōrnīx, cōrnīcīs: so phēnīx. — īcīs : as, cālīx, cālīcīs: so fōrnīx. But strīx, strīgīs; nīx, nīvīs.	F.
ox	Gen. <i>ōcīs</i> : as, vōx, vōcīs. But nōx, nōcīs.	M. F.
ux	Gen. <i>ūcīs</i> : as, nūx, nūcīs. But lūx, lūcīs; Pöllūx, Pöllūcīs; cōnjūx, cōnjūgīs.	F. M.
yx	Gen. <i>ÿgīs</i> : as, Phrȳx, Phrȳgīs. Some have ÿcīs, ycīs.	F. M.
nx, rx	Gen. <i>cīs</i> or <i>gīs</i> : as, līnx, līncīs; ārx, ārcīs; Sphīnx, Sphīngīs.	F.

*Obs.* Parasyllable is a Noun having as many syllables in the Gen. Sing. as in the Nom.; Imparasyllable a Noun having more syllables in the Gen. Sing. than in the Nom.

## § 18.

## EXAMPLES IN THE THIRD DECLENSION.

A. *Masculine and Feminine Substantives.*

(a) Parisyllables; or not increasing in the Genitive Singular.

## 1.

*Sing.*

Nom.	Nūb-ēs, <i>a cloud</i>	Plur.	Nūb-ēs, <i>clouds</i>
Gen.	Nūb-īs, <i>of a cloud</i>		Nūb-īum, <i>of clouds</i>
Dat.	Nūb-ī, <i>to or for a cloud</i>		Nūb-ībūs, <i>to or for clouds</i>
Acc.	Nūb-em, <i>a cloud</i>		Nūb-ēs, <i>clouds</i>
Voc.	Nūb-ēs, <i>O cloud</i>		Nūb-ēs, <i>O clouds</i>
Abl.	Nūb-ě, <i>by, with, or from a cloud.</i>		Nūb-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from clouds.</i>

## 2.

Nom.	Cīv-īs, <i>a citizen</i>	Plur.	Cīv-ēs, <i>citizens</i>
Gen.	Cīv-īs, <i>of a citizen</i>		Cīv-īum, <i>of citizens</i>
Dat.	Cīv-ī, <i>to or for a citizen</i>		Cīv-ībūs, <i>to or for citizens</i>
Acc.	Cīv-em, <i>a citizen</i>		Cīv-ēs, <i>citizens</i>
Voc.	Cīv-īs, <i>O citizen</i>		Cīv-ēs, <i>O citizens</i>
Abl.	Cīv-ě, <i>by, with, or from a citizen.</i>		Cīv-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from citizens.</i>

(b) Imparisyllables; or increasing in the Genitive Singular.

## 1.

*Sing.*

Nom.	Lěō, <i>a lion</i>	Plur.	Lěōn-ēs, <i>lions</i>
Gen.	Lěōn-īs, <i>of a lion</i>		Lěōn-um, <i>of lions</i>
Dat.	Lěōn-ī, <i>to or for a lion</i>		Lěōn-ībūs, <i>to or for lions</i>
Acc.	Lěōn-em, <i>a lion</i>		Lěōn-ēs, <i>lions</i>
Voc.	Lěō, <i>O lion</i>		Lěōn-ēs, <i>O lions</i>
Abl.	Lěōn-ě, <i>by, with, or from a lion.</i>		Lěōn-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from lions.</i>

## 2.

Nom.	Vīrgō, <i>a virgin</i>	Plur.	Vīrgīn-ēs, <i>virgins</i>
Gen.	Vīrgīn-īs, <i>of a virgin</i>		Vīrgīn-um, <i>of virgins</i>
Dat.	Vīrgīn-ī, <i>to or for a virgin</i>		Vīrgīn-ībūs, <i>to or for virgins</i>
Acc.	Vīrgīn-em, <i>a virgin</i>		Vīrgīn-ēs, <i>virgins</i>
Voc.	Vīrgō, <i>O virgin</i>		Vīrgīn-ēs, <i>O virgins</i>
Abl.	Vīrgīn-ě, <i>by, with, or from a virgin.</i>		Vīrgīn-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from virgins.</i>

## 3.

*Sing.*

Nom.	<i>Ætās, an age</i>
Gen.	<i>Ætāt-ís, of an age</i>
Dat.	<i>Ætāt-ī, to or for an age</i>
Acc.	<i>Ætāt-em, an age</i>
Voc.	<i>Æt-ās, O age</i>
Abl.	<i>Ætāt-ě, by, with, or from an age.</i>

*Plur.*

<i>Ætāt-ēs, ages</i>
<i>Ætāt-um, of ages</i>
<i>Ætāt-ibūs, to or for ages</i>
<i>Ætāt-ēs, ages</i>
<i>Ætāt-ēs, O ages</i>
<i>Ætāt-ibūs, by, with, or from ages.</i>

## 4.

Nom.	<i>Cōměs, a companion</i>
Gen.	<i>Cōmít-ís, of a companion</i>
Dat.	<i>Cōmít-ī, to or for a companion</i>
Acc.	<i>Cōmít-em, a companion</i>
Voc.	<i>Cōměs, O companion</i>
Abl.	<i>Cōmít-ě, by, with, or from a companion.</i>

<i>Cōmít-ēs, companions</i>
<i>Cōmít-um, of companions</i>
<i>Cōmít-ibūs, to or for companions</i>
<i>Cōmít-ēs, companions</i>
<i>Cōmít-ēs, O companions</i>
<i>Cōmít-ibūs, by, with, or from companions.</i>

## 5.

Nom.	<i>Sērpěns, a serpent</i>
Gen.	<i>Sērpěnt-ís, of a serpent</i>
Dat.	<i>Sērpěnt-ī, to or for a serpent</i>
Acc.	<i>Sērpěnt-em, a serpent</i>
Voc.	<i>Sērpěns, O serpent</i>
Abl.	<i>Sērpěnt-ě, by, with, or from a serpent.</i>

<i>Sērpěnt-ēs, serpents</i>
<i>Sērpěnt-um, of serpents</i>
<i>Sērpěnt-ibūs, to or for serpents</i>
<i>Sērpěnt-ēs, serpents</i>
<i>Sērpěnt-ēs, O serpents</i>
<i>Sērpěnt-ibūs, by, with, or from serpents.</i>

## B. Neuter Substantives.

(a) Plural *ia.*

## 1.

*Sing.*

Nom.	<i>Mär-ě, the sea</i>
Gen.	<i>Mär-ís, of the sea</i>
Dat.	<i>Mär-ī, to or for the sea</i>
Acc.	<i>Mär-ě, the sea</i>
Voc.	<i>Mär-ě, O sea</i>
Abl.	<i>Mär-ī, by, with, or from the sea.</i>

*Plur.*

<i>Mär-īă, seas</i>
<i>Mär-ium, of seas</i>
<i>Mär-ibūs, to or for seas</i>
<i>Mär-īă, seas</i>
<i>Mär-īă, O seas</i>
<i>Mär-ibūs, by, with, or from seas.</i>

## 2.

Nom.	<i>Anímäl, an animal</i>
Gen.	<i>Anímäl-ís, of an animal</i>
Dat.	<i>Anímäl-ī, to or for an animal</i>
Acc.	<i>Anímäl, an animal</i>
Voc.	<i>Anímäl, O animal</i>
Abl.	<i>Anímäl-ī, by, with, or from an animal.</i>

<i>Anímäl-īă, animals</i>
<i>Anímäl-ium, of animals</i>
<i>Anímäl-ibūs, to or for animals</i>
<i>Anímäl-īă, animals</i>
<i>Anímäl-īă, O animals</i>
<i>Anímäl-ibūs, by, with, or from animals.</i>

(b) Plural *a.*

## 1.

*Sing.*

Nom.	Opěs, <i>a work</i>
Gen.	Opěr-ís, <i>of a work</i>
Dat.	Opěr-í, <i>to or for a work</i>
Acc.	Op-ús, <i>a work</i>
Voc.	Op-ús, <i>O work</i>
Abl.	Opěr-ě, <i>by, with, or from a work.</i>

*Plur.*

Opěr-ă, <i>works</i>
Opěr-um, <i>of works</i>
Opěr-ibüs, <i>to or for works</i>
Opěr-ă, <i>works</i>
Opěr-ă, <i>O works</i>
Opěr-ibüs, <i>by, with, or from works.</i>

## 2.

Nom.	Fülměn, <i>lightning</i>
Gen.	Fülměn-ís, <i>of lightning</i>
Dat.	Fülměn-í, <i>to or for lightning</i>
Acc.	Fülměn, <i>lightning</i>
Voc.	Fülměn, <i>O lightning</i>
Abl.	Fülměn-ě, <i>by, with, or from lightning.</i>

Fülměn-ă, <i>lightnings</i>
Fülměn-um, <i>of lightnings</i>
Fülměn-ibüs, <i>to or for lightnings</i>
Fülměn-ă, <i>lightnings</i>
Fülměn-ă, <i>O lightnings</i>
Fülměn-ibüs, <i>by, with, or from lightnings.</i>

~~~~~

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

§ 19. The Nominative of Masculine and Feminine Substantives of the Fourth Declension ends in *us*; that of Neuter Substantives in *u*.

## 1.

*Sing.*

|      |                                          |
|------|------------------------------------------|
| Nom. | Grăd-ús, <i>a step</i>                   |
| Gen. | Grăd-ús, <i>of a step</i>                |
| Dat. | Grăd-úi, <i>to or for a step</i>         |
| Acc. | Grăd-uin, <i>a step</i>                  |
| Voc. | Grăd-ús, <i>O step</i>                   |
| Abl. | Grăd-ū, <i>by, with, or from a step.</i> |

*Plur.*

|                                           |
|-------------------------------------------|
| Grăd-ús, <i>steps</i>                     |
| Grăd-uum, <i>of steps</i>                 |
| Grăd-ibüs, <i>to or for steps</i>         |
| Grăd-ús, <i>steps</i>                     |
| Grăd-ús, <i>O steps</i>                   |
| Grăd-ibüs, <i>by, with, or from steps</i> |

## 2.

|      |                                         |
|------|-----------------------------------------|
| Nom. | Gěn-ū, <i>a knee</i>                    |
| Gen. | Gěn-ús, <i>of a knee</i>                |
| Dat. | Gěn-ū, <i>to or for a knee</i>          |
| Acc. | Gěn-ū, <i>a knee</i>                    |
| Voc. | Gěn-ū, <i>O knee</i>                    |
| Abl. | Gěn-ū, <i>by, with, or from a knee.</i> |

|                                           |
|-------------------------------------------|
| Gěn-ă, <i>knees</i>                       |
| Gěn-um, <i>of knees</i>                   |
| Gěn-ibüs, <i>to or for knees.</i>         |
| Gěn-ă, <i>knees</i>                       |
| Gěn-ă, <i>O knees</i>                     |
| Gěn-ibüs, <i>by, with, or from knees.</i> |

*Obs. 1.* The following words take *tibūs* instead of *ibūs* in the Dative and Ablative Plural :

|                         |                |
|-------------------------|----------------|
| Arcūs, trībūs, ārtūs,   | Quērcūs, ācūs, |
| Spēcūs, pōrtūs, pārtūs, | Vērū, lācūs.   |

*Obs. 2.* Dōmūs is peculiarly declined. See Notes.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

§ 20. The Nominative ends in *es*.

|      | <i>Sing.</i>                            | <i>Plur.</i>                                |
|------|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Nom. | Faci-ēs, <i>a face</i>                  | Faci-ēs, <i>faces</i>                       |
| Gen. | Faci-ēi, <i>of a face</i>               | Faci-ērum, <i>of faces</i>                  |
| Dat. | Faci-ēi, <i>to or for a face</i> .      | Faci-ēbūs, <i>to or for faces</i>           |
| Acc. | Faci-ein, <i>a face</i>                 | Faci-ēs, <i>faces</i>                       |
| Voc. | Faci-ēs, <i>O face</i>                  | Faci-ēs, <i>O faces</i>                     |
| Abl. | Faci-ē, <i>by, with, or from a face</i> | Faci-ēbūs, <i>by, with, or from faces</i> . |

## ON SOME CASES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

### § 21.

*I*m prō em Accūsātīvō,  
*I* prō e īn Ablātīvō  
 Dānt būris, cūcūmis, āmūssis,  
*R*āvis, sītis, vīs, ēt tūssis ;  
 Et flūminā quē claūdīt is,  
 Ut Albīs, Līris, Tīberīs.  
*I*m vēl em Accūsātīvō,  
*I* vēl e īn Ablātīvō [clāvīs,  
 Dānt nēptis, felris, mēssis,  
*P*ūppis, pēlvīs, rēstis, nāvīs,  
*S*ēcūris, tūrris ; addē hīs  
*S*ēmēntis ātquē strīgilis.

### § 22.

*I* Singūlāris Ablātīvī,  
*Ia* Plūrālis Nōminātīvī  
 Neūtrā gaūdēnt fīngērē,  
 Quē ēxēūnt īn al, ar, e.  
*H*īs ēxcēptā sūnt īn ar,  
*B*āccār, nēctār, jūbār, fār.

### § 23.

*Ium* prō um quē ēffērūnt  
*Plūrālī* Gēnitīvō sūnt :  
 (1) *I* fōrmāntiā Ablātīvō .  
 (2) Nōn crēscēntiā Gēnitīvō :  
 (3) Plērāquē īn x vēl s  
 Pōst cōnsōnāntem pōsītis :  
 (4) Cum ālīs Mōnōsyllābīs :  
*M*ās, mūs, nīx, nōx, ōs  
 (ōssis), cōs,  
*S*āl, sōl, cōr, pāx, glīs  
 lis, et dōs.

Hīs ēxcipiēndā sūnt  
 (Quē um libēntēr ēffērūnt),  
*V*ātēs, sēnēx, pātēr, pānīs.  
 Et āccipītēr, ēt cānīs,  
*F*rātēr, mātēr, jūvēnīs,  
 Et sāpiūs āpis, vōlūcrīs

## DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 24. A. Adjectives of THREE TERMINATIONS in *us*, *a*, *um*, or *er*, *a*, *um*, are declined in the Masculine and Neuter Genders like Substantives of the Second Declension, and in the Feminine Gender like Substantives of the First Declension : as, *bōnūs*, *good* ; *nīgēr*, *black* ; *tēnēr*, *tender*.

| Singular.          |                 |                 | Plural.           |                   |                   |
|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| M.                 | F.              | N.              | M.                | F.                | N.                |
| N. <i>Bōn-ūs</i>   | <i>bōn-ā</i>    | <i>bōn-um</i>   | <i>Bōn-ī</i>      | <i>bōn-āe</i>     | <i>bōn-ā</i>      |
| G. <i>Bōn-ī</i>    | <i>bōn-āe</i>   | <i>bōn-ī</i>    | <i>Bōn-ōrum</i>   | <i>bōn-ārum</i>   | <i>bōn-ōrum</i>   |
| D. <i>Bōn-ō</i>    | <i>bōn-āe</i>   | <i>bōnō</i>     | <i>Bōn-īs</i>     | <i>bōn-īs</i>     | <i>bōn-īs</i>     |
| A. <i>Bōn-um</i>   | <i>bōn-am</i>   | <i>bōn-um</i>   | <i>Bōn-ōs</i>     | <i>bōn-ās</i>     | <i>bōn-ā</i>      |
| V. <i>Bōn-ě</i>    | <i>bōn-ā</i>    | <i>bōn-um</i>   | <i>Bōn-ī</i>      | <i>bōn-āe</i>     | <i>bōn-ā</i>      |
| A. <i>Bōn-ō</i>    | <i>bōn-ā</i>    | <i>bōnō</i>     | <i>Bōn-īs</i>     | <i>bōn-īs</i>     | <i>bōn-īs</i>     |
| N. <i>Nīg-ēr</i>   | <i>nigr-ā</i>   | <i>nigr-um</i>  | <i>Nigr-ī</i>     | <i>nigr-āe</i>    | <i>nigr-ā</i>     |
| G. <i>Nigr-ī</i>   | <i>nigr-āe</i>  | <i>nigr-ī</i>   | <i>Nigr-ōrum</i>  | <i>nigr-ārum</i>  | <i>nigr-ōrum</i>  |
| D. <i>Nigr-ō</i>   | <i>nigr-āe</i>  | <i>nigr-ō</i>   | <i>Nigr-īs</i>    | <i>nigr-īs</i>    | <i>nigr-īs</i>    |
| A. <i>Nigr-um</i>  | <i>nigr-am</i>  | <i>nigr-um</i>  | <i>Nigr-ōs</i>    | <i>nigr-ās</i>    | <i>nigr-ā</i>     |
| V. <i>Nig-ēr</i>   | <i>nigr-ā</i>   | <i>nigr-um</i>  | <i>Nigrī</i>      | <i>nigr-āe</i>    | <i>nigr-ā</i>     |
| A. <i>Nigr-ō</i>   | <i>nigr-ā</i>   | <i>nigr-ō</i>   | <i>Nigr-īs</i>    | <i>nigr-īs</i>    | <i>nigr-īs</i>    |
| N. <i>Tēnēr</i>    | <i>tēnēr-ā</i>  | <i>tēnēr-um</i> | <i>Tēnēr-ī</i>    | <i>tēnēr-āe</i>   | <i>tēnēr-ā</i>    |
| G. <i>Tēnēr-ī</i>  | <i>tēnēr-āe</i> | <i>tēnēr-ī</i>  | <i>Tēnēr-ōrum</i> | <i>tēnēr-ārum</i> | <i>tēnēr-ōrum</i> |
| D. <i>Tēnēr-ō</i>  | <i>tēnēr-āe</i> | <i>tēnēr-ō</i>  | <i>Tēnēr-īs</i>   | <i>tēnēr-īs</i>   | <i>tēnēr-īs</i>   |
| A. <i>Tēnēr-um</i> | <i>tēnēr-am</i> | <i>tēnēr-um</i> | <i>Tēnēr-ōs</i>   | <i>tēnēr-ās</i>   | <i>tēnēr-ā</i>    |
| V. <i>Tēnēr</i>    | <i>tēnēr-ā</i>  | <i>tēnēr-um</i> | <i>Tēnēr-ī</i>    | <i>tēnēr-āe</i>   | <i>tēnēr-ā</i>    |
| A. <i>Tēnēr-ō</i>  | <i>tēnēr-ā</i>  | <i>tēnēr-ō</i>  | <i>Tēnēr-īs</i>   | <i>tēnēr-īs</i>   | <i>tēnēr-īs</i>   |

*Obs.* The Adjectives declined like *tēnēr* are, *āspēr*, *lācēr*, *lībēr*, *mīsēr*, *prōspēr*, and the compounds of *fērō* and *gērō*, as *aūrifēr*, *bēllīgēr*. *Dēxtēr* is declined both ways.

§ 25. B. Adjectives with Two TERMINATIONS or ONE TERMINATION follow the Third Declension of Substantives : as, *trīstīs*, *sad* ; *fēlīx*, *happy* ; *īngēns*, *huge* ; *mēliōr*, *better*.

| Singular.          |                |                 |               |                      |               |
|--------------------|----------------|-----------------|---------------|----------------------|---------------|
| M. F.              | N.             | M. F.           | N.            | M. F.                | N.            |
| N. <i>Trīst-īs</i> | <i>trīst-ě</i> | <i>Fēl-īx</i>   |               | <i>Ingēns</i>        |               |
| G. <i>Trīst-īs</i> |                | <i>Fēlīc-īs</i> |               | <i>Ingēnt-īs</i>     |               |
| D. <i>Trīst-ī</i>  |                | <i>Fēlīc-ī</i>  |               | <i>Ingēnt-ī</i>      |               |
| A. <i>Trīst-em</i> | <i>trīst-ě</i> | <i>Fēlīc-em</i> | <i>fēl-īx</i> | <i>Ingēnt-em</i>     | <i>Ingēns</i> |
| V. <i>Trīst-īs</i> | <i>trīst-ě</i> | <i>Fēl-īx</i>   |               | <i>Ingēns</i>        |               |
| A. <i>Trīst-ī</i>  |                | <i>Fēlīc-ī</i>  |               | <i>Ingēnt-ī or ē</i> |               |

*Plural.*

|    |            |          |            |          |             |           |
|----|------------|----------|------------|----------|-------------|-----------|
| N. | Trīst-ēs   | trīst-īā | Fēlīc-ēs   | fēlīc-īā | Ingēnt-ēs   | īngēnt-īā |
| G. | Trīst-īum  |          | Fēlīc-īum  |          | Ingēnt-īum  |           |
| D. | Trīst-ībūs |          | Fēlīc-ībūs |          | Ingēnt-ībūs |           |
| A. | Trīst-ēs   | trīst-īā | Fēlīc-ēs   | fēlīc-īā | Ingēnt-ēs   | īngēnt-īā |
| V. | Trīst-ēs   | trīst-īā | Fēlīc-ēs   | fēlīc-īā | Ingēnt-ēs   | īngēnt-īā |
| A. | Trīst-ībūs |          | Fēlīc-ībūs |          | Ingēnt-ībūs |           |

*Singular.*

|      | M. F.         | N.      | M. F.       | N.       |
|------|---------------|---------|-------------|----------|
| Nom. | Mělī-ōr       | mělī-ūs | Mělīōr-ēs   | mělīōr-ă |
| Gen. | Mělīōr-īs     |         | Mělīōr-um   |          |
| Dat. | Mělīōr-ī      |         | Mělīōr-ībūs |          |
| Acc. | Mělīōr-em     | mělī-ūs | Mělīōr-ēs   | mělīōr-ă |
| Voc. | Mělī-ōr       | mělī-ūs | Mělīōr-ēs   | mělīōr-ă |
| Abl. | Mělīōr-ě or ī |         | Mělīōr-ībūs |          |

*Obs.* Adjectives in *er*, following the Third Declension of Substantives, have Three Terminations in the Nom. Sing.: as, ācēr, ācēr-īā, ācēr-ě, sharp; cēlēr, cēlēr-īs, cēlēr-ě, swift.

*Sing.*

|      | M.     | F.      | N.      | M.       | F.       | N.       |
|------|--------|---------|---------|----------|----------|----------|
| Nom. | Acēr   | ācēr-īs | ācēr-ě  | Cēlēr    | cēlēr-īs | cēlēr- ī |
| Gen. | Acr-is | ācēr-īs | ācēr-īs | Cēlēr-īs | cēlēr-īs | cēlēr-īs |
| Dat. | Acr-ī  | ācēr-ī  | ācēr-ī  | Cēlēr-ī  | cēlēr-ī  | cēlēr-ī  |
| Acc. | Acr-em | ācēr-em | ācēr-ě  | Cēlēr-em | cēlēr-em | cēlēr- ē |
| Voc. | Acēr   | ācēr-īs | ācēr-ě  | Cēlēr    | cēlēr-īs | cēlēr- ē |
| Abl. | Acr-ī  | ācēr-ī  | ācēr-ī  | Cēlēr-ī  | cēlēr-ī  | cēlēr- ī |

The Plural terminations are like those of trīstīs; except cēlērum, Genitive Plural of cēlēr.

## § 26. The following are irregularly declined in the Singular

*Unūs, one.*

|      | M.    | F.     | N.    | M.     | F.      | N.     |
|------|-------|--------|-------|--------|---------|--------|
| Nom. | Un-ūs | ūn-ă   | ūn-um | Utr-ēr | utr-ă   | utr-um |
| Gen. |       | Un-īus |       |        | Utr-īus |        |
| Dat. |       | Un-ī   |       |        | Utr-ī   |        |
| Acc. | Un-um | ūn-am  | ūn-um | Utr-um | utr-am  | utr-um |
| Abl. | Un-ō  | ūn-ā   | ūn-ō  | Utr-ō  | utr-ā   | utr-ō  |

*Allūs, another.*

|      | M.     | F.     | N.     | M.       | F.        | N.       |
|------|--------|--------|--------|----------|-----------|----------|
| Nom. | All-ūs | ālī-ă  | ālī-ūd | Altēr    | āltēr-ă   | āltēr-um |
| Gen. |        | Al-īus |        |          | Altēr-īus |          |
| Dat. |        | Al-ī-ī |        |          | Altēr-ī   |          |
| Acc. | All-um | ālī-am | ālī-ūd | Altēr-um | āltēr-am  | āltēr-um |
| Abl. | All-ō  | ālī-ā  | ālī-ō  | Altēr-ō  | āltēr-ā   | āltēr-ō  |

*Altēr, one of two.*

*Obs.* Like ūnūs are declined ūllūs, any; nūllūs, none; sōlūs, alone; tōtūs, whole. Like ūtēr: neūtēr, neither; ūtērquē, each; ūtēr-vīs, utērlibčt, which you will.

## COMPARISON.

§ 27. THE ADJECTIVE is compared by three Degrees, the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative: as,

| Pos.                 | Comp.                   | Sup.                         |
|----------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| Dūrūs, <i>hard</i> ; | dūriōr, <i>harder</i> ; | dūrīssimūs, <i>hardest</i> ; |

The Comparative is formed from the Positive by changing *i* or *is* of the Genitive into *ior*.

The Superlative is formed from the Positive by changing *i* or *is* of the Genitive into *issimus*: as,

| Pos.                             | Comp.     | Sup.          |
|----------------------------------|-----------|---------------|
| Dūrūs, <i>hard</i> , Gen. dūr-ī  | dūr-īōr   | dūr-īssimūs   |
| Brēvīs, <i>short</i> , " brēv-īs | brēv-īōr  | brēv-īssimūs  |
| Aūdāx, <i>bold</i> , " aūdāc-īs  | aūdāc-īōr | aūdāc-īssimūs |

§ 28. EXCEPTIONS.

(1) Adjectives in *er* form the Superlative by adding *-rimus* to the Nominative: as, pūlchér, *beautiful*, Comp. pūlchr-īōr, Sup. pūlchér-rimūs; cělér, *swift*, cělē-riōr, cělērrimūs. So větūs, *ancient*, (Gen. větēris,) Sup. větērrimūs.

(2) The following form the Superlative in *illimūs*:

făciliš, difficiiliš,  
similiš, dissimiliš,  
grăciliš, et humiš.

(3) Adjectives in dīcūs, fīcūs, völūs, form their Comparatives and Superlatives as if from Positives in dīcēns, fīcēns, völēns: as,

mălēdīcūs, *slenderous*, mălēdīcēntiōr, mălēdīcēntissimūs,  
bēnēfīcūs, *beneficent*, bēnēfīcēntiōr, bēnēfīcēntissimūs,  
bēnēvölūs, *benevolent*, bēnēvölēntiōr, bēnēvölēntissimūs.

(4) If the Positive has a vowel before *us*, the Comparative and Superlative are formed by prefixing the Adverbs măgīs, *more*, măximē, *most*, to the Positive: as, ārdū-ūs, *steep*; măgīs ārdūūs, *more steep*; măximē ārdūūs, *most steep*. But those in *quus* are compared as usual: as, āntīquūs, *ancient*, āntīquiōr, āntīquissimūs. So strēnūūs, *vigorous*, forms Sup. strēnūissimūs; piūs, *pious*, piissimūs.

## § 29.

## IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

| Pos.                      | Comp.                | Sup.                      |
|---------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| Bōnūs, <i>good</i>        | měliör               | ōptīmūs                   |
| Mälūs, <i>bad</i>         | pējör                | pēssimūs                  |
| Māgnūs, <i>great</i>      | mājör                | māxīmūs                   |
| Pārvūs, <i>small</i>      | mīnör                | mīnīmūs                   |
| Mūltūs, <i>much</i>       | plūs                 | plūrīmūs                  |
| Nēquam, <i>wicked</i>     | nēquīlōr             | nēquīssīmūs               |
| Dīvēs, <i>rich</i>        | dīvītīlōr or dītīlōr | dīvītīssīmūs or dītīssīmē |
| Sēnēx, <i>old</i>         | sēnīlōr              | (nātū māxīmūs)            |
| Jīvēnīs, <i>young</i>     | jūnīlōr              | (nātū mīnīmūs)            |
| Extērūs, <i>outward</i>   | ēxtērīlōr            | ēxtrēmūs and īmūs         |
| Infērūs, <i>low</i>       | īnfērīlōr            | īnfīmūs and īmūs          |
| Sūpērūs, <i>high</i>      | sūpērīlōr            | suprēmūs and sūmmūs       |
| Pōstērūs, <i>hindward</i> | pōstērīlōr           | pōstrēmūs and pōstūmūs    |

Comparatives and Superlatives formed from Prepositions.

| Pos.                          | Comp.     | Sup.      |
|-------------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| (Citrā, <i>this side of</i> ) | cītērīlōr | cītērīmūs |
| (Intrā, <i>within</i> )       | īntērīlōr | īntērīmūs |
| (Ultrā, <i>beyond</i> )       | ūltērīlōr | ūltērīmūs |
| (Prāe, <i>before</i> )        | priör     | priīmūs   |
| (Prōpē, <i>near</i> )         | prōplōr   | prōxīmūs. |

Comparatives and Superlatives formed without a Positive.

| Comp.                          | Sup.       | Comp.                  | Sup.      |
|--------------------------------|------------|------------------------|-----------|
| Dētērīlōr, <i>worse</i>        | dētērrīmūs | Ocīlōr, <i>swifter</i> | ōcīssīmūs |
| Pōtīlōr, <i>more desirable</i> | pōtīssīmūs |                        |           |

*Obs.* Many Adjectives are not compared at all; others have no Comparative; some no Superlative.

§ 30. ADVERBS derived from Adjectives are compared in *us* and *e*: as,

(Dīgnūs, *worthy*,) dīgnē, *worthily*, dīgniūs, dīgnīssīmē.

(Grāvīs, *weighty*) grāvitēr, *weightily*, grāviūs, grāvīssīmē.

In the same manner,—

Sēpē, *often*, sēpīūs, sēpīssīmē.

Dīū, *long*, dīutiūs, dīutīssīmē.

Pēnitūs, *deeply*, pēnitīūs, pēnitīssīmē.

Māgīs, *more*, māxīmē; dētērīūs, *worse*, dētērrīmē; pōtīūs, *ruther*, pōtīssīmūs; Ocīūs, *more quickly*, ōcīssīmē; priūs, *sooner*, prīmūs; have no Positive.

Bēllē, *prettily*, bēllīssīmē; mērītē, *deservedly*, mērītīssīmē; nūpēr, *lately*, nūpērrīmē; have no Comparative.

Sātīs, *enough*, sātiūs; sēcūs, *differently*, sēciūs; have no Superlative.

## NUMERALLA, NUMERALS.

## § 31.

| SIGLA<br>NUMERORUM<br>ARABICA. | SIGLA<br>ROMANA. | CARDINALIA ;<br>answering the question<br>Quōt? <i>how many?</i> | ORDINALIA ;<br>answering the question<br>Quōtūs? <i>which in numeric<br/>order?</i> | DISTRIBUTIVA ;<br>answering the question<br>Quōtēni? <i>how many<br/>each?</i> | ADVERBIA NUMERALIA ;<br>answering the question<br>Quōtēs? <i>how many<br/>times?</i> |
|--------------------------------|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I                              | II               | ūnūs                                                             | prīmūs                                                                              | sīngūlī                                                                        | sēmēl.                                                                               |
| 2                              | III              | dūō                                                              | sēcūndūs                                                                            | bīnī                                                                           | bīs.                                                                                 |
| 3                              | IV               | trēs                                                             | tērtiūs                                                                             | tērnī or trīnī                                                                 | tēr.                                                                                 |
| 4                              | V                | quāttūr                                                          | quārtūs                                                                             | quātēr.                                                                        |                                                                                      |
| 5                              | VI               | quīnque                                                          | quīntūs                                                                             | quīnqūlēs.                                                                     |                                                                                      |
| 6                              | VII              | sēx                                                              | sēxtūs                                                                              | sēxiēs.                                                                        |                                                                                      |
| 7                              | VIII             | sēptem                                                           | sēptimūs                                                                            | sēptiēs.                                                                       |                                                                                      |
| 8                              | IX               | ōctō                                                             | ōctāvūs                                                                             | ōctēs.                                                                         |                                                                                      |
| 9                              | X                | nōvēm                                                            | nōnūs                                                                               | nōvēs.                                                                         |                                                                                      |
| 10                             | XI               | dēcēm                                                            | dēcimūs                                                                             | dēcīs.                                                                         |                                                                                      |
| 11                             | XII              | ūndēcīm                                                          | ūndēcīmūs                                                                           | ūndēcīes.                                                                      |                                                                                      |
| 12                             | XIII             | dūōdēcīm                                                         | dūōdēcīmūs                                                                          | dūōdēcīes.                                                                     |                                                                                      |
| 13                             | XIV              | trēdēcīm                                                         | trētīus dēcīmūs                                                                     | trēdēcīes.                                                                     |                                                                                      |
| 14                             | XV               | quāttūrōrdēcīm                                                   | quārtūs dēcīmūs                                                                     | quātūrōrdēcīes.                                                                |                                                                                      |
| 15                             | XVI              | quindēcīm                                                        | quīntūs dēcīmūs                                                                     | quīndēcīes.                                                                    |                                                                                      |
| 16                             | XVII             | sēdēcīm                                                          | sēxtūs dēcīmūs                                                                      | sēdēcīes.                                                                      |                                                                                      |
| 17                             | XVIII            | septēmēdēcīm                                                     | sēptēmūs dēcīmūs                                                                    | sēptēs dēcīes.                                                                 |                                                                                      |
| 18                             | XIX              | dūōdēvīgīnūj                                                     | dūōdēvīcēsīmūs                                                                      | dūōdēvīcēs.                                                                    |                                                                                      |
| 19                             | XIX              | ūndēvīgīntī                                                      | ūndēvīcēsīnūs                                                                       | ūndēvīcīes.                                                                    |                                                                                      |
| 20                             | XX               | vīgīntī                                                          | vīcēsīmūs                                                                           | vīcēs.                                                                         |                                                                                      |
| 21                             | XXI              | ūnūs ēt vīgīntī                                                  | vīcēnī sīngūlī                                                                      | sēmēl ēt vīcēs.                                                                |                                                                                      |
| 28                             | XXVIII           | dūōdētrīgīntā                                                    | dūōdētrīcēnī                                                                        | dūōdētrīcēs.                                                                   |                                                                                      |
| 29                             | XXIX             | ūndētrīgīntā                                                     | ūndētrīcēnī                                                                         | ūndētrīcēs.                                                                    |                                                                                      |
| 30                             | XXX              | trīgīntā                                                         | trīcēnī                                                                             | trīcēs.                                                                        |                                                                                      |
| 40                             | XL               | quādrāgīntā                                                      | quādrāgēnī                                                                          | quādrāgīlēs.                                                                   |                                                                                      |

|           |               |                     |                      |
|-----------|---------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| 50        | L             | quīnquāgintā        | quīnquāgēnī          |
| 60        | LX            | sēxāgintā           | sēxāgēnī             |
| 70        | LXX           | septūagintā         | septūagēnī           |
| 80        | LXXX          | ōctōgintā           | ōctōgēnī             |
| 90        | XC            | nōnāgintā           | nōnāgēnī             |
| 99        | IC            | ūndēcēntūm          | ūndēcēntēnī          |
| 100       | C             | cēntēm              | cēntēnī              |
| 101       | C I           | cēntum ēt ūnū       | cēntēni singūlī      |
| 200       | CC            | dūcēntī             | dūcēni               |
| 300       | CCC           | trēcēntī            | trēcēni              |
| 400       | CCCC          | quādringēntī        | quādringēnī          |
| 500       | D or I,       | quīngēntī           | quīngēnī             |
| 600       | DC            | sēxcēntī            | sēcēnī               |
| 700       | DCC           | sēptīngēntī         | sēptīngēnī           |
| 800       | DCCC          | ōctīngēntī          | ōctīngēnī            |
| 900       | DCCCC         | nōngēntī            | nōngēnī              |
| 1000      | M or c I      | millē               | singūlā millī        |
| 2000      | MM or II M    | dūō millī           | bīnā millī           |
| 5000      | VM or Icc     | quīnquē millī       | quīnquē millī        |
| 10,000    | X M or cc Icc | dēcem millī         | dēnā millī           |
| 50,000    | LM or Iccc    | quīnquāgintā millī  | quīnquāgēnā millī    |
| 100,000   | ccc Iccc      | cēntum millī        | cēntēnā millī        |
| 500,000   | Icccc         | quīngēntā millī     | quīngēnā millī       |
| 1,000,000 | ccccccc       | dēcīes cēntūm millī | dēcīes cēntēnā millī |

quīnquāgēnī  
sēxāgēnī  
septūagēnī  
ōctōgēnī  
nōnāgēnī  
ūndēcēntēnī.  
cēntēnī  
cēntēni singūlī  
dūcēni  
trēcēni  
quādringēnī  
quīngēnī  
sēcēnī  
sēptīngēnī  
ōctīngēnī  
nōngēnī  
millīes.  
bīs millīes.  
quīnquē millī  
dēnā millī  
quīnquāgēnā millī  
cēntēnā millī  
quīngēnā millī  
dēcīes cēntēnā millī  
quīnquāgēnī  
sēxāgēnī  
ōctōgēnī  
nōnāgēnī  
ūndēcēntēnī.  
cēntēnī  
cēntēni sēmēlī  
dūcēntēlī  
trēcēntēlī  
quādringēntēlī  
quīngēntēlī  
sēcēntēlī  
sēptīngēntēlī  
ōctīngēntēlī  
nōngēntēlī  
millīes.

*Obs. 1. Multiplicativa*, answering the question Quōtuplēx? *How many fold?* are: simplēx, duplēx, triplēx, quādruplēx, quīntuplēx, &c. So sēptēmplēx, sevēnfold; dēcēmplēx, tenfold; cēntuplēx, a hundredfold.

*Obs. 2. Proportionalia*, answering the question Quōtuplūs? *How many times more?* are: simplūs, duplūs, triplūs, quādruplūs, &c.

*Obs. 3.* See Unūs declined, § 26

§ 32. Dúō, *two*, Trēs, *three*, and Milliā, *thousands*.

| Plural.   |        |        | Plural. |    |         | Plural.   |  |
|-----------|--------|--------|---------|----|---------|-----------|--|
| M.        | F.     | N.     | M.      | F. | N.      | N.        |  |
| N. Dúō    | dúāe   | dúō    | Trēs    |    | tr̄ě    | Milliā    |  |
| G. Dúōrum | dúārum | dúōrum |         |    | Tr̄um   | Milliūm   |  |
| D. Dúōbūs | dúābūs | dúōbūs |         |    | Tr̄ibūs | Milliibūs |  |
| A. Dúōs   | dúās   | dúō    | Trēs    |    | tr̄ě    | Milliā    |  |
| A. Dúōbūs | dúābūs | dúōbūs |         |    | Tr̄ibūs | Milliibūs |  |

Note 1. Ambo, *both*, is declined like Dúō.

Note 2. The other Cardinal Numbers, from quāttūōr to cēntum, are undeclined. Millē is also an undeclined Adjective.

## DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

§ 33. PRONOMINA, Pronouns, are

- A. PERSONALIA, Personal Pronouns : ēgō, *I*; tū, *thou*; sūī, *himself, herself, or themselves*.
- B. POSSESSIVA, Possessive Pronouns, which are derived from the Genitives of the Personal Pronouns : as, mēūs, *my, mine*; tūūs, *thy, thine*; sūūs, *his, her, or their own*; nōstēr, *our*; vēstēr, *your*.
- C. DEMONSTRATIVA, Demonstrative Pronouns : hīc, *this*; illē, īstē, *that*; and DETERMINATIVA : īs, *that*; īpsē, *self*; īdem, *the same*.
- D. RELATIVUM, the Relative Pronoun quī, *who* or *which*; INTERROGATIVUM, the Interrogative, quis, quī, *who or what?* and their compounds.

§ 34.

### A. PERSONALIA.

1.— Pronoun of 1st Person.

| Sing.                                  |  | Plur.                                |
|----------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| Nom. Egō, <i>I</i>                     |  | Nōs, <i>we</i>                       |
| Gen. Mēī, <i>of me</i>                 |  | Nōstrī and nōstrūm, <i>of us</i>     |
| Dat. Mīhi, <i>to or for me</i>         |  | Nōbīs, <i>to or for us</i>           |
| Acc. Mē, <i>me</i>                     |  | Nōs, <i>us</i>                       |
| Abl. Mē, <i>by, with, or from me</i> . |  | Nōbīs, <i>by, with, or from us</i> . |

2.— Pronoun of 2d Person.

| Sing.                                    |  | Plur.                               |
|------------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| Nom. Tū, <i>thou</i>                     |  | Vōs, <i>ye</i>                      |
| Gen. Tūī, <i>of thee</i>                 |  | Vēstrī and vēstrūm, <i>of you</i>   |
| Dat. Tībi, <i>to or for thee</i>         |  | Vōbīs, <i>to or for you</i>         |
| Acc. Tē, <i>thee</i>                     |  | Vōs, <i>you</i>                     |
| Abl. Tē, <i>by, with, or from thee</i> . |  | Vōbīs, <i>by, with, or from you</i> |

## 3.—Pronoun of 3d Person.

*Sing. and Plur.*Nom. (*wanting*)Gen. Síi, *of himself, herself, or themselves*Dat. Síbi, *to or for himself, herself, or themselves*Acc. Sē or sēsē, *himself, herself, or themselves*Abl. Sē or sēsē, *by himself, herself, or themselves*.

*Obs.* These Pronouns sometimes take the syllable met: as, ēgomět, *I myself*; vōsmět, *ye yourselves*; siblímět, *to himself*.

## § 35.

## B. POSSESSIVA.

Měš, měā, měum; třūs, třā, třum; sūs, sūā, sūum; like bōnūs, § 24  
Nōstěr, nōstrā, nōstrum; věstěr, věstrā, věstrum; like nīgěr, § 24.

*Obs. 1.* Měš, Voc. Masc. mī.*Obs. 2.* GENTILIA POSSESSIVA: nōstr-ās, -ātīs, *of our country*; věstr-ās  
-ātīs, *of your country*; cūj-ās, -ātīs, *of what country?**Obs. 3.* The POSSESSIVE RELATIVE, cūjūs, cūjā, cūjum, *whose?*

## § 36. C. DEMONSTRATIVA ět DETERMINATIVA.

| Sing.    |       |       | Sing.   |         |         | Sing. |            |       |
|----------|-------|-------|---------|---------|---------|-------|------------|-------|
| N. Hīc   | hāc   | hōc   | Illě    | illā    | illūd   | Is    | ěā         | īd    |
| G.       | Hūjūs |       |         | Illiūs  |         |       | Ejūs       |       |
| D.       | Hūic  |       |         | Illī    |         |       | Eī         |       |
| A.       | Hūnc  | hānc  | Illum   | illam   | illūd   | Eum   | ěam        | īd    |
| A.       | Hōc   | hāc   | Illō    | illā    | illō    | Eō    | ěā         | ěō    |
| Plur.    |       |       | Plur.   |         |         | Plur. |            |       |
| N. Hī    | hāe   | hāc   | Illī    | illāe   | illā    | Iī    | ěāe        | ěā    |
| G. Hōrum | hārum | hōrum | Illōrum | illārum | illōrum | Eōrum | ěārum      | ěōrum |
| D.       | Hīs   |       |         | Illīs   |         |       | Iīs or ěīs |       |
| A.       | Hōs   | hās   | hāc     | Illōs   | illās   | illā  | Eōs        | ěās   |
| A.       | Hīs   |       |         | Illīs   |         |       | Iīs or ěīs |       |

| Sing. |        |         | Plur.    |          |           |
|-------|--------|---------|----------|----------|-----------|
| Nom.  | Idem   | ěādem   | Iīdem    | ěādem    | ěādem     |
| Gen.  |        | Ejūsdem | Eōrūndem | ěārūndem | ěōrūndem  |
| Dat.  |        | Eīdem   |          | Iīsdem   | or ěīsdem |
| Acc.  | Eūndem | ěāndem  | Eōsdem   | ěāsdem   | ěādem     |
| Abl.  | Eōdem  | ěādem   | Eōdem    | Iīsdem   | or ěīsdem |

*Obs.* Istě is declined like illě; ipsě like illě, but with Neut. S. īpsum

## § 37.

## D. RELATIVUM.

| Sing. |      |       | Plur. |        |          |
|-------|------|-------|-------|--------|----------|
| Nom.  | Qui  | quāē  | quōd  | Qui    | quāē     |
| Gen.  |      | Cūjūs |       | Quōrum | quārum   |
| Dat.  |      | Cuī   |       | Quībūs | or queis |
| Acc.  | Quem | quam  | quōd  | Quōs   | quās     |
| Abl.  | Quō  | quā   | quō   | Quībūs | or queis |

The following are mostly declined like *Qui*.

- (1) *Quīs*, *quīd*, and *Quī*, *quāē*, *quōd*; G. *cūjūs*, &c.; *who* or *what?*  
(Interrogative.)
- (2) *Quīs*, *quāē*, *quīd*, *any one.* (Indefinite.) *Quī* is also used indefinitely.
- (3) *Quīdam*, *quāēdam*, *quōddam* or *quīddam*; G. *cūjūsdam*; D. *cuīdam*:  
Acc. *quēndam*, *quāndam*, *quōddam*, &c.; *a certain one.*
- (4) *Quīvīs*, *quāēvīs*, *quōdvīs* or *quīdvīs*; G. *cūjūsvīs*; *any one.*
- (5) *Quīlībēt*, *quāēlībēt*, *quōdlībēt* or *quīdlībēt*; G. *cūjūslībēt*; *any one*
- (6) *Quīcūnquē*, *quāēcūnquē*, *quōdcūnquē*; G. *cūjūscūnquē*; *who* or  
*whatssoever.*
- (7) *Quīsnam*, *quīdnam*, and *quīnam*, *quāēnam*, *quōdnam*; G. *cūjūsnam*;  
*who* or *what?*
- (8) *Quīsquīs*, Neut. *quīdqūīd*; Abl. *quōquoō*; *who* or *whatssoever.*
- (9) *Quīsquē*, *quāēquē*, *quōdquē* or *quīdquē*, *each.*
- (10) *Quīsquām* [*quāēquam*], *quīdqūam*, *any one.* Plural wanting.
- (11) *Quīspīam*, *quāēpīam*, *quīdpīam*, *any one.*
- (12) *Aliquīs*, *ălīquā*, *ălīquīd*, and *ălīquī*, *ălīquāē*, *ălīquōd*, *some one.*
- (13) *Ecquīs*, *ēcquā*, *ēcquīd*, and *ēcquī*, *ēcquāē*, *ēcquōd*, *any one?*
- (14) *Unūsquiēsquē*, *ūnāquāēsquē*, *ūnūmquōdquē* or *ūnūmquīdquē*; G.  
*ūniūscūjūsque*; *each one.*

---

## THE VERB.

### § 38. VERBS have Two VOICES (Vōcēs):

- (1) **Vox ACTIVA**, the Active (or Doing) Voice : as, *ămō*, *I love.*
- (2) **Vox PASSIVA**, the Passive (or Suffering) Voice :  
as, *ămōr*, *I am loved.*

Verbs of the Active Voice are either

- (1) **TRANSITIVA**, acting on an object : as, *ămō Dēum*,  
*I love God* : or,
- (2) **INTRANSLITIVA**, vel **NEUTRA**, expressing a state :  
as, *stō*, *I stand.*

*Obs.* Neuter Verbs Active have no Passive Voice, except  
as Impersonals in the Third Persons Singular.

**DEPONENTIA**, Deponent Verbs, though conjugated in  
the Passive Voice chiefly, lay aside (*deponunt*) the  
Passive, and take an Active signification: some  
being Transitive; as, *hōrtōr*, *I exhort*; some Neuter;  
as, *mōriōr*, *I die.*

§ 39. Verbs have Three proper MOODS (Mōdī) :

|       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Modus | (1) INDICATIVUS, Indicative, for unconditional action : as, āmō, <i>I love.</i><br>(2) CONJUNCTIVUS. Conjunctive, for conditional action : as, āmem, <i>I may love.</i><br>(3) IMPERATIVUS, Imperative, for command or entreaty : as, āmā, <i>love thou.</i> |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

*Obs.* The Conjunctive Mood in some of its uses is called Subjunctive, in some Potential.

Verbs have also :

- (1) INFINITIVUS, an Infinitive (improper) Mood, expressing the action of the Verb without relations of Person : as, āmārē, *to love*, āmāvissē, *to have loved.*
- (2) GERUNDIA, Gerunds ; Three in number :
  - (a) āmāndī, *of loving,*
  - (b) āmāndō, *for or by loving,*
  - (c) āmāndum, *the loving ;*
- (3) SUPINA, Supines ; Two in number :
  - (a) āmātūm, *to love,*
  - (b) āmātū, *to be loved ;*
- 4) PARTICIPIA, Participles ; Two for each Voice : as,

Active { Present Part., āmāns, *loving,*  
             { Future Part., āmātūrūs, *about to love.*

Passive { Past Part., āmātūs, *loved,*  
             { Part., in *dus* āmāndūs, *meet to be loved.*

*Note.* Participles are so called, because they *take part* of the properties of Verbs, as Tense and Transitive Power, and *part* of the properties of Adjectives, as Case and Gender. Thus they are the Adjectives of the Verb, as the Infinitive (with the Gerunds and Supines) forms its Substantive.

§ 40. Verbs have SIX TENSES (Tēmpōrā) ; Three for unfinished action, Three for finished action

Which serve as Cases  
of the Infinitive.

*Unfinished Action.*

- (1) PRÆSENS, Present; as, āmō, *I love*, or *am loving*.
- (2) PRÆTERITUM IMPERFECTUM, Preterimperfect: as, āmābam, *I was loving*.
- (3) FUTURUM IMPERFECTUM, věl SIMPLEX, Future Imperfect or Simple: as, āmābō, *I shall love*, or *shall be loving*.

*Finished Action.*

- (1) PRÆTERITUM PERFECTUM, Preterperfect: as, āmāvī, *I loved*, or *have loved*.
- (2) PRÆTERITUM PLUSQUAMPERFECTUM, Preterpluperfect: as, āmāvēram, *I had loved*.
- (3) FUTURUM PERFECTUM věl EXACTUM. Future Perfect or Exact: as, āmāvērō, *I shall have loved*.

§ 41. Verbs are conjugated also by Two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural; and by Three PERSONS in each Number:

The First expressing the Person  
or Persons who speak: as, } ēgō āmō, *I love*, nōs āmāmūs, *we love*.  
The Second expressing the Per-  
son or Persons to whom one } tū āmās, *thou lovest*, vōs āmātīs, *ye love*.  
speaks: as, - - - - - }  
The Third expressing that of  
which one speaks: as, } illē āmāt, *he loves*, illī āmānt, *they love*

~~~~~

## CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

§ 42. There are Four CONJUGATIONS of Latin Verbs.

- I. The First Conjugation is known by ā before rě: as, āmārě, hōrtārě.
- II. The Second Conjugation is known by ē before rě: as, mōnērě, vērērě.
- III. The Third Conjugation is known by ē before rě: as, rēgērě, lōquērě.
- IV. The Fourth Conjugation is known by ī before rě: as, aūdīrě, pārtīrě.

§ 43. In order to conjugate a Latin Verb, it is necessary to know: (1) The Present Indic. Act. 1st Person; (2) The Preterperfect Indic. Act. 1st Person; (3) The Infinitive Pres. Act.; (4) The Supine in um. For from these the other Tenses may be derived.

§ 44. It is useful for the learner, when conjugating a Verb, to mention also the 2d Person Sing. Pres. Indic. Act., the Gerunds, Supines, and Participles. He will therefore conjugate the Verbs as follows: —

## ACTIVE VOICE.

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
Pres. Ind. 1st Pers.	ăm-ō	mön-ěō	rěg-ō	aūd-łō
2d Pers.	ăm-ās	mön-ēs	rěg-īs	aūd-īs
Preterperfect	ăm-āvī	mön-üī	rěx-ī	aūd-īvī
Infinitive	ăm-ärě	mön-ērě	rěg-ěrě	aūd-īrě
Gerund in <i>di</i>	ăm-āndī	mön-ēndī	rěg-ēndī	aūd-īendī
" <i>do</i>	ăm-āndō	mön-ēndō	rěg-ēndō	aūd-īendō
" <i>dum</i>	ăm-āndum	mön-ēndum	rěg-ēndum	aūd-īendum
Supine in <i>um</i>	ăm-ātum	mön-ītum	rēct-um	aūd-ītum
" <i>u</i>	ăm-ātū	mön-ītū	rēct-ū	aūd-ītū
Participle Present	ăm-āns	mön-ēns	rěg-ēns	aūd-īens
" Future	ăm-ātūrūs	mön-ītūrūs	rēct-ūrūs	aūd-ītūrūs

## PASSIVE VOICE.

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
Pres. Ind. 1st Pers.	ăm-ōr	mön-ěor	rěg-ōr	aūd-łōr
2d Pers.	ăm-ārīs	mön-ērīs	rěg-ěrīs	aūd-īrīs
Preterperfect	ăm-ātūs sum	mön-ītūs sum	rēct-ūs sum	aūd-ītūs sum
Infinitive	ăm-ārī	mön-ērī	rěg-ī	aūd-īrī
Participle Perfect	ăm-ātūs	mön-ītūs	rēct-ūs	aūd-ītūs
" in <i>dus</i>	ăm-āndūs	mön-ēndūs	rěg-ēndūs	aūd-īendūs

## EXAMPLES FOR CONJUGATION.

## 1st Conj., like ăm-ō.

- ăr-ō, *I plough*
- cěrt-ō, *I contend*
- clām-ō, *I cry out*
- cūr-ō, *I regard*
- ōpt-ō, *I wish*
- pūgn-ō, *I fight*
- nōmīn-ō, *I name*
- ādīfīc-ō, *I build*.

## 3d Conj., like rěg-ō.

- těg-ō, *I cover*
- sūg-ō, *I suck*
- jūng-ō, *I join*
- cīng-ō, *I gird*
- dīc-ō, *I say*
- dūc-ō, *I lead*
- věh-ō, *I carry*
- cōqu-ō, *I cook*

## 2d Conj., like mön-ěō.

- hăb-ěō, *I have*
- děb-ěō, *I owe*
- tērr-ěō, *I frighten*
- prōhīb-ěō, *I forbid*
- ěxērc-ěō, *I exercise*
- prāeb-ěō, *I afford*
- ădhīb-ěō, *I apply*
- cōhīb-ěō, *I restrain*.

## 4th Conj., like aūd-łō.

- fīn-łō, *I end*
- pūn-łō, *I punish*
- mūn-łō, *I fortify*
- nūtr-łō, *I nourish*
- věst-łō, *I clothe*
- cūstōd-łō, *I guard*
- impěd-łō, *I hinder*
- ěřnīl-łō, *I instruct*.

## § 50.

## THE THIRD

## ACTIVE

	<i>Indicative Mood.</i>			<i>Conjunctive Mood.</i>
	Present Tense.	Preterimperfect.	Preterperfect.	
S.	Rěg-ō, <i>I rule,</i> rěg-ís, <i>thou rulest</i> rěg-ít, <i>he rules</i>			rěg-am, <i>I may</i> rěg-ás, <i>thou mayst</i> rěg-át, <i>he may</i> rěg-ámüs, <i>we may</i> rěg-átüs, <i>ye may</i> rěg-ánt, <i>they may</i>
Pl.	rěg-ímüs, <i>we rule</i> rěg-ítüs, <i>ye rule</i> rěg-ún̄t, <i>they rule</i>			
S.	rěg-ēbam, <i>I was</i> rěg-ēbās, <i>thou wast</i> rěg-ēbät, <i>he was</i>	ruling.		rěg-ěrem, <i>I might</i> rěg-ěrēs, <i>thou mightst</i> rěg-ěrēt, <i>he might</i> rěg-ěrēmüs, <i>we might</i> rěg-ěrētüs, <i>ye might</i> rěg-ěrēnt, <i>they might</i>
Pl.	rěg-ēbämüs, <i>we were</i> rěg-ēbätüs, <i>ye were</i> rěg-ēbänt, <i>they were</i>			
S.	rěx-ī, <i>I ruled</i> rěx-īstī, <i>thou ruledst</i> rěx-ít, <i>he ruled</i>			rěx-ěrim, <i>I may</i> rěx-ěris, <i>thou mayst</i> rěx-ěrit, <i>he may</i> rěx-ěrimüs, <i>we may</i> rěx-ěritüs, <i>ye may</i> rěx-ěrint, <i>they may</i>
Pl.	rěx-ímüs, <i>we ruled</i> rěx-īstüs, <i>ye ruled</i> rěx-ērūnt, <i>they ruled.</i>			
S.	rěx-ěram, <i>I had</i> rěx-ěrās, <i>thou hadst</i> rěx-ěrät, <i>he had</i>	ruled.		rěx-īsse, <i>I would</i> rěx-īssēs, <i>thou wouldst</i> rěx-īssēt, <i>he would</i> rěx-īssēmüs, <i>we would</i> rěx-īssētüs, <i>ye would</i> rěx-īssēnt, <i>they would</i>
Pl.	rěx-ěrämüs, <i>we had</i> rěx-ěrätüs, <i>ye had</i> rěx-ěrānt, <i>they had</i>			
S.	rěg-am, <i>I shall</i> rěg-ēs, <i>thou shalt</i> rěg-ēt, <i>he shall</i>	rule.		rěct-ūrūs sim, <i>I may</i> rěct-ūrūs sīs, <i>thou mayst</i> rěct-ūrūs sīt, <i>he may</i> rěct-ūrī sīmüs, <i>we may</i> rěct-ūrī sītüs, <i>ye may</i> rěct-ūrī sīnt, <i>they may</i>
Pl.	rěg-ēmüs, <i>we shall</i> rěg-ētüs, <i>ye shall</i> rěg-ēnt, <i>they shall</i>			
S.	rěx-ěrō, <i>I shall</i> rěx-ěris, <i>thou shalt</i> rěx-ěrit, <i>he shall</i>	have ruled.		
Pl.	rěx-ěrimüs, <i>we shall</i> rěx-ěritüs, <i>ye shall</i> rěx-ěrint, <i>they shall</i>			
<i>Gerunds.</i> { rěg-ēndī, <i>of ruling</i> { rěg-ēndō, <i>for or by ruling</i> { rěg-ēndum, <i>the ruling</i>				

## CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
rēg-ě, rēg-ětō, rule thou rēg-ětō, let him rule rēg-ětě, rēg-ětōtě, rule ye rēg-ěntō, let them rule	rēg-ěrě, to rule, or be ruling.	rēg-ěns, ruling.
	rēx-issě, to have ruled.	
	rēct-ārum ēssě, to be about to rule.	rēct-ūrīs, about to rule.
<i>Supines.</i> { rēct-um, to rule. rēct-ū, to be ruled.		

## § 46.

## THE FIRST

## ACTIVE

		<i>Indicative Mood.</i>		<i>Conjunctive Mood.</i>	
Present Tense.		S.	Am-ō, <i>I love</i> ām-ās, <i>thou lovest</i> ām-āt, <i>he loves</i>	ām-em, <i>I may</i> ām-ēs, <i>thou mayst</i> ām-ēt, <i>he may</i> ām-ēmūs, <i>we may</i> ām-ātīs, <i>ye may</i> ām-ānt, <i>they may</i>	
Preterimperfect.		S.	ām-ābam, <i>I was</i> ām-ābās, <i>thou wast</i> ām-ābāt, <i>he was</i>	ām-ārem, <i>I might</i> ām-ārēs, <i>thou mightst</i> ām-ārēt, <i>he might</i> ām-ārēmūs, <i>we might</i> ām-ārētīs, <i>ye might</i> ām-ārēnt, <i>they might</i>	
Preterperfect.		S.	ām-āvī, <i>I loved</i> ām-āvīstī, <i>thou lovedst</i> ām-āvīt, <i>he loved</i>	ām-āvērim, <i>I may</i> ām-āvēris, <i>thou mayst</i> ām-āvērit, <i>he may</i> ām-āvērimūs, <i>we may</i> ām-āvēritīs, <i>ye may</i> ām-āvērint, <i>they may</i>	
Preterpluperfect.		S.	ām-āvēram, <i>I had</i> ām-āvērās, <i>thou hadst</i> ām-āvērāt, <i>he had</i>	ām-āvīssem, <i>I would</i> ām-āvīssēs, <i>thou wouldst</i> ām-āvīssēt, <i>he would</i> ām-āvīssēmūs, <i>we would</i> ām-āvīssētīs, <i>ye would</i> ām-āvīssēnt, <i>they would</i>	
Future Imperfect.		S.	ām-ābō, <i>I shall</i> ām-ābīs, <i>thou shalt</i> ām-ābīt, <i>he shall</i>	ām-ātūrūs sim, <i>I may</i> ām-ātūrūs sīs, <i>thou mayst</i> ām-ātūrūs sīt, <i>he may</i> ām-ātūrī sīmūs, <i>we may</i> ām-ātūrī sītīs, <i>ye may</i> ām-ātūrī sīnt, <i>they may</i>	
Future Perfect.		S.	ām-āvērō, <i>I shall</i> ām-āvēris, <i>thou shalt</i> ām-āvērt, <i>he shall</i>	ām-ātūrūs sim, <i>I may</i> ām-ātūrūs sīs, <i>thou mayst</i> ām-ātūrūs sīt, <i>he may</i> ām-ātūrī sīmūs, <i>we may</i> ām-ātūrī sītīs, <i>ye may</i> ām-ātūrī sīnt, <i>they may</i>	
		Pl.	ām-ābīmūs, <i>we shall</i> ām-ābītīs, <i>ye shall</i> ām-ābūnt, <i>they shall</i>	ām-ātūrūs sim, <i>I may</i> ām-ātūrūs sīs, <i>thou mayst</i> ām-ātūrūs sīt, <i>he may</i> ām-ātūrī sīmūs, <i>we may</i> ām-ātūrī sītīs, <i>ye may</i> ām-ātūrī sīnt, <i>they may</i>	
		Pl.	ām-āvērimūs, <i>we shall</i> ām-āvēritīs, <i>ye shall</i> ām-āvērint, <i>they shall</i>	ām-ātūrūs sim, <i>I may</i> ām-ātūrūs sīs, <i>thou mayst</i> ām-ātūrūs sīt, <i>he may</i> ām-ātūrī sīmūs, <i>we may</i> ām-ātūrī sītīs, <i>ye may</i> ām-ātūrī sīnt, <i>they may</i>	

*Gerunds.* { ām-āndī, *of loving*  
ām-āndō, *for or by loving*  
ām-āndum, *the loving.*

## CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

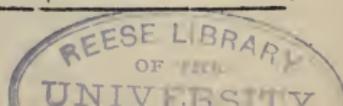
<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
ăm-ā, ăm-ătō, <i>love thou</i> ăm-ătō, <i>let him love</i> ăm-ătē, ăm-ătōtē, <i>love ye</i> ăm-ăntō, <i>let them love.</i>	ăm-ărě, <i>to love, or be loving.</i>	ăm-ăns, <i>loving.</i>
	ăm-ăvissě, <i>to have loved.</i>	
	ăm-ătūrum ēssě, <i>to be about to love.</i>	ăm-ătūrūs, <i>about to love.</i>
<i>Supines.</i> { ăm-ătum, <i>to love.</i> { ăm-ătū, <i>to be loved.</i>		

Indicative Mood.			Conjunctive Mood.
	Present Tense.	Preterimperfect.	
S.	ăm-őr, <i>I am</i> ăm-ăřis, <i>thou art</i> ăm-ătűr, <i>he is</i>	Pl. ăm-ăműr, <i>we are</i> ăm-ăměnī, <i>ye are</i> ăm-ăntűr, <i>they are</i>	ăm-ěr, <i>I may</i> ăm-ěřis, <i>thou mayst</i> ăm-ětűr, <i>he may</i> ăm-ěműr, <i>we may</i> ăm-ěměnī, <i>ye may</i> ăm-ěntűr, <i>they may</i>
Pl.			
S.	ăm-ăbăr, <i>I was</i> ăm-ăbāřis, <i>thou wast</i> ăm-ăbătűr, <i>he was</i>	Pl. ăm-ăbāműr, <i>we were</i> ăm-ăbāměnī, <i>ye were</i> ăm-ăbāntűr, <i>they were</i>	ăm-ărěr, <i>I might</i> ăm-ărēřis, <i>thou mightst</i> ăm-ărētűr, <i>he might</i> ăm-ărēműr, <i>we might</i> ăm-ărēměnī, <i>ye might</i> ăm-ărēntűr, <i>they might</i>
Pl.			
S.	ăm-ătűs sum, <i>I was</i> ăm-ătűs ēs, <i>thou wast</i> ăm-ătűs ēst, <i>he was</i>	Pl. ăm-ătī sūműs, <i>we were</i> ăm-ătī ēstlīs, <i>ye were</i> ăm-ătī sūnt, <i>they were</i>	ăm-ătűs sim, <i>I may</i> ăm-ătűs sīs, <i>thou mayst</i> ăm-ătűs sīt, <i>he may</i> ăm-ătī sīműs, <i>we may</i> ăm-ătī sītīs, <i>ye may</i> ăm-ătī sīnt, <i>they may</i>
Pl.			
S.	ăm-ătűs ēram, <i>I had</i> ăm-ătűs ērās, <i>thou hadst</i> ăm-ătűs ērăt, <i>he had</i>	Pl. ăm-ătī ērāműs, <i>we had</i> ăm-ătī ērātīs, <i>ye had</i> ăm-ătī ērānt, <i>they had</i>	ăm-ătűs ēssem, <i>I would</i> ăm-ătűs ēssēs, <i>thou wouldest</i> ăm-ătűs ēssět, <i>he would</i> ăm-ătī ēssēműs, <i>we would</i> ăm-ătī ēssētīs, <i>ye would</i> ăm-ătī ēssēnt, <i>they would</i>
Pl.			
S.	ăm-ăbōr, <i>I shall</i> ăm-ăběřis, <i>thou shalt</i> ăm-ăbítűr, <i>he shall</i>	Pl. ăm-ăbīműr, <i>we shall</i> ăm-ăbīměnī, <i>ye shall</i> ăm-ăbūntűr, <i>they shall</i>	have been loved.
Pl.			
S.	ăm-ătűs ērō, <i>I shall</i> ăm-ătűs ēřis, <i>thou shalt</i> ăm-ătűs ēřit, <i>he shall</i>	Pl. ăm-ătī ēřīműs, <i>we shall</i> ăm-ătī ēřitīs, <i>ye shall</i> ăm-ătī ēřūnt, <i>they shall</i>	have been loved.
Pl.			

## CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
<p>ăm-ărĕ, ăm-ătōr, <i>be thou</i>      ăm-ătōr, <i>let him be</i>      ăm-ămīnī, ăm-ămīnōr, <i>be</i>      ăm-ăntōr, <i>let them be</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">[ye] loved.</p>	ăm-ărī, <i>to be loved.</i>	
	ăm-ătum ēssĕ, <i>to have been loved.</i>	ăm-ătūs, <i>loved.</i>
	ăm-ătum īrī, <i>to be about to be loved.</i>	
		ăm-ăndūs, <i>meet to be loved.</i>



## § 48.

## THE SECOND

## ACTIVE

		<i>Indicative Mood.</i>		<i>Conjunctive Mood.</i>	
Future Perfect.	Future Imperfect.	Preterpluperfect.	Preterperfect.	Present Tense.	
S.	Mön-ěō, <i>I advise</i> mön-ēs, <i>thou advisest</i> mön-ět, <i>he advises</i>	Pl.	mön-ěmūs, <i>we advise</i> mön-ětīs, <i>ye advise</i> mön-ěnt, <i>they advise</i> .		mön-ěam, <i>I may</i> mön-ěās, <i>thou mayst</i> mön-ěāt, <i>he may</i> mön-ěāmūs, <i>we may</i> mön-ěātīs, <i>ye may</i> mön-ěānt, <i>they may</i>
S.	mön-ěbam, <i>I was</i> mön-ěbās, <i>thou wast</i> mön-ěbāt, <i>he was</i>	Pl.	mön-ěbāmūs, <i>we were</i> mön-ěbātīs, <i>ye were</i> mön-ěbānt, <i>they were</i>		mön-ěrem, <i>I might</i> mön-ěrēs, <i>thou mightst</i> mön-ěrēt, <i>he might</i> mön-ěrēmūs, <i>we might</i> mön-ěrētīs, <i>ye might</i> mön-ěrēnt, <i>they might</i>
S.	mön-üī, <i>I advised</i> mön-üīstī, <i>thou advisedst</i> mön-üīt, <i>he advised</i>	Pl.	mön-üīmūs, <i>we advised</i> mön-üīstīs, <i>ye advised</i> mön-üīrūnt, <i>they advised</i> .		mön-üērim, <i>I may</i> mön-üēris, <i>thou mayst</i> mön-üērit, <i>he may</i> mön-üērimūs, <i>we may</i> mön-üēritīs, <i>ye may</i> mön-üērūnt, <i>they may</i>
S.	mön-üēram, <i>I had</i> mön-üērās, <i>thou hadst</i> mön-üērāt, <i>he had</i>	Pl.	mön-üērāmūs, <i>we had</i> mön-üērātīs, <i>ye had</i> mön-üērānt, <i>they had</i>		mön-üīssem, <i>I would</i> mön-üīssēs, <i>thou wouldst</i> mön-üīssēt, <i>he would</i> mön-üīssēmūs, <i>we would</i> mön-üīssētīs, <i>ye would</i> mön-üīssēnt, <i>they would</i>
S.	mön-ěbō, <i>I shall</i> mön-ěbīs, <i>thou shalt</i> mön-ěbīt, <i>he shall</i>	Pl.	mön-ěbīmūs, <i>we shall</i> mön-ěbītīs, <i>ye shall</i> mön-ěbīnt, <i>they shall</i>		mön-ětūrūs sim, <i>I may</i> mön-ětūrūs sīs, <i>thou mayst</i> mön-ětūrūs sīt, <i>he may</i> mön-ětūrī sīmūs, <i>we may</i> mön-ětūrī sītīs, <i>ye may</i> mön-ětūrī sīnt, <i>they may</i>
S.	mön-üērō, <i>I shall</i> mön-üēris, <i>thou shalt</i> mön-üērit, <i>he shall</i>	Pl.	mön-üēriūs, <i>we shall</i> mön-üēritīs, <i>ye shall</i> mön-üērīnt, <i>they shall</i>		be about to advise.
<i>Gerunds</i> { mön-ěndī, <i>of advising</i> { mön-ěndō, <i>for or by advising</i> { mön-ěndum, <i>the advising</i> .					

## CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
mön-ē, mön-ētō, <i>advise thou</i> mön-ētō, <i>let him advise</i>	mön-ērě, <i>to advise,</i> <i>or be advising.</i>	mön-ēns, <i>advising</i>
mön-ētě, mön-ētōtě, <i>advise ye</i> mön-ēntō, <i>let them advise.</i>		
	mön-ūissě, <i>to have</i> <i>advised.</i>	
	mön-ītūrum ēssě, <i>to be about to ad-</i> <i>vise.</i>	mön-ītūrūs, <i>about</i> <i>to advise.</i>
<i>Supines.</i> { mön-ītum, <i>to advise</i> mön-ītū, <i>to be advised.</i>		

Indicative Mood.				Conjunctive Mood.					
Future Perfect.	Future Imperfect.	Preterperfect.	Present Tense.	S.	Pl.	S.	Pl.		
				S. Mön-ěör, <i>I am</i> mön-ěřis, <i>thou art</i> mön-ětür, <i>he is</i> Pl. mön-ěimür, <i>we are</i> mön-ěimini, <i>ye are</i> mön-ěntür, <i>they are</i>	advised.		mön-ěär, <i>I may</i> mön-ěärřis, <i>thou mayest</i> mön-ěätür, <i>he may</i> mön-ěämür, <i>we may</i> mön-ěämini, <i>ye may</i> mön-ěäntür, <i>they may</i>	be advised.	
				S. mön-ěbär, <i>I was</i> mön-ěbärřis, <i>thou wast</i> mön-ěbätür, <i>he was</i> Pl. mön-ěbimür, <i>we were</i> mön-ěbämini, <i>ye were</i> mön-ěbäntür, <i>they were</i>	being advised.		mön-ěärer, <i>I might</i> mön-ěärerřis, <i>thou mightst</i> mön-ěeretür, <i>he might</i> mön-ěeremür, <i>we might</i> mön-ěeremini, <i>ye might</i> mön-ěerentür, <i>they might</i>	be advised.	
				S. mön-ětüs sum, <i>I was</i> mön-ětüs ěs, <i>thou wast</i> mön-ětüs ěst, <i>he was</i> Pl. mön-ěti sümüs, <i>we were</i> mön-ěti ěstüs, <i>ye were</i> mön-ěti sünd, <i>they were</i>	advised.		mön-ětüs sim, <i>I may</i> mön-ětüs sís, <i>thou mayst</i> mön-ětüs sít, <i>he may</i> mön-ěti simus, <i>we may</i> mön-ěti sítüs, <i>ye may</i> mön-ěti sínt, <i>they may</i>	have been advised.	
				S. mön-ětüs čram, <i>I had</i> mön-ětüs črás, <i>thou hadst</i> mön-ětüs črät, <i>he had</i> Pl. mön-ěti črämüs, <i>we had</i> mön-ěti črätis, <i>ye had</i> nön-ěti čränt, <i>they had</i>	been advised.		mön-ětüs ěssem, <i>I would</i> mön-ětüs ěssēs, <i>thou wouldst</i> mön-ětüs ěssét, <i>he would</i> mön-ěti čssämüs, <i>we would</i> mön-ěti čssätis, <i>ye would</i> mön-ěti čsseńt, <i>they would</i>	have been advised.	
				S. mön-ěiňör, <i>I shall</i> mön-ěběřis, <i>thou shalt</i> mön-ěbütňr, <i>he shall</i> Pl. mön-ěbimür, <i>we shall</i> mön-ěbämini, <i>ye shall</i> mön-ěbuntür, <i>they shall</i>	be advised.				
				S. mön-ětüs črō, <i>I shall</i> mön-ětüs čřis, <i>thou shalt</i> mön-ětüs črit, <i>he shall</i> Pl. mön-ěti črämüs, <i>we shall</i> mön-ěti čritis, <i>ye shall</i> mön-ěti črunt, <i>they shall</i>	have been advised.				

## CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
mön-ērē, mön-ētōr, <i>be thou</i> mön-ētōr, <i>let him be</i> mön-ēmīnī, [be ye mön-ēmīnōr, mön-ēntōr, <i>let them be</i>	<i>advised.</i> mön-ērī, <i>to be advised.</i>	
	mön-ītum ēssē, <i>to have been advised.</i>	mön-ītūs, <i>advised.</i>
	mön-ītum īrī, <i>to be about to be advised.</i>	
		mčn-ēndūs, <i>meet to be advised.</i>

## § 50.

## THE THIRD

## ACTIVE

		<i>Indicative Mood.</i>	<i>Conjunctive Mood.</i>
	Present Tense.	<p>S. rēg-ō, <i>I rule,</i> rēg-īs, <i>thou rulest</i> rēg-īt, <i>he rules</i></p> <p>Pl. rēg-īmūs, <i>we rule</i> rēg-ītīs, <i>ye rule</i> rēg-ūnt, <i>they rule</i></p>	<p>rēg-am, <i>I may</i> rēg-ās, <i>thou mayst</i> rēg-āt, <i>he may</i> rēg-āmūs, <i>we may</i> rēg-ātīs, <i>ye may</i> rēg-ānt, <i>they may</i></p>
	Preterimperfect.	<p>S. rēg-ēbam, <i>I was</i> rēg-ēbās, <i>thou wast</i> rēg-ēbāt, <i>he was</i></p> <p>Pl. rēg-ēbāmūs, <i>we were</i> rēg-ēbātīs, <i>ye were</i> rēg-ēbānt, <i>they were</i></p>	<p>rēg-ērem, <i>I might</i> rēg-ērēs, <i>thou mightst</i> rēg-ērēt, <i>he might</i> rēg-ērēmūs, <i>we might</i> rēg-ērētīs, <i>ye might</i> rēg-ērēnt, <i>they might</i></p>
	Preterperfect.	<p>S. rēx-ī, <i>I ruled</i> rēx-īstī, <i>thou ruledst</i> rēx-īt, <i>he ruled</i></p> <p>Pl. rēx-īmūs, <i>we ruled</i> rēx-ītīs, <i>ye ruled</i> rēx-ērūnt, <i>they ruled</i>.</p>	<p>rēx-ērim, <i>I may</i> rēx-ēris, <i>thou mayst</i> rēx-ērit, <i>he may</i> rēx-ērimūs, <i>we may</i> rēx-ēritīs, <i>ye may</i> rēx-ērint, <i>they may</i></p>
	Preterpluperfect.	<p>S. rēx-ēram, <i>I had</i> rēx-ērās, <i>thou hadst</i> rēx-ērāt, <i>he had</i></p> <p>Pl. rēx-ērāmūs, <i>we had</i> rēx-ērātīs, <i>ye had</i> rēx-ērānt, <i>they had</i></p>	<p>rēx-ēsse, <i>I would</i> rēx-ēssēs, <i>thou wouldst</i> rēx-ēssēt, <i>he would</i> rēx-ēssēmūs, <i>we would</i> rēx-ēssētīs, <i>ye would</i> rēx-ēssēnt, <i>they would</i></p>
	Future Imperfect.	<p>S. rēg-am, <i>I shall</i> rēg-ēs, <i>thou shalt</i> rēg-ēt, <i>he shall</i></p> <p>Pl. rēg-ēmūs, <i>we shall</i> rēg-ētīs, <i>ye shall</i> rēg-ēnt, <i>they shall</i></p>	<p>rēct-ūrūs sim, <i>I may</i> rēct-ūrūs sīs, <i>thou mayst</i> rēct-ūrūs sīt, <i>he may</i> rēct-ūrī simūs, <i>we may</i> rēct-ūrī sītīs, <i>ye may</i> rēct-ūrī sīnt, <i>they may</i></p>
	Future Perfect.	<p>S. rēx-ērō, <i>I shall</i> rēx-ēris, <i>thou shalt</i> rēx-ērit, <i>he shall</i></p> <p>Pl. rēx-ērimūs, <i>we shall</i> rēx-ēritīs, <i>ye shall</i> rēx-ērint, <i>they shall</i></p>	
		<p><i>Gerunds.</i> { rēg-ēndī, <i>of ruling</i>                   { rēg-ēndō, <i>for or by ruling</i>                   { rēg-ēndum, <i>the ruling</i></p>	

## CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
rēg-ě, rēg-ětō, <i>rule thou</i> rēg-ětō, <i>let him rule</i>	rēg-ěrě, <i>to rule, or be ruling.</i>	rēg-ěns, <i>ruling.</i>
rēg-ětě, rēg-ětōtě, <i>rule ye</i> rēg-ěntō, <i>let them rule</i>		
	rēx-issě, <i>to have ruled.</i>	
	rēct-ūrum ēssě, <i>to be about to rule.</i>	rēct-ūrūs, <i>about to rule.</i>
<i>Supines.</i> { rēct-um, <i>to rule.</i> { rēct-ū, <i>to be ruled.</i>		

## § 51.

THE THIRD  
PASSIVE

		<i>Indicative Mood.</i>	<i>Conjunctive Mood.</i>
	Present Tense.	S. Rēg-ōr, <i>I am</i> rēg-ērīs, <i>thou art</i> rēg-ītūr, <i>he is</i> <i>Pl.</i> rēg-īmūr, <i>we are</i> rēg-īmīnī, <i>ye are</i> rēg-ūntūr, <i>they are</i>	rēg-ār, <i>I may</i> rēg-ārīs, <i>thou mayst</i> rēg-ātūr, <i>he may</i> rēg-āmūr, <i>we may</i> rēg-āmīnī, <i>ye may</i> rēg-āntūr, <i>they may</i>
	Preterimperfect.	S. rēg-ēbār, <i>I was</i> rēg-ēbārīs, <i>thou wast</i> rēg-ēbātūr, <i>he was</i> <i>Pl.</i> rēg-ēbāmūr, <i>we were</i> rēg-ēbāmīnī, <i>ye were</i> rēg-ēbāntūr, <i>they were</i>	rēg-ērēr, <i>I might</i> rēg-ērērīs, <i>thou mightst</i> rēg-ērētūr, <i>he might</i> rēg-ērēmūr, <i>we might</i> rēg-ērēmīnī, <i>ye might</i> rēg-ērēntūr, <i>they might</i>
	Preterperfect.	S. rēct-ūs sum, <i>I was</i> rēct-ūs ēs, <i>thou wast</i> rēct-ūs ēst, <i>he was</i> <i>Pl.</i> rēct-ī sūmūs, <i>we were</i> rēct-ī ēstīs, <i>ye were</i> rēct-ī sūnt, <i>they were</i>	rēct-ūs sim, <i>I may</i> rēct-ūs sīs, <i>thou mayst</i> rēct-ūs sīt, <i>he may</i> rēct-ī sīmūs, <i>we may</i> rēct-ī sītīs, <i>ye may</i> rēct-ī sīnt, <i>they may</i>
	Preterpluperfect.	S. rēct-ūs ēram, <i>I had</i> rēct-ūs ērās, <i>thou hadst</i> rēct-ūs ērāt, <i>he had</i> <i>Pl.</i> rēct-ī ērāmūs, <i>we had</i> rēct-ī ērātīs, <i>ye had</i> rēct-ī ērānt, <i>they had</i>	rēct-ūs ēssem, <i>I would</i> rēct-ūs ēssēs, <i>thou wouldest</i> rēct-ūs ēssēt, <i>he would</i> rēct-ī ēssēmūs, <i>we would</i> rēct-ī ēssētīs, <i>ye would</i> rēct-ī ēssēnt, <i>they would</i>
	Future Imperfect.	S. rēg-ār, <i>I shall</i> rēg-ērīs, <i>thou shalt</i> rēg-ētūr, <i>he shall</i> <i>Pl.</i> rēg-ēmūr, <i>we shall</i> rēg-ēmīnī, <i>ye shall</i> rēg-ēntūr, <i>they shall</i>	be ruled.
	Future Perfect.	S. rēct-ūs ērō, <i>I shall</i> rēct-ūs ērīs, <i>thou shalt</i> rēct-ūs ērīt, <i>he shall</i> <i>Pl.</i> rēct-ī ērīmūs, <i>we shall</i> rēct-ī ērītīs, <i>ye shall</i> rēct-ī ērūnt, <i>they shall</i>	have been ruled.

## CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
rěg-ěrě, rěg-ítör, <i>be thou</i> rěg-ítör, <i>let him be</i> rěg-ěmínī, rěg-ěmínör, <i>be</i> [ye] rěg-üntör, <i>let them be</i>	rěg-ī, <i>to be ruled.</i>	
	rěct-um ēssě, <i>to have been ruled.</i>	rěct-čis, <i>ruled.</i>
	rěc-tum īrī, <i>to be about to be ruled.</i>	
		rěg-ēndüs, <i>meet to be ruled.</i>

		<i>Indicative Mood.</i>	<i>Conjunctive Mood.</i>
	Present Tense.	S. aūd-īō, <i>I hear</i> aūd-īs, <i>thou hearest</i> aūd-īt, <i>he hears</i> Pl. aūd-īmūs, <i>we hear</i> aūd-ītīs, <i>ye hear</i> aūd-īnt, <i>they hear.</i>	aūd-īam, <i>I may</i> aūd-īās, <i>thou mayst</i> aūd-īāt, <i>he may</i> aūd-īāmūs, <i>we may</i> aūd-īātīs, <i>ye may</i> aūd-īānt, <i>they may</i>
	Preterimperfect.	S. aūd-īēbam, <i>I was</i> aūd-īēbās, <i>thou wast</i> aūd-īēbāt, <i>he was</i> Pl. aūd-īēbāmūs, <i>we were</i> aūd-īēbātīs, <i>ye were</i> aūd-īēbānt, <i>they were</i>	aūd-īrem, <i>I might</i> aūd-īrēs, <i>thou mightst</i> aūd-īrēt, <i>he might</i> aūd-īrēmūs, <i>we might</i> aūd-īrētīs, <i>ye might</i> aūd-īrēnt, <i>they might</i>
	Preterperfect.	S. aūd-īvī, <i>I heard</i> aūd-īvīstī, <i>thou heardst</i> aūd-īvīt, <i>he heard</i> Pl. aūd-īvīmūs, <i>we heard</i> aūd-īvīstīs, <i>ye heard</i> aūd-īvērūnt, <i>they heard.</i>	aūd-īvērim, <i>I may</i> aūd-īvēris, <i>thou mayst</i> aūd-īvērīt, <i>he may</i> aūd-īvērimūs, <i>we may</i> aūd-īvērītīs, <i>ye may</i> aūd-īvērīnt, <i>they may</i>
	Preterpluperfect.	S. aūd-īvēram, <i>I had</i> aūd-īvērās, <i>thou hadst</i> aūd-īvērāt, <i>he had</i> Pl. aūd-īvērāmūs, <i>we had</i> aūd-īvērātīs, <i>ye had</i> aūd-īvērānt, <i>they had</i>	aūd-īvissēm, <i>I would</i> aūd-īvissēs, <i>thou wouldst</i> aūd-īvissēt, <i>he would</i> aūd-īvissēmūs, <i>we would</i> aūd-īvissētīs, <i>ye would</i> aūd-īvissēnt, <i>they would</i>
	Future Imperfect.	S. aūd-īam, <i>I shall</i> aūd-īēs, <i>thou shalt</i> aūd-īēt, <i>he shall</i> Pl. aūd-īēmūs, <i>we shall</i> aūd-īētīs, <i>ye shall</i> aūd-īēnt, <i>they shall</i>	aūd-ītūrūs sim, <i>I may</i> aūd-ītūrūs sīs, <i>thou mayst</i> aūd-ītūrūs sīt, <i>he may</i> aūd-ītūrī sīmūs, <i>we may</i> aūd-ītūrī sītīs, <i>ye may</i> aūd-ītūrī sīnt, <i>they may</i>
Future Perfect.		S. aūd-īvērō, <i>I shall</i> aūd-īvēris, <i>thou shalt</i> aūd-īvērīt, <i>he shall</i> Pl. aūd-īvērimūs, <i>we shall</i> aūd-īvērītīs, <i>ye shall</i> aūd-īvērīnt, <i>they shall</i>	be about to hear.
<i>Gerunds.</i>		$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{aūd-īēndī, of hearing} \\ \text{aūd-īēndō, for or by hearing} \\ \text{aūd-īēndum, the hearing.} \end{array} \right.$	

## CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
aūd-ī, aūd-ītō, <i>hear thou</i> aūd-ītō, <i>let him hear</i>  aūd-ītē, aūd-ītōtē, <i>hear ye</i> aūd-īuntō, <i>let them hear.</i>	aūd-īrě, <i>to hear, or be hearing.</i>	aūd-īēns, <i>hearing.</i>
	aūd-īvissč, <i>to have heard.</i>	
	aūd-ītūrum ēssč, <i>to be about to hear.</i>	aūd-ītūrūs, <i>about to hear.</i>
<i>Supines.</i> { aūd-ītum, <i>to hear</i> { aūd-ītū, <i>to be heard.</i>		

## § 53.

## THE FOURTH

## PASSIVE

		<i>Indicative Mood.</i>		<i>Conjunctive Mood.</i>	
		Present Tense.			
	S.	aūd-ÿör, <i>I am</i> aūd-īrís, <i>thou art</i> aūd-ítür, <i>he is</i>	heard.	aūd-ÿär, <i>I may</i> aūd-ÿärís, <i>thou mayst</i> aūd-ÿätür, <i>he may</i> aūd-ÿämür, <i>we may</i> aūd-ÿämíní, <i>ye may</i> aūd-ÿäntür, <i>they may</i>	be heard.
	Pl.	aūd-ímür, <i>we are</i> aūd-imíní, <i>ye are</i> aūd-ÿüntür, <i>they are</i>			
	S.	aūd-ÿebär, <i>I was</i> aūd-ÿebärís, <i>thou wast</i> aūd-ÿebätür, <i>he was</i>	bring heard.	aūd-irér, <i>I might</i> aūd-irérís, <i>thou mightst</i> aūd-irétür, <i>he might</i> aūd-irémür, <i>we might</i> aūd-irémíní, <i>ye might</i> aūd-iréntür, <i>they might</i>	be heard.
	Pl.	aūd-ÿebámür, <i>we were</i> aūd-ÿebámíní, <i>ye were</i> aūd-ÿebántür, <i>they were</i>			
	S.	aūd-ítüs sum, <i>I was</i> aūd-ítüs és, <i>thou wast</i> aūd-ítüs ést, <i>he was</i>	heard.	aūd-ítüs sim, <i>I may</i> aūd-ítüs sís, <i>thou mayst</i> aūd-ítüs sít, <i>he may</i> aūd-ítü símüs, <i>we may</i> aūd-ítü sítis, <i>ye may</i> aūd-ítü sít, <i>they may</i>	have been heard.
	Pl.	aūd-ítü sümüs, <i>we were</i> aūd-ítü éstis, <i>ye were</i> aūd-ítü sünit, <i>they were</i>			
	S.	aūd-ítüs éram, <i>I had</i> aūd-ítüs érás, <i>thou hadst</i> aūd-ítüs érät, <i>he had</i>	been heard.	aūd-ítüs éssem, <i>I would</i> aūd-ítüs éssés, <i>thou wculdst</i> aūd-ítüs éssét, <i>he would</i> aūd-ítü éssémüs, <i>we would</i> aūd-ítü éssétis, <i>ye would</i> aūd-ítü éssent, <i>they would</i>	been heard.
	Pl.	aūd-ítü érámüs, <i>we had</i> aūd-ítü érátis, <i>ye had</i> aūd-ítü éránt, <i>they had</i>			
	S.	aūd-ÿär, <i>I shall</i> aūd-ÿerís, <i>thou shalt</i> aūd-ÿetür, <i>he shall</i>	be heard.		
	Pl.	aūd-ÿemür, <i>we shall</i> aūd-ÿemíní, <i>ye shall</i> aūd-ÿentür, <i>they shall</i>			
	S.	aūd-ítüs érō, <i>I shall</i> aūd-ítüs érís, <i>thou shalt</i> aūd-ítüs érit, <i>he shall</i>	have been heard.		
	Pl.	aūd-ítü érlínüs, <i>we shall</i> aūd-ítü éritis, <i>ye shall</i> aūd-ítü érunt, <i>they shall</i>			

## CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
aūd-īrē, aūd-ītōr, <i>be thou</i> aūd-ītōr, <i>let him be</i> aūd-īmīnī, aūd-īmīnōr, <i>be</i> [ye] aūd-īūntōr, <i>let them be</i>	<i>heard.</i>  aūd-īrī, <i>to be heard.</i>	
	aūd-ītūm ēssē, <i>to have been heard.</i>	aūd-ītūs, <i>heard.</i>
	aūd-ītūm īrī, <i>to be about to be heard.</i>	
		aūd-īēndūs. <i>meet to be heard.</i>

## ON THE SIGNS OF THE TENSES.

§ 54. Most of the Tenses have more than one Sign, or may be put into English in more than one way, though in the foregoing tables only one is given.

## SIGNS OF TENSES IN THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Amō, *I—love*, or *am loving*.

Preterimp. Amābam, *I—loved*, or *was loving*, or *used to love*.

Preterperf. Amāvī, *I—loved*, or *have loved*.

Preterplup. Amāvēram, *I had loved*.

Fut. Imp. Amābō, *I—shall or will — love*, or *be loving*.

Fut. Perf. Amāvērō, *I—shall or will — have loved*.

SIGNS OF TENSES IN THE CONJUNCTIVE MOOD,  
WHEN POTENTIAL.

Pres. Amem, *I—may*, or *can*, or *would*, or *should*, or *could — love*, or *be loving*.

Preterimp. Amārem, *I—might*, or *would*, or *should*, or *could — love*, or *be loving*, or *have been loving*.

Preterperf. Amāvērim, *I—may*, or *can*, or *might*, or *would*, or *should*, or *could — have loved*, or *love*.

Preterplup. Amāvēssem, *I—might*, or *would*, or *should*, or *could — have loved*.

## § 55.

*Note 1.* When the Conjunctive Mood is truly *Subjunctive* (that is to say, *subjoined* to governing Conjunctions or Relative Pronouns,) it often has the same signs as the Indicative: as,

Laūdāběřis      mōdō      pārēās.  
*Thou wilt be praised if thou obeyest.*  
 Laūdābär      quum pārērem.  
*I was praised when I obeyed.*  
 Laūdātūr      quōd      pārūērīt.  
*He is praised because he obeyed*  
 Laūdāvī ēum quī      pārūissēt.  
*I praised him who had obeyed.*

*Note 2.* The Present Conjunctive is also used for the Imperative Mood: as,

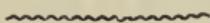
Act. Amem, *may I love*, or *let me love*.  
 Amēs, *mayst thou love*, or *love thou*.  
 Amēt, *may he love*, or *let him love*.  
 Amēměs, *may we love*, or *let us love*.  
 Amētīs, *may ye love*, or *love ye*.  
 Amēnt, *may they love*, or *let them love*

**Pass.** Aměr, *may I be loved, or let me be loved.*  
 Aměřis, *mayst thou be loved, or be thou loved.*  
 Amětūr, *may he be loved, or let him be loved.*  
 Aměmūr, *may we be loved, or let us be loved.*  
 Aměmīnī. *may ye be loved, or be ye loved.*  
 Aměntūr, *may they be loved, or let them be loved.*

**Note 3.** The Infinitive in *re* stands for the Preterimperfect as well as for the Present Tense : and the Infinitive in *isse* stands for the Preterpluperfect as well as for the Preterperfect Tense : as

(1) Dicět mē āmārě.  
*He says (that) I am loving.*  
 Díxit mē āmārě.  
*He said (that) I was loving.*

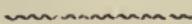
(2) Dicět mē āmāvissě.  
*He says (that) I loved, or have loved.*  
 Díxit mē āmāvissě.  
*He said (that) I had loved.*



## VERBS IN *IO* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

**§ 56.** Verbs in *io* of the Third Conjugation, in the Tenses derived from the Present-stem, throw away *i* before another *i*; but keep it before *a, o, u*, and *e*, except before *er* or *e* final : as, răpí-ō, răp-ě, răpí-ūnt, răp-ěrě, răpí-ěbam, răpí-am, răp-ěrem, răp-ī, răpí-ěns, &c. These Verbs are the following with their compounds :

Căpíō, căpíō, făcíō, jăciō,  
 Făgíō, fădíō, păriō, lăciō,  
 Răpiō, săpiō, spăciō, quătiō,  
 Grădičr, măriōr, pătiōr, pătiōr.



## § 57.

### VARIETIES OF FORM.

(a) The following changes are made in the several Conjugations, chiefly by the poets :

I. *Avis* into *as* ; as, āmăsti for āmăvistī ; āmăssě for āmăvissě.  
*Aver* into *ar* ; as, āmărūnt for āmăvērūnt ; āmăram for āmăvēram.

**II.** *Evis* into *es*; as, īplēssem for īplēvīssem, īplēssē for īplēvīssē.

*Ever* into *er*; as, īplērūnt for īplēvērūnt; īplērō for īplēvērō.

**IV.** *Iv* into *i*; as, aūdīit for aūdīvīt; aūdīērūnt for aūdīvērūnt.

*Ivis* into *iis*, or *is*; as, aūdīissē and aūdīssē for aūdīvīssē.

**Note.** Nōvī, in the Third Conjugation, changes *ovis* into *os*; as, nōstī for nōvistī: and *over* into *or*; as, nōram for nōvēram. Pētīvī from pētō, and dēsivī from dēsīnō, take the same changes as Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

(b) The Third Person Plural of the Preterperfect Active often ends in *ērē* instead of *ērūnt*; as,

Amāvērūnt or āmāvērē.

Mōnūērūnt or mōnūērē.

Rēxērūnt or rēxērē.

Aūdīvērūnt or aūdīvērē.

**Note.** We must not change āvērē into ārē, or ēvērē into ērē: thus, āmāvērē must not become āmārē, nor īmplēvērē īplērē, because these are the forms of the Infinitive.

(c) In the Second Persons Singular of several Passive Tenses, *re* is often put for *ris*; as,

**I.** Amābārīs or āmābārē; āmābērīs or āmābērē.  
Amērīs or āmērē; āmārērīs or āmārērē.

**II.** Mōnēbārīs or mōnēbārē; mōnēbērīs or mōnēbērē.  
Mōnēārīs or mōnēārē; mōnērērīs or mōnērērē.

**III.** Rēgēbārīs or rēgēbārē; rēgērīs or rēgērē.  
Rēgārīs or rēgārē; rēgērērīs or rēgērērē.

**IV.** Aūdīēbārīs or aūdīēbārē; aūdīērīs or aūdīērē.  
Aūdīārīs or aūdīārē; aūdīrērīs or aūdīrērē.

**Note.** It is not usual to write *re* for *ris* in the Second Person Present Passive, on account of the confusion with Infin. Act. and Imperat. Pass. But in Deponent Verbs the change is less objectionable; as, hōrtārē for hōrtārīs.

(d) In the Passive Tenses formed with the Auxiliary Verb sum, fūī may be used for sum; fūēram for ēram; fūērō for ērō; fūērim for sim; and fūīssem for ēssem; with a stronger past force: as,

Amātūs	{	sum or fūī, <i>I was, or have been</i>	{	loved.
Mōnitūs		ěram or fūěram, <i>I had been</i>		advised.
Rēctūs		ěrō or fūěrō, <i>I shall have been</i>		ruled.
Aūditūs		sim, or fūěrim, <i>I may have been</i>		heard.
		ěssem, or fūěssem, <i>I should have been</i>		

(e) Dīcō, dūcō, fācīō make in the Second Person Imperative dīc, dūc, fāc.

(f) The old Infinitive Passive in *ier* for *i*, is sometimes used by the epic poets ; as, āmāriēr for āmāri.

(g) The Participle in *dus* of 3d and 4th Conj. is sometimes formed in *undus* as well as *endus*, especially that of Verbs in *io* ; as fācīēndūs or fācīūndūs.

### PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

§ 58. The Participles in *rus* and *dus* may be conjugated with all the Tenses of the Verb *sum* : and this is called the Periphrastic Conjugation ; as,

#### ACTIVE VOICE.

	(I) am	was	have been	shall be	shall have been	
Amātūrūs	sum	ěram	fūī	ěrō	fūěrō	about to love.
	ěs	ěrās	fūěstī	ěris	fūěris	
	ěst	ěrāt	fūět	ěrit	fūěrit	
Amātūrī	sūmūs	ěrāmūs	fūěmūs	ěrimūs	fūěrimūs	about to love.
	ěstīs	ěrātīs	fūěstīs	ěritīs	fūěritīs	
	sūnt	ěrānt	fūěrūnt	ěrūnt	fūěrīnt	

And the other Moods in like manner.

#### PASSIVE VOICE.

	(I) am	was	have been	shall be	shall have been	
Amāndūs	sum	ěram	fūī	ěrō	fūěrō	meet to be loved
	ěs	ěrās	fūěstī	ěris	fūěris	
	ěst	ěrāt	fūět	ěrit	fūěrit	
Amāndī	sūmūs	ěrāmūs	fūěmūs	ěrimūs	fūěrimūs	meet to be loved
	ěstīs	ěrātīs	fūěstīs	ěritīs	fūěritīs	
	sūnt	ěrānt	fūěrūnt	ěrūnt	fūěrīnt	

And the other Moods in like manner.

*Note.* The Participle in *dus* is often called the Gerundive.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 59. Deponent Verbs follow the Passive Conjugation, but take also Gerunds, Supines, and Participles Active. Intransitive Deponents want the Supine in *u*, and Participle in *dus*.

## (a) CONJUGATION OF TRANSITIVE DEPONENTS.

1 <i>I exhort,</i>	2 <i>fear,</i>	3 <i>speak,</i>	4 <i>divide.</i>
Hōrt-ōr	věr-ěör	lōqu-ōr	pārt-ǐör
Hōrt-āris	věr-ēřis	lōqu-ěřis	pārt-ǐřis
Hōrt-ātūs sum	věr-ǐtūs sum	lōcū-tūs sum	pārt-ǐtūs sum
Hōrt-ārī	věr-ēřī	lōqu-ī	pārt-ǐřī
Hōrt-āndī	věr-ēndī	lōqu-ēndī	pārt-ěendī
Hōrt-āndō	věr-ēndō	lōqu-ēndō	pārt īendō
Hōrt-āndum	věr-ēndum	lōqu-ēndum	pārt-ěendum
Hōrt-ātūm	věr-ǐtūm	lōcū-tūm	pārt-ǐtūm
Hōrt-ātū	věr-ǐtū	lōcū-tū	pārt-ǐtū
Hōrt-āns	věr-ēns	lōqu-ēns	pārt-ěens
Hōrt-ātūs	věr-ǐtūs	lōcū-tūs	pārt-ǐtūs
Hōrt-ātūrūs	věr-ǐtūrūs	lōcū-tūrūs	pārt-ǐtūrūs
Hōrt-āndūs.	věr-ēndūs.	lōqu-ēndūs.	pārt-ěendūs.

## (b) CONJUGATION OF INTRANSITIVE DEPONENTS

1 <i>I wander,</i>	2	3 <i>fall,</i>	4 <i>fawn.</i>
Väg-ōr		lāb-ōr	blānd-ǐör
Väg-āris		lāb-ěřis	blānd-ǐřis
Väg-ātūs sum		lāp-sūs sum	blānd-ǐtūs sum
Väg-ārī		lāb-ī	blānd-ǐřī
Väg-āndī		lāb-ēndī	blānd-ěendī
Väg-āndō	None	lāb-ēndō	blānd-ěendō
Väg-āndum		lāb-ēndum	blānd-ěendum
Väg-ātūm		lāp-sum	blānd-ǐtūm
Väg-āns		lāb-ēns	blānd-ěens
Väg-ātūs		lāp-sūs	blānd-ǐtūs
Väg-ātūrūs.		lāp-sūrūs.	blānd-ǐtūrūs.

## VERBA DERIVATA, DERIVED VERBS.

§ 60. I. Frēquēntātīvă, Frequentative Verbs, express the repetition of an action, are of the 1st Conjugation, and end in -ito, -to, -tor : as, rōg-ítō, *I ash often*, from rōg-ō; mǐn-ítōr, *I threaten often*, from mǐn-ōr; cān-tō, *I sing often*, from cān-ō.

II. Incēptīvă or Inchōātīvă, Inceptive Verbs, express the beginning of an action, are of the 3rd Conjugation, and end in -āscō, -ēscō, -īscō.

Some are derived from Verbs : as,

Lāb-āscō, *I begin to totter*; from lāb-ō, (lāb-ās).

Pāll-ēscō, *I turn pale*; „ pāll-ēō, (pāll-ēs).

Trēm-īscō, *I begin to tremble*; „ trēm-ō, (trēm-īs).

Sc-īscō, *I begin to know*; „ scī-ō, (scīs).

Some from Nouns : as,

Pūer-āscō, *I become a boy*; from pūér.

Mīt-ēscō, *I become mild*; „ mītīs.

III. Dēsīdērātīvă, Desiderative Verbs, express the desire of an action, are of the 4th Conjugation, ending in -ūriō, and derived from Supines in -um : as,

Es-ūriō, *I am hungry*; from ēdō, ēs-um.



## VERBA ANOMALA, IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 61. Irregular Verbs are such as do not form their Tenses according to the common rules : as,

- (1) Pōssum, pōtēs, pōtūī, pōssē, pōtūissē, pōtēns, *to be able*.
- (2) Vōlō, vīs, vōlūī, vēllē, vōlūissē, vōlēndī, vōlēndō, vōlēndum, vōlēns, *to be willing*.
- (3) Nōlō, nōnvīs, nōlūī, nōllē, nōlūissē, nōlēndī, nōlēndō, nōlēndum, nōlēns, *to be unwilling*.
- (4) Mālō, māvīs, mālūī, māllē, mālūissē, mālēndī, mālēndō, mālēndum, mālēns, *to be more willing*.
- (5) Eō, īs, īvī, īrē, īvīssē, ītūrum ēssē, ēündī, ēündō, ēündum, ītū, ītū, ēūns or īēns, ītūrūs, *to go*.
- (6) Fērō, fērs, tūlī, fērrē, tūlīssē, lātūrum ēssē, fērēndī, fērēndō, fērēndum, lātūm, lātū, fērēns, lātūrūs, *to bear*
- (7) Fīō, fīs, fāctūs sum, fīērī, fāctūm ēssē, fāctūm īrī, fāctūs, fācīēndūs, *to become or be made*.
- (8) Fērōr, fērrīs, lātūs sum, fērī, lātūm ēssē, lātūm īrī, lātūs, fērēndūs, *to be borne*.

## 62.

Indicative Mood.		Purul.		Singular.		Conjunctive Mood.		Plural.	
Singular.	Purul.	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Purul.	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Pōssum	pōtēst	pōssūmūs	pōtēstis	pōssūnt.	Pōs-sim	-sīs	-sīt	-sīmūs	-sītīs
Vōlō	vis	vōltīs	vōltīs	vōlūnt.	Vēl-im	-īs	-īt	-īmūs	-ītīs
Nōlō	nōnvis	nōnvūlt	nōlūmūs	nōnvūltīs	Nōl-im	-īs	-īt	-īmūs	-ītīs
Mālō	māvis	māvūlt	mālūmūs	māvūltīs	Māl-im	-īs	-īt	-īmūs	-ītīs
Eō	is	īt	ītīs	ēunt.	E-am	-ās	-āt	-āmūs	-ātīs
Fērō	fērs	fērt	fērtīs	fērūnt.	Fēr-am	-ās	-āt	-āmūs	-ātīs
Fiō	· fīs	fit	fītīs	fīnt.	Fi-am	-ārīs	-ātūr	-āmūr	-ātīnī
Fērōr	fērīs	fērtūr	fērīmūr	fērimīnī fērūntūr.	Fēr-är	-ārīs	-ātūr	-āmūr	-ātīnī
Pōt-ēram	-črās	-črāt	-črāmūs	-črānt	Pōs-sem	-sēs	-sēt	-sēmūs	-sētīs
Vōl-ēbam	-ēbām	-ēbāt	-ēbāmūs	-ēbānt.	Vēl-lem	-lēs	-lēt	-lēmūs	-lētīs
Nōl-ēbam					Nōl-lem				
Māl-ēbam	-ēbām	-bāt	-bāmūs	-bānt.	Māl-lem	-rēs	-rēt	-rēmūs	-rētīs
I-bam					I-rem				
Fēr-ēbam	-ēbām	-ēbāt	-ēbāmūs	-ēbānt.	Fēr-rem	-rēs	-rēt	-rēmūs	-rētīs
Fi-ēbam					Fī-rem				
Fēr-ēbār	-ēbārīs	-ēbātūr	-ēbāmūr	-ēbāmīnī -ēbāntūr.	Fēr-rēr	-rērīs	-rētūr	-rēmūr	-rēmīnī -rēntūr.
Pōt-ūi	-ūstī	-ūt	-ūmūs	-ūrūnt.	Pōt-đerīn	-đērīs	-đērīt	-đērīmūs	-đērītīs
Vōl-ūi					Vōl-đerīm				
Nōl-ūi	-ūstī	-ūt	-ūmūs	-ūrūnt.	Nōl-đerīm	-đērīs	-đērīt	-đērīmūs	-đērītīs
Māl-ūi					Māl-đerīm				
Iv-ī	-istī	-it	-imūs	-ērūnt.	Iv-đerīm	sim	sīt	-ērīmūs	-ērītīs
Tūl-ī					Tūl-đerīm				
Fāctūs	sum ēst	ēst	factī	sūmūs ēstīs	Fāctūs	Lātūs	sīt	sīmūs sītīs	sītītīs
Lātūs					Lātūs				



§ 63. (o) *Edō, I eat, ēdīs or ēs, ēdī, ēdērē or ēssē, ēdissē, ēsūrum ēssē, ēdēndī, ēdēndō, ēdēndum, ēsum, ēsū, ēdēns, ēsūrūs, to eat.*

*Pres. Indic. Act.*

*Sing.* *Edō, ēdīs or ēs, ēdīt or ēst:*

*Plur.* *ēdīmūs, ēdītīs or ēstīs, ēdūnt.*

*Conjunct. Preterimp. Act.*

*Sing.* *Edērem or ēssem, ēdērēs or ēssēs, ēdērēt or ēssēt.*

*Plur.* *ēdērēmūs or ēssēmūs, ēdērētīs or ēssētīs, ēdērēnt or ēssēnt.*

*Imperative Mood.*

*Sing.* *2d Pers. Edē or ēs; ēdītō or ēstō;*

*3d Pers. ēdītō or ēstō;*

*Plur.* *2d Pers. ēdītē or ēstē, ēdītōtē or ēstōtē;*

*3d Pers. ēdūntō.*

*Obs.* The other Tenses are regular: also the Passive Voice; except that ēstūr may be used for ēdītūr, and ēssētūr for ēdērētūr.

VERBA DEFECTIVA, DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 64. Defective Verbs are such as want many of the usual parts of a Verb.

(1) *Aīō, I say; and īnquam, say I.*

	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Conj.</i>	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Conj.</i>
<i>Present</i>	Aīō	—	Inquam	—
	āīs	āīās	īnquiās	īnquiās.
	āīt	āīāt	īnquiāt	īnquiāt.
	—	—	īnquiāmūs	—
	—	—	īnquiātīs	īnquiātīs.
	āīūnt.	āīānt	īnquiānt	īnquiānt.
<i>Preternimperfect.</i>	aiēbam	—	īnquiēbam	—
	aiēbās	—	īnquiēbās	—
	aiēbāt	—	īnquiēbāt	—
	aiēbāmūs	—	īnquiēbāmūs	—
	aiēbātīs	—	īnquiēbātīs	—
	aiēbānt	—	īnquiēbānt.	—

*Præterperf.* —, *inquiſtī*, *Inquiſt*, —, *inquiſtīſ*, —.

*Fut. Imperf.* —, *Inquiſtēs*, *Inquiſtēt*.

*Imper.* *inquiſtē*, *inquiſtō*; *Inquiſtēt*.

*Part.* of *aīō*, *aīēns*.

## § 65.

(2) *Quāsō*, *I entreat*; 1st Pers. Pl. *quāsūmūs*.

(3) *Fārī*, *to speak*; used by the Poets in this and a few other forms, as *fātūr*, *he speaks*; *fābōr*, *I shall speak*; *fārē*, *speak thou*; *Part.* (*fāns*), *fāntīs*, &c.; *fātūs*; *fāndūs*; *Ger.* *fāndī*, *fāndō*; *Sup.* *fātū*.

(4) The Imperatives;

*Apāgē*, *begone*.

*Avē*, *āvētē*, *hail*; *Infin.* *āvērē*.

*Cēdō*, *cēditē*, or *cēttē*, *give me*.

*Sālvē*, *sālvētē*, *hail*; *Infin.* *sālvērē*; *Fut.* *sālvēbīs*.

*Vālē*, *vālētē*, *farewell*; *Infin.* *vālērē*.

(5) *Aūsim*, *aūsīs*, *aūsīt* —, —, *aūsīnt*: for *aūdēam*, *I may dare*.

*Fāxim*, *fāxīs*, *fāxit*, *fāxīmūs*, *fāxītīs*, *fāxīnt*: for *fāciām*, *I may do*, or *fēcērim*, *I may have done*.

Also *fāxō*, for *fāciām*, *I shall do*, or *fēcērō*, *I shall have done*.

## § 66.

(6) *Prætēritīvā*; or Verbs conjugated only in the Præterperfect and its derived Tenses; *cēpī*, *I begin*; *ōdī*, *I hate*; *mēmīnī*, *I remember*.

	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Conj.</i>	<i>Infin.</i>	<i>Part.</i>
<i>Præterperf.</i>	<i>Cēpī</i>	<i>cēpērim</i>	<i>cēpīssē</i> .	—
	<i>Odī</i>	<i>ōdērim</i>	<i>ōdīssē</i> .	—
	<i>Mēmīnī</i>	<i>mēmīnērim</i>	<i>mēmīnīssē</i> .	—
<i>Præterpl.</i>	<i>Cēpēram</i>	<i>cēpīssem.</i>	—	—
	<i>Odēram</i>	<i>ōdīssem.</i>	—	—
	<i>Mēmīnēram</i>	<i>mēmīnīssem.</i>	—	—
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>Cēpērō</i>	—	<i>cēptūrum ēssē</i>	<i>cēptūrūs.</i>
	<i>Odērō</i>	—	<i>ōsūrum ēssē</i>	<i>ōsūrūs.</i>
	<i>Mēmīnērō.</i>	—	—	—

*Imper. Sing.* *Mēmēntō*, *Plur.* *mēmēntōtē*.

*Obs.* 1. For *cēpī* and its Tenses may be used the Passive *cēptūs sum* and its Tenses before an Infinitive Passive.

*Obs.* 2. *Nōvī*, *I know*, Preterp. of *nōscō*, is also used as a Præteritive.

## § 67.

(7) Impersonal Verbs are conjugated only in the Third Persons Singular of the Proper Moods, and in the Infinitive Mood.

A. Impersonal Verbs Active have no Passive Voice. The principal of these are of the 2nd Conjugation.

Opōrtēt, tādēt, mīsērēt,  
Pīgēt, pūdēt, pēnītēt,  
Lībēt, līcēt, līquēt, et  
Dēcēt ātquē dēdēcēt.

	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Conjunc.</i>	<i>Infin.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	Opōrtēt	öpōrtēt	čpōrtērē.
<i>Preterimp.</i>	Opōrtēbāt	öpōrtērēt	—
<i>Preterperf.</i>	Opōrtūit	öpōrtūerīt	öpōrtūissē.
<i>Preterplu.</i>	Opōrtūerāt	öpōrtūissēt	—
<i>Fut. Imp.</i>	Opōrtēbit.		
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	Opōrtūerīt.		

The Persons are expressed by the Cases following the Verb: as,

	<i>Pres. Indic.</i>
<i>Sing.</i>	Opōrtēt mē, <i>it behoves me</i> , or <i>I am behoven.</i>
	Opōrtēt tē, — <i>thee</i> , or <i>thou art</i> —
	Opōrtēt ēum, — <i>him</i> , or <i>he is</i> —
<i>Plur.</i>	Opōrtēt nōs, — <i>us</i> , or <i>we are</i> —
	Opōrtēt vōs, — <i>you</i> , or <i>ye are</i> —
	Opōrtēt ēōs, — <i>them</i> , or <i>they are</i> —

And so in the other Tenses.

§ 68. B. Intransitive Verbs may be used impersonally in the Passive Voice: as, lūdītūr, from lūdō, *I play.*

	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Conjunc.</i>	<i>Infin.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	Lūdītūr	lūdātūr	lūdī.
<i>Preterimp.</i>	Lūdēbātūr	lūdērētūr.	—
<i>Preterperf.</i>	Lūsum ēst	lūsum sít	lūsum ēssē.
<i>Preterplu.</i>	Lūsum ērāt	lūsum ēssēt	lūsum fūissē.
<i>Fut. Imp.</i>	Lūdētūr	—	lūsum īrī.
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	Lūsum ērīt.	—	—

The Persons are expressed by an Ablative Case with the Preposition *a* or *ab* following the Verb : as,

Pres. Indic.

<i>Sing.</i>	Lūdītūr ā mē,	<i>it is played by me,</i>	or <i>I play.</i>
	Lūdītūr ā tē,	—	<i>thee, or thou playest.</i>
	Lūdītūr ab ěō,	—	<i>him, or he plays.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Lūdītūr ā nōbīs	—	<i>us, or we play.</i>
	Lūdītūr ā vōbīs,	—	<i>you or ye play.</i>
	Lūdītūr ab ěīs,	—	<i>them or they play.</i>

And so in the other Tenses.

§ 69. C. The Neuter of the Gerundive Participle in *dus*, is used impersonally, in the same manner, with a Dative or Ablative after it to mark the Persons : as,

Pres. Indic.

<i>S.</i>	Lūdēndūm ēst mīhi,	<i>it must be played by me,</i>	or <i>I</i>
	Lūdēndūm ēst tībi,	—	<i>thee, or thou</i>
	Lūdēndūm ēst ěī,	—	<i>him, or he</i>
<i>P.</i>	Lūdēndūm ēst nōbīs,	<i>it must be played by us,</i>	or <i>we</i>
	Lūdēndūm ēst vōbīs,	—	<i>you, or ye</i>
	Lūdēndūm ēst ěīs,	—	<i>them, or they</i>

*must play.*

And so in the other Tenses.

(The Particles are treated of in other parts of this Grammar.)

## L. OF THE GENDER OF NOUNS

§ 70.

### A. GENERAL RULES.

(1.)

*Vīrī, Pōpūlī, ēt Dīvī,  
Vēntī, Mēnsēs, Mōntēs, Rīvī*  
Gēnērīs sūnt Māscūlīnī.

(2.)

*Plāntē, Dīvē, Fēmīnē,  
Tērrē, Urbēs, Insūlē*  
Gēnērīs sūnt Fēmīnī.

(3.)

*Vōx īdēclīnābilīs  
Neūtriūs ēst Gēnērīs.*

(4.)

Sūnt Cōmmūnīs Gēnērīs  
*Civīs, hōstīs, jūvēnīs,  
Tēstīs, jūdēx, ārtīfēx,  
Aūctōr, ēxsūl, ōpīfēx,  
Cōmēs, hērēs, hōspēs, dūx,  
Obsēs, īntēprēs, cōnjūx,  
Incōlā, sācērdōs, vīndēx,  
Adōlēscēns, īnfāns, īndēx,  
Pārēns, prāsūl, pār, cūstōs,  
Mūnicēps, sātēllēs, bōs,  
Milēs, vātēs, aūgūr, grūs,  
Cānīs, tigrīs, sērpēns, sūs:  
Dāmā, tālpā jūngīmūs.*

## B. OF GENDER IN THE DECLENSIONS.

§ 71.

### I. FIRST DECLENSION:

#### PRINCIPAL RULE.

*A ēt ē sūnt Fēmīnīnā; | As ēt ēs sūnt Māscūlīnā.*

#### EXCEPTIONS.

Māscūlīnā sūnt In a  
Māscūlōrum nōmīnā,

| Ut naūtā, vērnd ēt pōetā.  
Scūrrā, scribā ēt prōphētā.

§ 72.

## II. SECOND DECLENSION.

## PRINCIPAL RULE.

Māscūlinīs *üs* ēt *er*,Neūtrīs *um* trībūitūr.

## EXCEPTIONS.

(1) Fēmīnīnā sūnt īn *üs*  
*Alvūs, āretūs, cārbāsūs,*  
*Cōlūs, hūmūs, mēthōdūs;*

(2) Neūtrā *vīrūs, pēlāgūs.*  
*Vūlgūs fērē Neūtrum sīt,*  
*Māscūlūm sūbindē fit.*

§ 73.

## III. THIRD DECLENSION.

## (a) FIRST PRINCIPAL RULE.

Māscūlīs īnsēritur

Quōd claūdit *o, or, os, vēl er,*Et Nōmēn dēsīnēns īn *es*

Sī flēctit cāsūs īmpārēs.

## EXCEPTIONS.

(1) Illā Fēmīnīnā sūnt  
*In do ēt go quāē dēsīnūnt :*  
*Sēd Māscūlinā mānēnt cārdō,*  
*Līgō, ūrdō ātquē mārgō.*

*Æquōr, ādōr, mārmōr, cōr*  
*Fēmīnīnum ēst ārbōr.*

(2) Sūnt īn *io* Fēmīnīnā :  
*Tāntum illā Māscūlinā,*  
*Quāē vēl őcūlīs spēctābīs,*  
*Vēl tū mānībūs trāctābīs.*

(5) Fēmīnīnā *cōs* ēt *dōs,*  
*Neūtrā sūnt ūtrūmqūe *os.**

(6) Neūtrā mūltā sūnt īn *er,*  
*Vērbōr, sūlēr, ācēr, vēr,*  
*Tūbōr, ūbōr, ēt cādāvēr,*  
*Pīpēr, itēr, ēt pāpāvēr.*

(3) *Cārō (cārnīs)* māvūlt sē  
*Fēmīnīnīs āddērē.*

(7) *Æs* ēst Neūtrum ; sēx īn *es*  
*Quāē flēctūnt cāsūs īmpārēs*  
*Fēmīnīnā, cōmpēs, tēgēs,*  
*Mērcēs, mērgēs, quīēs, sēgēs.*

(4) Neūtrā paūcā sūnt īn *or ;*

§ 74.

## (b) SECOND PRINCIPAL RULE.

Fēmīnīnīs īnsērās

Quāē claūdūnt *is, x, aus* ēt *as,**S* cum cōnsōnāntē nēxā,  
*Es æquālitēr īflēxā.*

## EXCEPTIONS.

(1) Mūltā sūnt quē claūdīt *is*  
*Māscūlinī Gēnērīs,*  
*Amnis, āxis, cāllis, cōllis,*  
*Caūlis, cūcūmīs ēt fōllis,*  
*Fāscīs, fūnīs, fūstīs, fīnīs,*  
*Ignīs, ūrbīs ātquē crīnīs,*  
*Pānis, pīcīs, pōstīs, ēnsīs,*  
*Sēntīs, cārbīs, tōrquis, mēnsīs,*  
*Tōrrīs, ūnguis ēt cānlīs,*  
*Vēctīs, vērmīs ēt sōdalīs,*  
*Cāssīs, cīnīs, glīs ēt āngnīs,*  
*Lāpīs, pūlvīs ātquē sānguis.*

(2) Plērāquē quē claūdīt *ex*  
*Māscūlinā sūnt, ȳt grēx :*  
*Sēd Fēmīnīnā mānēnt nēx,*  
*Sūpēllēx, ilēx, cārēx, lēx.*

(3) Māscūlinā sūnt īn *ix*  
*Fōrnīx, phānīx ēt cālīx*

(4) Māscūlinā sūnt īn *ās*  
*Vās (vādīs), gīgās, ēlēphās,*  
*As (āssīs), mās ēt ādāmās,*  
*Neūtrā, vās (vāsīs), nēfūs, fās*

(5) Māscūlinīs āddē *mōns,*  
*Fōns ēt tōrrēns, grýps ēt pōns,*  
*Rūdēns, hydrōps, dēns ēt būlēns*  
*Oriēns, ōccūdēns ēt tridēns.*

(6) Māscūlinā sūnt īn *es*  
*Vērrēs ēt ācīndēs.*

## § 75.

## (c) THIRD PRINCIPAL RULE.

Neūtrā claūdūnt *a* ēt *e*,*Ar, ur, us, e, l, n* ēt *t*.

## EXCEPTIONS.

(1) Māscūlinā sūnt īn *ur*  
*Fūrfūr, tūrtūr, vūltūr, fūr.*

(2) Māscūlinā sūnt īn *us*  
*Lēpūs (lēpōrīs) ēt mūs.*

(3) Fēmīnīnā sūnt īn *ūs*  
*Vīrtūs ātquē sērvītūs,*  
*Jīvēntūs, īncūs ātquē pālūs,*  
*Sēnēctūs, tēllūs ātquē sālūs,*  
*Quībūs lōngā mānēt u*  
*In Gēnītīvī trānsītū.*

(4) Est ēt *pēcūs* (*pēcūdīs*)  
*Fēmīnīnī Gēnērīs.*

(5) Māscūlā īn *l* sūnt *mūyīl,*  
*Cōnsūl, sāl, sōl ātquē pūgīl*

(6) Māscūlinā sūnt *rēn, splēn,*  
*Pēctēn, dēlphīn, āttāgēn.*

(7) Fēmīnīnā sūnt īn *on*  
*Gōrgōn, sīndōn, hālcējōn.*

## § 76

## IV. FOURTH DECLENSION.

## PRINCIPAL RULE.

Māscūlis īn Quārtā *ūs,*Neūtrīs *ū* trībūimūs.

## EXCEPTIONS.

Fēmīnīnā sūnt īn *ūs*  
*Quārtā dōmūs, pōrtīcūs,*

*Acūs, Idūs ātquē mānūs,*  
*Trībūs, nūrūs, socrūs, ānūs,*

§ 77.

## V. FIFTH DECLENSION.

## PRINCIPAL RULE.

Fēmīnīnīs īnsérēs		Quīntā nōmīnā īn ēs.
-------------------	--	----------------------

## EXCEPTION.

<i>Diēs</i> ēst īn Sīngūlō Mās vēl Fēmīnīnum :		In Plūrālī Nūmērō Sēmpēr Māscūlīnum.
---	--	---

---

## II. IRREGULAR NOUNS.

§ 78. I. NOUNS DEFECTIVE IN NUMBER.

(a) Sīngūlārīs Nūmērūs Mūltīs deēst Nōmīnībūs : Ut Mānēs, lōcūlī, Pēnātēs ; Cūnāe, thērmāe, nūgāe, grālēs ;		Armā, vīscērā, māgālīā, Cum dēum fēstīs, ūt Flōrālīā (b) Lēctūtāntībūs āppārēnt Mūltā quāe Plūrālī cārēnt.
--	--	---

## II. NOUNS DEFECTIVE IN CASE.

Nōnnūllī cāsūs ābsūnt hīs, <i>Fās, frūgīs, dāpīs, ǒpis, vīs :</i>		Et mūltā prātēr hāc āppārēnt Quāe cāsībūs nōnnūllīs cārēnt.
--	--	--

## III. NOUNS REDUNDANT IN NUMBER.

In a vēl i quāe ēffērūnt		Nūmērum Plūrālēm, sūnt <i>Frēnum, cārbāsūs</i> ēt <i>lōcūs,</i> <i>Rāstrum, sībīlūs</i> ēt <i>jōcūs.</i> <i>Tārtārūs</i> fīt īn Plūrālī <i>Tārtārā,</i> ēt <i>cālūm cālī.</i>
--------------------------	--	---

## IV. NOUNS REDUNDANT IN CASE.

Abūndānt quādām Cāsībūs,		Ut <i>dōmūs, laūrūs, Ȑēdīpūs.</i>
--------------------------	--	-----------------------------------

---

## III. OF THE PRETERPERFECTS AND SUPINES OF LATIN VERBS.

§ 79. I. FIRST CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE VERBS.

Vērbōrum Prīmā Cōnjūgātiō,  
Cuī o ās ārē tērmīnātiō,  
Avī īn Pērfēctō fīt,  
Sūpīnō ātum sūbjīcīt.

(Am-ō, ām-ās, ām-ārē, ām-āvī, ām-ātum.)

## EXCEPTIONS.

(1) *Hinc ēxcīplēndā sūnt  
Quæ ūt itum ēffērūnt :  
Crēpō, cūbō ātquē sōnō,  
Dōmō, vētō ātquē tōnō.*

(2) *Sēcō sēcūl ātquē sēctum ;  
Fricō fricūl ātquē frictum.*

(3) *Jūvō jūvī jūltum stāt ;*

~~~~~

(4) *Dō fīt dēdī ātquē ddtum,  
Stō fīt stētī ātquē statum.*

(5) *Micō dāt Pēfēctum mēcīl,  
Plicō dāt Pēfēctum plicūl ;  
Nūllum fērt Sūpīnum mēcō,  
-ātum dāt vēl -itum plēcō.*

## § 80. II. SECOND CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE VERBS

Vērbōrum Altērā Cōnjūgātiō,  
Cuī ēō ēs ērē tērmīnātiō,  
Uī īn Pēfēctō fīt,  
Sūpīnō itum sūbjīcīt.

(Mōn-ěō, mōnēs, mōn-ērē, mōn-ūī, mōn-ītum.)

## EXCEPTIONS.

(1) *Hinc ēxcīplēndā sūnt  
Quæ ēvī ētum ēffērūnt :  
Ut nēō nēvī ātquē nētum ;  
Dēlēō dēl-ēvī -ētum.  
Addē flēō, plēō, hīs,  
Et ólēō, cum cōmpōsītīs.*

(2) *Hīs īn dī Pēfēctum stāt,  
Sum Sūpīnō tērmīnāt.  
Prāndī prānsūm prāndēō ;  
Sēdī sēssum sēdēō ;  
Vidī vīsum vīdēō.  
Sēd spōndēō spōpōndī spōnsūm ;  
Tōndēō tōtōndī tōnsum ;  
Mōmōrdī mōrsūm mōrdēō ;  
Pēpēndī pēnsūm pēndēō.*

(3) *Hīs īn sī Pēfēctum fīt,  
Sum Sūpīnō ēxīgīt.  
Jūssī jūssum jūbēō ;  
Mūlsī mūlsum mūlcēō  
Dāt, līldēmquē mūlgēō ;  
Tērsī tērsūm tērgēō ;  
Arsī arsūm ardēō ;  
Rīsī rīsum rīdēō ;  
Suāsī suāsum suādēō ;  
Mānsī mānsūm mānēō ;  
Hāsī hāsum hārēō.  
Sīc ēt algeō alsi lāt,  
Fūlgēō fūlsī vīndīcīt ;*

~~~~~

(4) *Dānt sī ēt tum īndūl-gēō,  
Et tōr-sīl tōr-tum tor-quēō.*

(5) *Aūgēō aūxī aūctum fīt ;  
Frīgēō frīxī sūscīpīt :  
Lūgēō, lūcēō, lūxī dānt,  
Sēd nōn Sūpīnō gēnērānt.*

(6) *Hāc Pēfēctō vōlūnt vī,  
Tum Sūpīnō sūffīcī :  
Cāvēō cāvī ātquē caūtum ;  
Fāvēō fāvī ātquē faūtum ;  
Fōvēō fōvī ātquē fōtum ;  
Mōvēō mōvī ātquē mōtum ;  
Vōvēō vōvī ātquē vōtum.*

(7) *Hīs ūt īn Pēfēctō stāt,  
Tum Sūpīnō tērmīnāt.  
Dāt dōcēō dōctum ; dāt mīstūm mīs-cēō ; sōrptum  
Sōrbēō ; fīt tēnēō tēntum ; fīt tōrrēō  
tōstum.*

(8) *Hīs Prātērītum Pāssīvē,  
Prāsēns scribītūr Activē ;  
Aūdēō dāt aūsūs sum ;  
Gāudēō gāvisūs sum ;  
Sōlēōquē sōlitūs sum*

### § 81 III. THIRD CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE VERBS.

Vērbōrum Tērtiā Cōnjūgātiō,  
Cuī ō iſ ērē tērmīnātiō,  
Pērfēctum vāriāē fōrmāē dāt,  
Tum vēl sum Sūpīnō stāt.

(Rēg-ō, rēg-īs, rēx-ī, rēg-ērē, rēct-um.)

#### *Special Rules with their Exceptions.*

##### § 82. (a) *Bō* ēt pō.

*Bō*, *pō* hābēnt āddītum  
Pērfēctō *psī*, Sūpīnō *ptum* :  
Ut *nūbō* *nūpsī* ātquē *nūptum*.

##### EXCEPTIONS.

*Rumpō* tāmēn *rūpī* *rūptum* ;  
*Blbō* *blbī* *blbitum* ;  
*Strēpō* *strēpūi* *strēpitum*.

##### (b) *Cō*, *gō*, *hō*, *quō*.

*Cō*, *gō*, *hō*, *quō*, sīc dēclīnō,  
*Xī* Pērfēctō, *ctum* Sūpīnō :  
Ut *dūcō* *dūxi* ātquē *dūctum* ;  
*Sūgō* *sūxi* ātquē *sūctum* ;  
*Rēgō* *rēxi* ātquē *rēctum* ;  
*Vēhō* *vēxi* ātquē *vēctum*.

##### EXCEPTIONS.

(1) *Scō* Pērfēctō *jūbēt* *vī*,  
Tum Sūpīnō *sūbjīcī* ;  
Ut *crēscō* *crēvī* *crētum* ; *suēscō*  
*Suēvī* *suētum* ; sīc *quiēscō*.  
*Nōscō* *nōvī* *nōtum* dāt ;  
*Pāscō* *pāvī* *pāstum* stāt.  
*Cōmpēscō* *fīt* *cōmpēscūi* ;  
*Pōpscī* *pōscō* ; *discō* *dīdīcī*.

(2) *Icō* *icī* ātquē *ictum* ;  
*Vīncō* *vīcī* ātquē *vīctum* ;  
*Līnquō* *līquī* ātquē *līctum*.

(3) *Pārcō* dāt *pēpērcī* *pārsum*.

(4) *Spārgō* *spārsī* ātquē *spārsum* ;  
*Mērgō* *mērsī* ātquē *mērsum* ;  
*Tērgō* *tērsī* ātquē *tērsum*.

##### (5) *Agō* *ēgī* ātquē *āctum* ;

*Frāngō* *frēgī* ātquē *frāctum* ;  
*Tāngō* *tētīgī* ēt *tāctum* ;  
*Pāngō* *pēpīgī* ēt *pāctum* ;  
Sēd *cōmpōstā-pēgī* -*pāctum* ;  
*Pūngō* *pūpūgī* ēt *pūnctum* ;  
*Jūngō* *jūnxī* ātquē *jūnctum*.  
*Lēgō* *lēgī* vīndīcāt,  
*Cōmpōstum* sāpē *lēxī* dāt.

##### (6) *Fīgō* *fīxī* *fīxum* ; *fīngō*

*Finxī* ātquē *fīctum* ; *pīngō*  
*Pīnrxī* fācīt ātquē *pīctum* ;  
*Strīngō* *strīnxī* ātquē *strīctum*.

##### (c) *Dō*.

*Dō* Pērfēctō *jūbēt* *sī*,  
Sum Sūpīnō *sūffīcī*.  
*Lāsī* *lēsum* fācīt *lādō* ;  
(Vērum *cēssī* *cēssum* *cēdō* :)  
Sīc *il-līdō* -*līsī* -*līsum* ;  
*Dīvīdō* *dī-vīsī* -*vīsum*.

##### EXCEPTIONS.

(1) Quāe ēxēunt īn *āndō*, *ēndō*.  
Flēctē dō īn *dī* vērtēndō.  
*Pēndō* fīt *pēpēndī* *pēnsum*  
*Tēndō* dāt *tētēndī* *tēnsum*.

(2) *Fīndō* tāmēn *fīdī* *fīssum* ;  
*Scīndō* *scīdī* ātquē *scīssum* ;  
*Fūndō* *fūdī* ātquē *fūsum* ;  
*Tūndō* *tūtūdī* ēt *tūsum*.  
*Cūdō* *cūdī* ātquē *cūsum* ;  
*Cādō* *cēcīdī* ēt *cāsum* ;  
*Cēdō* fīt *cēcīdī* *cāsum* ;  
Fācīt *ēdō* *ēdī* *ēsur*.

(3) *Abdō, āddō, cōndō, crēdō,  
Obdō, pērdō, rēddō, ēdō,  
Prōdō, trādō, vēndō, dēdō,  
Quā ā dō cōmpōstā sūnt,  
-dīdī, dītum, ēffērūnt :  
Ut ēdō ēdīdī ēt ēdītum,  
Dēdō dēdīdī ēt dēdītum.*

(d) To.

*Flēctō flēxī ātquē flēxum ;  
Nēctō nēxī ātquē nēxum ;  
Pēctō pēxī ātquē pēxum ;  
Pētīvī ēt pētītum pētō ;  
Mēssūl ēt mēssum mētō ;  
Mīttō mīsī mīssum dāt ;  
Vērtō vērtī vērsūm stāt.  
Vērbūm quōd ā sīsīt fīt  
Pērfēctō -stītī suffīcīt.*

§ 83. (e) So.

*Sō sīvī sītum fīt ; ārcēssō  
Sic fōrmātūr, ēt lācēssō.  
Vīsō vīsī vīndīcāt ;  
Pīnsō pīnsūl pīstum dāt.*

§ 84. (f) Xo.

*Unum vīn xō tēxō stāt,  
Quōd tēxūl tēxtum vīndīcāt.*

§ 85. (g) Lo.

*Lō lūl tūm : sic cōnsūlō  
Flēctītūr ; ēt ōccūlō.  
Sēd cōlūl ēt cūltum cōlō,  
Mōlūl mōlītum fīt mōlō  
A cēllō vērbā cēllūl ;  
Sēd pērcēllō pērcūlī  
Cōnjūgābīl ēt pērcūlsum ,  
Pēllō pēpūlī ēt pūlsum ;  
Vēllō vēllī (vūlī) vūlsum .  
Fāllō fīt fēfēllī fālsum ;  
Psāllō psāllī ; sāllō sālsum ;  
Tōllō sūstūlī fōrmātūm  
In Sūpīnō fīt sūblātūm.*

(h) Mo.

*Mō mūl mītum fīt ; ūt frēmō  
Frēmūl frēmītum ; sic gēmō,  
Et Sūpīnō cārēns trēmō*

#### EXCEPTIONS.

*Sī tūm : cōmōl cōmsl cōmtum ,  
Prōmōl prōmsl ātquē prōmtum ,  
Sic flēctūntūr sūmō, dēmō ;  
Sēd ēmī ātquē ēmtum ēmō ;  
Prēssī ātquē prēssum prēmō.*

(Intēr m ēt s vēl t  
Lātīnī sāpē pōnūnt p.  
Sic fīunt sūmpsī, dēmpsī, dēmp-  
tum ,  
Cōmptum, prōmptum, sūmptum,  
ēmptum.)

(i) No.

*Cānō cāntum cēcīnlī,  
Cōmpōstā -cēntum -cīnūl ;  
Gīgnō gēnūl gēnītum ;  
Pōnō pōsūl pōsītum ;  
Tēmnō tēmsl tēmlum dāt ;  
Stērnō strāvī strātum stāt.  
Spērnō sprēvī ātquē sprētum ,  
Cērnō crēvī ātquē crētum ;  
Līnō lēvī ātquē lītum ;  
Sīnō sīvī ātquē sītum.*

(j) Rō.

*Vērrō vērrī ātquē vērsūm ;  
Cūrrō dāt cūcūrrī cūrsūm ;  
Quārō fīt quā-sīvī -sītum ;  
Tērō trīvī ātquē trītum ;  
Urō ūssī ūstum stāt ;  
Gērō gēssī gēstum dāt ;  
Fērō tūlī ātquē lātum ;  
Sērō sēvī ātquē sātum ;  
Sērō sērūlī sērtum dāt ,  
Sī cum vī nēctēndī stāt.*

§ 86. (k) Io.

*Fāciō fēcī ātquē fāctum ;  
Jāciō jēcī ātquē jāctum ;  
Dānt ā lācīlō lēxī lēctum ;  
Et ā spēciō spēxī spēctum ;  
Fōdīlō fōdīlī fōssumquē ;  
Fūgiō fūgi lūgītumquē ;  
Cāpiō cēpī ātquē cāptum ;  
Rāpiō rāpūlī ēt rāptum ;*

*Cup-ivī -itum cūpiō ;  
Pēpērī pārtum pāriō ;  
Quātīō quāssum vīndicāt,  
Sēd īn cōmpōstīs cūssum dāt.*

*Vō inflečtīt vī ēt ūtum :  
Ut sōlvō sōlvī ēt sōlūtum ;  
Vōlvō vōlvī ēt vōlūtum.*

## EXCEPTIONS.

87. (1) *Uō ēt vō.*  
*Uō fōrmāt ūt ūtum :*  
*Ut trībūō trībūl trībūtum.*

*Flūō tāmēn flūxum flūxī ;  
Strūō strūctum ātquē strūxī ,  
Vīvō vīxī vīctum dāt ;  
Stīnguō stīnxī stīnctum stāt.*

## § 88. IV. FOURTH CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE VERBS

Vērbōrum Quārtā Cōnj̄gātiō,  
Cuī iō is irē tērminātiō,  
Ivī īn Pēfēctō fīt,  
Sūpīnō itum sūffīcīt.

(Aūd-iō, aūd-is, aūd-irē, aūd-ivī, aūd-itum.)

## EXCEPTIONS.

Sānciō sānxī sānctum fīt ;  
Nēc -cīvī -cītum rēspīt.  
Vīnxī vīnctum vīnciō ;  
Fūlsī fūltum fūlcīō ;  
Sārciō fīt sārsī sārtum ;  
Fārciōquē fārsī fārtum ;  
Amīciō amīcū ī dāt ;  
Sālīō sālūl (sālīl) stāt ;  
At sīngūltiō sīngūltum ;  
Et sēpēliō sēpēltum ;

Vēnīō vēnl vēntum fīt ;  
( Vēnēō vēnīl sūscīpīt ) ;  
Sēplō sēpsī sēptum dāt ;  
A pērīo -pērūl -pērtum stāt ;  
Sēd cōmpērīō cōmpērī ;  
Et rēpērīō rēppērī .  
Haūsī haūstum haūriō ;  
Sēnsi sēnsum sēntiō .

## § 89.

## V. DEPONENT VERBS

Dēpōnētiā flēxēris  
Ex Actīvōrum rēgūlīs ;  
Nam Prātērītum Pāssīvum  
Sūpīnī ēst Dērīvātīvum.

## EXCEPTIONS.

## (1) SECOND CONJUGATION.

Rēör rātūs ēffīcīt ;  
Mīsērēör mīsērtūs fīt ;  
Fātēör fāssūs ; flēctē sīs  
Fēssūs īn cōmpōstīs .

## (2) THIRD CONJUGATION.

Lābōr lāpsūs sūscīpīt ;  
Utōr ūsūs ēffīcīt ;  
Lōquōr ēffīcīt lōcūtūs ;  
Sēquōr ēffīcīt sēcūtūs ;

*Nitōr nīsūs nīxūs stāt ;  
Irātūs sum irāscōr dāt ;  
Quērōr quēstūs ; grādiōr grēs .  
sūs ;  
Pātiōr pāssūs sum, ēt -pēssūs  
In cōmpōstīs ; fīt ūlciscōr  
Ultūs ; āptūs sum āpisiscōr ;  
Sēd ādēptūs ādipiscōr ;  
Prōficiiscōr fīt prōfēctūs ;  
Expērgiscōr expērrēctūs ;  
Fīt oblitūs obliviscōr ;  
Et cōmmēntūs cōmmīniscōr ;*

*Sēd nānciscōr fācīt nāctūs .  
Et pāciscōr fācīt pāctūs .  
Mōrtūs sum fācīt mōriōr ;  
Nāscōr nātūs ; ūrlūs ūriōr  
Queīs Fūtūrā mōritūrūs ,  
Nāscitūrūs , ūritūrūs .*

(3) FOURTH CONJUGATION  
*Quārtā mēnsūs mētiōr ,  
Fōrmāt ūrsūs ūrdiōr ;  
At expēriōr expērtūs ,  
Et oppēriōr oppērtūs .*

## § 90.

## VI. INCEPTIVE VERBS.

(1) A Vērbīs dūctā Incēptīvā  
*Flēxēris ūt Prīmītīvā :  
Sic ēxārsī ēxārdēscōr ,  
Obsōlēvī ūbsōlēscōr ;  
Trēmūi vīndīcāt trēmīscōr ;  
Et rēscīvī fīt rēscīscōr .*

(2) Fāctōrum ēx Nōmīnībūs  
*Pērfēctīs ūt tērmīnūs :  
Evānēscōr sic ēvānūi ;  
Cōnsānēscōr fīt cōnsānūi .  
Plūrīmā Sūpīnīs cārēnt ,  
Pērfēcta mūltīs nōn āppārēnt .*

## VII. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

*Impērsōnālā flēxēris  
Ex Pērsōnālūm rēgūlīs ;  
Sic pūdēt fācīt pūdūt ;  
Pēnītēt pēnītūt ;  
Opōrtēt sic ūpōrtūt .*

*Sēd misērēt misērtūm ēst ;  
Lībēt lībūt lībitūm ēst ;  
Tādēt dāt pērtēsum ēst  
Vēl tādūt ; sic pīgēt fīt  
Pīgitūm ēst ēt pīgūt .*

## VIII VERBS WANTING PRETERPERFECTS AND SUPINES.

In ūpēribūs Lātīnīs ,  
Mūltā Vērbā quāe Sūpīnīs ,

Mūltā quāe Pērfēctō cārēnt ,  
Lēctītāntībūs āppārēnt .

## § 91. IV. OF THE CHANGES OF VERBS IN COMPOSITION.

(1) A ūn e cōnvērtēris  
*Hōrum ūn Cōmpōsītīs :  
Arcō , cārpō , dāmnō , lāctō ,  
Fātīscōr , fāllō , fārcīō , jāctō ,*

*Grādiōr , pātiōr , pārtiōr , trāctō  
Pāriō , patrō , ātquē cāndō ,  
Sacrō , spārgō , ātquē scāndō .*

(2) *A* īn *i* cōnvērtēris

Hōrum īn Cōmpōsītīs :  
*Agō*, *cādō*, *cānō*, *frāngō*,  
*Hābēō*, *lātēō*, *fātēō*, *pāngō*,  
*Sāliō*, *stātūō*, *ātquē tāngō*,  
*Cāpō*, *rāpō*, *sāpō*, *fācō*,  
*Jācēō*, *lācō*, *plācō*, *tācēō*.  
Excēptā : *pērāgō*, *pērplācēō* ;  
Etcum Advērbīs mīstum fīcīō.

(3) *A* īn *u* cōnvērtītō

Ex *cālcō*, *sāltō*, *quātūō*.

(4) *E* īn *i* cōnvērtēris

Hōrum īn Cōmpōsītīs :  
*Egiō*, *tēnēō*, *ātquē ēmō*,  
*Spēcō*, *sēdēō*, *ātquē pēmō*,  
Addē *dēdī* *ātquē lēgō*,  
Addē *stētī* *ātquē rēgō*.  
Sūnt ēxcēptā : *rēlēgō*,  
*Pērlēgō*, *et prālēgō*.

*Nota.*

*Sī*, mūtātō Sīmplīcī,  
Cōmpōstī Prāsēns sūmsīt *i*,

In Pērfēctō sūmēt *ē*,  
*Sī* lōngām vālēt fīngērē :  
*Sīc dēfīcō* fīt *dēfēcī* ;  
*Sīc prōjēcō* *prōjēcī* .  
*Sīc cēnspīcō* *cōspexī* ;  
*Sīc ā dīrīgō* *dīrēxī*.  
*Pērgō* (*per-rēgō*) *pērrēxī* ;  
*Sūrgō* (*sūs-rēgō*) *sūrrēxī* ;  
*Pōrrīgō* (*prō-rēgō*) *pōrrēxī*.

(5) *Æ* īn *ī*, *ā* *quārō*, *cādo*

Cōmpōstā mūtānt, *et* *ā* *lādō*.

(6) *Aū* īn *ō* cōnvērtīt *plaūdō* ;

*Aū* īn *ū* cōmmūtāt *claūdō* ;  
*Au* īn *ē* sōlūmmōdō  
Ex *aūdō* dāt *ōbēdīō*.

## (7) Rēduplīcātīo Sīmplīcīs

Exībit ē Cōmpōsītīs :  
*Sīc ā pēllō*, *pēpūlī*,  
Fīt *impēllō*, *impūlī*.

Sēd *ā dīscō*, *pōscō*, *dō*  
Cōmpōstā sērvānt, *et* *ā* *stō*.

## § 92. OF PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION

(1) *Con-* fīt Prāpōsītīo *cum*,  
Quāndō stāt cōmpōsītum.(2) Tāntum īn Cōmpōsītīs  
Stānt *āmbī*, *rē*, *sē*, *sus*, *et dis*.(3) Prāpōsītīo tērmīnāntem  
Sāpē mūtāt cōnsōnāntem  
*Sīc*, *ut fīt cīmīlīs*  
Cōnsōnāntī Sīmplīcīs :  
Ut *ād-fērō* fīt *āffērō*,  
Ut *in-līnō* fīt *illīnē*.  
Ut *ōb-pētō* fīt *ōppētō*.(4) *N* īn *m* cōnvērtītē

Antē *b* vēl *āntē p.*  
Ut *cōn-bībō* fīt *cōm-bībō*,  
Ut *in-plīcō* fīt *im-plīcō*.

(5) Alīā ālīā trānsfērūnt,  
Quāē rēlātū lōngā sūnt ;  
Unum hōc nōtāndum dō,  
*Ab-fērō* fīt *aūfērō*,  
*Ab-fūgīō* fīt *aūfūgīō*.

## SYNTAXIS MINOR,

IN TIRUNCOLORUM GRATIAM CONCINNATA.

---

§ 93. A. I. ADJECTIVA, Participia, et Pronomina cum Substantivis suis genere, numero, et casu concordant: ut.

*Nullus ad amissas ibit amicus opes.*

1. Substantivum per ellipsis intelligitur: ut,  
*Laborem plerique fugiunt.* (supple *homines.*)
2. Neutra Adjectiva Substantivorum vice funguntur: ut,  
*Omnium rerum mors est extremum.*

---

II. Verbum finitum concordat cum Nominativo numero et personâ: ut,

*Omnia vitia contra naturam pugnant.*

1. Aliquando Infinitivus, vel Locutio aliqua, pro Nominativo ponitur ut,  
*Non est mentiri meum.*  
*Incertum est quād longa vita futura sit.*
2. Nominativus Pronominum raro exprimitur: ut,  
*Nitimus in vetitum semper cupimusque negata.*  
Nisi distinctioni vel emphasi inserviat: ut,  
*Ego reges ejeci: vos tyrannos introducetis.*
3. Impersonalia Nominativum non habent expressum: ut,  
*Tædet ipsum vehementerque pœnitit.*
4. Personæ Verbi *sum* sæpè intelliguntur: ut,  
*Nihil bonum nisi quod honestum.* (supplie *est.*)

5. Infinitivus interdum Nominativo postponitur : ut,  
*Tum pius Aeneas humeris abscindere vestem.*

6. Plerumque autem Infinitivus Accusativo postponitur, præcedente Verbo finito . ut,  
*Tradunt Homerum cæcum fuisse.*

---

III. Relativum cum Antecedente concordat genere, numero, et personâ ; casu autem construitur cum suâ sententiâ : ut,

*Ea est jucundissima amicitia, quam similitudo morum conjugavit.*

---

B. 1. Substantivum, formâ sed non sensu singulare, sæpè habet Verbum, Adjectivum, vel Relativum plurale : ut,

*Pars epulis onerant mensas.*  
*Subeunt Tegeæa juventus Auxilio tardi.*

2. Duo vel plura Nomina singularia habent plerumque Verbum, Adjectivum, vel Relativum plurale : ut,

*Veneno absumpti sunt Hannibal et Philopæmen.*

a. Verbum plurale cum Nominativo dignioris personæ, Adjectivum verò vel Relativum cum Substantivo dignioris generis, ferè concordat.

b. Prima persona dignior est quàm secunda, secunda quàm tertia : ut,

*Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus.*

c. In rebus animatis dignius est masculinum genus quàm femininum : ut,

*Pater mihi et nater mortui sunt.*

d. In rebus inanimis Adjectivum vel Relativum sæpissimè erit in neutro genere : ut,

*Divitiae, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt.*

---

3. Verba Copulativa, *sum, fio, videor, vocor*, cum similibus, sive finiti modi, sive infiniti, eundem habent utrinque casum : ut,

*Syllaba longa brevi subjecta vocatur Iambus.*  
*Regius agnoscor per rata signa puer*  
*Vobis licet esse beatis*

4. Verbum, inter duos Nominativos positum, interdum cum posteriore solo concordat: ut,

*Amantium iræ amoris integratio est.*

5. Relativum, inter duo Substantiva ejusdem rei collocatum, cum posteriore solo sæpè concordat: ut,

*Thebæ, quod Bæotiae caput est.*

6. Substantivo, Pronomini, et interdum Sententiæ, apponi potest Substantivum ejusdem rei in eodem casu: ut,

*Effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum.*

*Nos consules desumus.*

*Cogitet oratorem institui, rem urduam.*

7. Cum duo Substantiva diversarum rerum concurrunt, alterum in Genitivo ponitur: ut,

*Recubans sub tegmine fagi.*

§ 94 C. I. Verba Transitiva regunt Accusativum prioris Objecti: ut,

*Sperne voluptates.*

*Imprimis venerare Deum.*

1. Verba quædam Neutra et Passiva Accusativum admittunt suæ operationis: ut,

*Duram servit servitatem.*

*Claudius aleam lusit.*

2. Verba quædam, *rogandi* præsertim et *docendi*, duplicum habent Accusativum: ut,

*Pacem te poscimus omnes.*

*Quid nunc te, asine, litteras doceam?*

a. Plurima ex his in Passivâ Voce retinent Accusativum rei: ut,

*Motus doceri gaudet Ionicus.*

3. Accusativus Respectûs Græco more subjicitur tum Verbis Neutris et Passivis, tum Adjectivis: ut,

*Micat auribus et tremit artus.*

*Inficitur teneras tota rubore genas.*

*Nuda sunt brachia.*

## 4. Accusativum regunt hæ Præpositiones :

*Ante, apud, ad, adversus,  
Circum, circa, cœtra, cis,  
Contra, inter, erga, extra,  
Infra, intra, juxta, ob,  
Penes, pone, post, et præter,*

*Prope, propter, per, secundum.  
Supra, versus, ultra, trans;  
His super, subter, addito,  
Et in, sub, si fit motio.*

II. Vocativus, Appellati casus, regitur ab Interjectione vel expressâ, vel intellectâ : ut,  
*Fili vel o fili.*1. Interjectiones *en* et *ecce* regunt Accusativum atque Nominativum : o, ah, heu, hem, proh, Accusativum, Nominativum, et Vocativum : ut,

*En miserum hominem!  
Ecce nova turba atque rixa!  
Heu miserande puer!  
Heu vanitas humana!  
Proh Deum atque hominum fidem  
Proh sancte Juppiter!*

2. Dativum regunt *hei* et *væ* : ut,

*Hei misero mihi!  
Væ tibi, causidice!*

## III. Omnia ferè Adjectiva et Verba, item Adverbia et Substantiva, regunt Dativum remotioris Objecti, cuius causâ est aut fit aliquid : ut,

*Non solum nobis divites esse volumus.  
Mihi istic nec seritur nec metitur.  
Numa virgines Vestæ legit.  
Urbi pater est urbique maritus.*

a. Ita *sum* possessivè significans Dativum possidentis habet : ut,  
*Est mihi namque domi pater, est injusta noverca.*

## Dativum regunt plurima Adjectiva, Adverbia, et Verba, interdum etiam Substantiva, a quibus indicatur

*Commodum, communicatio,  
Comparatio, consecratio,  
Congruentia, consuetudo,  
Auxilium et aptitudo,  
Benignitas, vicinitas,  
Jucunditas, affinitas,*

*Traditio, venia, demonstratio,  
Promissio, fides, et narratio,  
Obsequium, imperium,  
Et quicquid his contrarium;  
Cum nubo, vaco : cetera  
Sub priraâ stabunt regulâ.*

ut, *Patriæ sit idoneus, utilis agris.*  
*Est finitimus oratori poeta.*  
*Turba gravis paci placidæque inimica quieti.*  
*Congruenter naturæ vivendum est.*  
*Culturæ patientem comodat aurem.*  
*Quod alii donat sibi detrahit.*  
*Hoc mihi confirmavit et persuasit.*  
*Nobis spondet fortuna salutem.*  
*Philosophia medetur animis.*  
*Tibi favemus.*  
*Irascor tibi.*  
*Victrix causa deis placuit, sed victa Catoni.*  
*Parce pio generi.*  
*Anguis Sullæ apparuit immolanti.*  
*O formose puer, nimium ne crede coloris.*  
*Imperat aut servit collectu pecunia cuique.*  
*Placitone etiam pugnabis amori?*  
*Venus nupsit Vulcano.*  
*Philosophiae semper vaco.*  
*Nulla fides regni sociis.*

a. *Communis, similis, proprius, par, atque alienus,*  
*Pluraque, nunc voluere Dativum, nunc Genitivum : ut,*

*Media simillima veris sunt.*  
*Deos esse similes tui putas?*  
*Propria est nobis mentis agitatio.*  
*Proprium est oratoris ornare dicere.*

b. *Delecto atque juvo, jubeo, rego, laedo, guberno, accusativo contra regulam junguntur : ut,*

*Multos castra juvant.*  
*Tu regere imperio populos, Romane, memento.*

c. *Temporo et moderor nunc Dativum nunc Accusativum habent : ut*  
*Hic moderatur equos qui non moderabitur iræ.*

2. *Dativum fermè regunt Verba composita cum Adverbiiis bene, satis, male ; et cum Præpositionibus, præsertim his : —*

<i>Ad, ante, ab,</i> <i>In, inter, de,</i>	<i>Sub, super, ob,</i> <i>Con, post, et præ.</i>
---	---

ut, *Ceteris satisfacio semper ; mihi nunquam.*  
*Sicilia quondam Italæ adhaesit.*  
*Gigantes bellum diis intulerunt.*  
*Anatum ova gallinis sœpè supponimus.*

a. *Multa ex his variant constructionem : ut,*

*Helvetii reliquos Gallos virtute præcedunt.*  
*In amore hæc insunt vitia.*

**3. Dativus Agentis** sequitur Verbalia in *bilis*, et Gerundivum in *dus*; interdum Participia perfecta; raro Verba Passiva: ut,

*Multis ille bonis flebilis occidit.*  
*Restut Chremes qui mihi exorandus est.*  
*Magnus civis obit et formidatus Othoni.*  
*Barbarus hic ego sum, quia non intelligor ulli.*

**4. Verba et Participia Passiva** plerumque habent Ablativum Agentis cum Praepositione *a* vel *ab*: ut,

*Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis.*  
*Mors Crassi est a multis defleta.*

**4. Dativus Propositi** additur Verbo *sum* et multis aliis, vel pro Nominativo vel pro Accusativo: ut,

*Exemplo est magni formica laboris.*  
*Nucleum amisi; reliquit pignori putamina*

**c. Sæpè duplex** admittitur Dativus: ut.

*Exitio est avidum mare nautis.*

---

**IV. Genitivus Possessoris** sequitur omnia ferè Substantiva, neenon  
Verba *sum, facio, fio*, per ellipsis Substantivi: ut,

*Singulorum opes sunt divitiae civitatis.*  
*Omnia, quæ mulieris fuerunt, viri sunt.*  
*Scipio Hispaniam Romanæ ditionis fecit.*

**1. Est Impersonale** præponitur Genitivo, si intelligitur

<i>Indoles, indicium,</i>		<i>Munus aut officium.</i>
---------------------------	--	----------------------------

ut,   *Cujusvis hominis est errare.*  
*Improbi hominis est mendacio fallere.*  
*Est adolescentis majores natu vereri.*

**2. Fit etiam ellipsis** aliorum Nominum ante Genitivum: ut,

*Hectoris Andromache. (supple *uxor.*)*  
*Deiphobe Glauci. (supple *filia.*)*  
*Ventum erat ad Vestæ. (supple *templum.*)*  
*Hujus video Byrrham. (supple *servum.*)*

**3. Genitivus Personalis** in Possessivo Pronomine latens recipit alterum  
Genitivum sibi concordantem: at,

*Respublica meâ unius operd salva erat.*  
*Nostros vidisti flentis ocellos.*

**4. Genitivus Qualitatis** sequitur Substantiva: ut.

*Ingenui vultûs puer ingenuique pudoris.*

**Qualitas** etiam in Ablativo ponitur: ut.

*Senex promissâ barbâ, horrenti capilla.*

5. *Vocabula Partitiva, Numeralia, Comparativa, et Superlativa regunt Genitivum, quo cum genere concordant: ut,*

*Multæ harum arborum meâ ipsius manu sunt satæ.  
Utroque vestrûm delector  
Sequimur te, sancte deorum.  
Sulla centum viginti suorum amisit.  
Major Neronum.  
Gallorum fortissimi.  
Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.  
Minimè omnium.*

6. *Hi Genitivi, genitium, terrarum, aliisque, sequuntur Adverbia *huc ad, què, ubi*, similia: ut,*

*Migrandum aliquò terrarum arbitror.*

7. *Quantitatem significantia Adverbia et Substantiva, item Neutra Adjectiva ac Pronomina, Genitivum regunt: ut,*

*Satis eloquentiæ, sapientiæ parum.  
Justitia nihil expetit præmii.  
Aliiquid pristini roboris conservat.  
Quantum nummorum, tantum fidei.*

8. *Genitivum regunt Verbalia in *ax*, Participia quædam adjectivè posita, et Adjectiva significantia*

*Notitiam, curam, et cupiditatem,  
Memoriam, metum, crimen, potestatem,*

*Et quæ contrario sensu stant  
Poetæ multa alia dant:*

*ut, Tempus edax rerum.  
Animus alieni appetens, sui profusus.  
Nescia mens hominum est fati.  
Omnes immemorem beneficii oderunt.  
Fraterni sanguinis insons.  
Ira est impotens sui.  
O seri studiorum.*

9. *Verba quædam accusandi, absolvendi, damnandi, monendi, regunt Genitivum rei: ut,*

*Condemnamus haruspices stultiæ.  
Itez adversæ admonent nos religionum.*

10. *Memini, recordor, reminiscor, obliviscor, nunc Genitivum regunt, nunc Accusativum: ut,*

*Jubet mortis te meminisse Deus.  
Dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos.*

11. *Misereor, miseresco, Genitivo junguntur: ut,*

*Nil nostri miserere*

V. Adjectiva, Verba, et aliquando Substantiva, admittunt Ablativum significantem causam, vel instrumentum, vel modum, vel materiam, vel respectum, vel limitationem qualemcunque: ut,

*Cæptis immanibus effera Dido.  
Oderunt peccare mali formidine pœnæ.  
Hi jaculis, illi certant defendere saxis.  
Injuria fit duobus modis, vi aut fraude.  
Animo constamus et corpore.  
Ennius ingenio maximus, arte rudis.  
Mardonius natione Medus.  
Non grandis natu est, sed tamen jam ætate provectus.*

1. *Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor*, Ablativum regunt; *potior*, Ablativum vel Genitivum: ut,

*Fungar vice cotis.  
Cùm victoriâ posset uti, frui maluit.  
Numidae ferinâ carne vescebantur.  
Auro vi potitur.  
Romani signorum potiti sunt.*

2. Adjectiva et Verba, quæ ad *copiam egestatemve* pertinent, Ablativum regunt; multa etiam Genitivum: ut,

*Amor et melle et felle est secundissimus.  
Numquam animus motu vacuus est.  
Turpe est diffluere luxuriâ.  
Vacare culpâ maximum est solatium.  
Dives opum, dives pictai vestis et auri.  
Mancipiis locuples eget æris Cappadocum rex.  
Hæ res vitæ me saturant.*

3. *Opus et usus* Ablativum regunt: ut,

*Ubi res adsunt, quid opus est verbis?  
Usus est filio viginti minis.*

4. Adjectiva, *dignus, indignus, præditus, fretus, contentus*, item Verbum *dignor*, Ablativum regunt: ut,

*Dignum laude virum Musa vetat mori.  
Lentulus est singulari modestiâ præditus.  
Haud equidem tali me dignor honore.*

5. Ablativus Pretii sequitur Verba et Adjectiva significantia *emptionem, venditionem, vel estimationem*: ut,

*Ego spem pretio non emo.  
Plurimus auro vénit honos.  
Multorum sanguine victoria stetit.  
Quod non opus est, aese carum est.*

a. Per Ellipsin usurpantur, omissâ voce *pretio*, Ablativi, *nihil*, *parvo minimo, nimio, magno, plurimo, duplo, et dimidio*; ut,  
*Parvo fames constat, magno fastidium.*

b. Æstimatio rei plerumque Genitivum habet, præsertim ellipticos illos, *magni, parvi, minimi, pluris, atque plurimi*: ut,  
*Sapiens dolorem nihil facit.*  
*Voluptatem virtus minimi facit.*  
*Pluris est oculatus testis unus quam auriti decem.*

c. Tam Pretium quam Æstimationem significant, *pluris, minoris, tanti, quanti, maximi*: ut,  
*Emit hortos tanti quanti Pythius voluit.*

6. Ablativus Differentiæ jungitur Adjectivis, Adverbii, et Verbis comparativæ et superlativæ significationis: ut,  
*Sol multis partibus major est quam luna.*  
*A Cynicis tunica distantia dogmata.*

a. In primis Ablativi elliptici:  

<i>Altero, hoc, eo, quo,</i> <i>Nihilo et nimio,</i>	<i>Dimidio, duplo, quanto, tanto,</i> <i>Paullo, multo, aliquantus :</i>
---	---

*ut, Eo gravior est dolor, quo culpa major.*  
*Tanto pessimus omnium poeta,*  
*Quanto tu optimus omnium patronus.*

7. Ablativus Comparationis regitur a Comparativis, sive Adjectivis, sive Adverbii: ut,  
*Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.*  
*Puto mortem dedecore leviorem.*

a. Quam eleganter omittitur post *plus, amplius, minus*: ut.  
*Plus quingentos colaphos infregit mihi.*

8. Ablativum regunt hæ Præpositiones:  

<i>A, ab, absque, coram, de,</i> <i>Palam, clam, cum, ex, et e,</i> <i>Sine, tenus, pro, et præ :</i>	<i>His subter, super, addito.</i> <i>Et in, sub, si fit statio.</i>
---	--

a. Præpositio in Compositione eundem nonnunquam casum regit, quem et extra Compositionem regebat: ut  
*Detrudunt naves scopulo.*  
*Te nunc alloquor, Africane.*

b. Verba *discedendi, separandi, arcendi, removendi*, et *similia*, omissa quoque Præpositione, regunt Ablativum: ut,  
*Cedes coemptis saltibus et domo.*  
*Populus Atheniensis Phocionem patriam pepulit.*

c. Huc refer Ablativum post Verba et Participia Originis, qualia sunt, *natus, prognatus, satus, creatus, ortus* : ut,  
*Atreus Tantalo prognatus, Pelope natus.*  
*Sate sanguine divūm.*

d. *Tenus* vel Genitivum pluralem vel Ablativum regit, et post suum Casum ponitur : ut,  
*Crurum tenus a mento palearia pendent.*  
*Antiochus Tauro tenus regnare jussus est.*

e. Cum ita subjungitur casibus Pronominum Personalium, et plerumque Relativi, ut ex duobus vocibus una fiat : ut, *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quiccum vel quocum, quibuscum.*

9. Substantivum et Participium conjunctim ponuntur in Ablativo, quem Absolutum vocant : ut,  
*Regibus exactis consules creati sunt.*  
*Cæsare venturo, Phosphore, redde diem.*  
*Pereunte obsequio imperium etiam intercidit*

a. Absolutè etiam ponitur Substantivum cum Substantivo vel Adjectivo, ubi intelligitur Participium *existendi* : ut,  
*Nil desperandum est, Teucro duce et auspice Teucro.*  
*Jamque cinis, vivis fratribus, Hector erat.*

§ 95. D I. 1. Definitio Temporis in Ablativo perditur, si rogatur quando vel intra quantum tempus : ut,

*Hieme omnia bella conquiescunt.*  
*Quicquid est, biduo sciemus.*

2. In definiendo Tempore multus est Præpositionum usus: ut.

*Sol binas in singulis annis reversiones facit.*  
*De die. (id est, ante finem diei.)*  
*De nocte. (id est, ante finem noctis.)*  
*De multâ nocte. (id est, multo ante finem noctis.)*  
*Sub vesperum. (id est, appropinquante vespero.)*  
*Diem ex die expecto.*

3. *Quanto tempore abhinc, antè vel post, interdum per Ablativum, interdum per Accusativum dicitur* : ut,

*Comitia jam abhinc triginta diebus erant habita.*  
*Hoc factum est fermè abhinc biennium.*

4. Duratio temporis, ubi rogatur *quamdiu, frequentius in Accusativo* ponitur, rariùs in Ablativo : ut,

*Pericles quadraginta annos præfuit Athenis.*  
*Imperium Assyrii mille trecentis annis tenuero.*

**II. 1.** Locus, in quo est aut fit aliquid, ponitur in Ablativo, vel sine Præpositione, vel longè frequentius cum Præpositione *in*: ut,

*Ibam fortè Viā Sacrā.*  
*In Lemno uxorem ducit.*

**2.** Oppidi nomen, in quo est aut fit aliquid, ponitur in Ablativo, modò sit vel tertiae Declinationis, vel pluralis Numeri: ut,

*Alexander Babylone mortuus est.*  
*Philippus Neapoli est, Lentulus Puteolis.*  
*Thebis nutritus an Argis.*

**3** Sed in Genitivo ponitur, si et Declinationis est primæ vel secunda et singularis Numeri: ut,

*Quid Romæ faciam? mentiri nescio.*  
*Is habitat Miletii.*

**4.** Loci nomen a Præpositione ferè regitur post Verbum motūs: ut,

*Profectus est in Galliam.*  
*Ab Europâ petis Asiam.*

**5.** Oppidi nomen, ad quod itur, in Accusativo sine Præpositione ferè ponitur: ut,

*Regulus Carthaginem rediit.*

**6.** Oppidi nomen, ex quo itur, in Ablativo sine Præpositione ferè ponitur: ut,

*Demaratus fugit Corintho.*

**7** Sed et Oppida sæpè capiunt, et alia Nomina omittunt Præpositionem post Verbum motūs: ut,

*A Brundisio nulla fama venerat.*  
*Pars Scythiam et rapidum Cretæ veniemus Oaxen.*

**8** *Humus, domus, et rus* oppidorum constructionem imitantur: ut,

*Cadmus spargit humi, mortalia semina, dentes.*  
*Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi.*  
*Ita domum saturæ, venit Hesperus, ite capellæ.*  
*Video rure redeuntem senem.*

---

**III. 1.** Spatium Distantiæ frequentius in Accusativo, interdum in Ablativo ponitur: ut,

*Aheram ab Amano iter unius diei.*  
*Æsculapii templum quinque millibus passuum ab Epidauris distat.*

**2.** Spatium Progressionis in Accusativo ponitur: ut,

*Millia tum pransi tria repimus.*

3. Spatium Dimensionis frequentissimè in Accusativo, interdum Ablativo, interdum in Genitivo ponitur: ut,

*Erant muri Babylonis ducentos pedes alt:*  
*Longum sesquipedē, latum pede.*  
*Areas latus pedum denūm facito.*

---

§ 96. E. I. 1. *Libet, licet, liquet*, et pleraque Impersonalia, regunt Dativum: ut,

*Ne libeat tibi quod non licet.*  
*Sævis inter se convenit ursis.*

2. *Piget, pudet, pænitet, tædet atque miseret*, regunt Accusativum Personæ cum Genitivo Rei, vel cum Infinitivo: ut,

*Miseret te aliorum : tui te nec miseret, nec pudet.*  
*Me civitatis morum piget tædetque.*  
*Eos partim scelerum, partim ineptiarum pænitet.*  
*Quem pænitet peccasse, pænè est innocens.*

3. *Delectat, juvat, decet, dedecet, oportet*, Accusativum capiunt: ut,

*Me juvat in primâ coluisse Helicona juventā.*  
*Oratorem irasci minimè decet.*  
*Legem brevem esse oportet.*

4. *Pertinet, attinet, Præpositionem ad* cum Accusativo sumunt: ut,

*Ad rempublicam pertinet, me conservari.*  
*Profundat, perdat, pereat, nihil ad me attinet.*

5. *Interest et rēfert Genitivum admittunt: ut,*

*Interest omnium rectè facere.*  
*Rēfert compositionis, quæ quibus anteponas.*

6. Cum his Verbis junguntur, loco Pronominum Personalium, Ablativi feminini, *meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā*, subaudita voce *re*: ut,

*Et tuā et meā interest te valere.*  
*Quid rēfert meā, cui serviam?*

7. Adduntur his Verbis Genitivi Æstimationis, *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, pluris*: ut,

*Utriusque nostrūm magni interest, ut te videam.*  
*Hoc non pluris rēfert quam si imbrem in cribrium geras.*

8. Verba Neutra in Passivâ Voce impersonaliter usurpantur pro quibuslibet personis: ut,

*Ab omnibus reclamatum est. (scil. omnes reclamārunt.)*  
*Quid agitur? statut (scil. stetit a nobis, sive stamus.)*

---

II. 1. Activa sententia ferè omnis ita in Passivam converti potest, ut Nominativus Activæ sententiæ fiat in Passivâ Ablativus Agentis.

(A.) Si Activæ sententiæ Verbum Accusativum habet propioris Objecti, Verbum in Passivâ personale erit, Accusativo Activæ in Nonminativum Passivæ transeunte: ut

Act. *Egregiè consul rem gessit.*  
Pass. *Egregiè ab consule res gesta est.*

(B.) Sin minus, Verbum Passivæ impersonale erit, et vel sine casu stabit, vel eundem casum reget, quem in Activâ regebat: ut,

Act. *Hostes constanter pugnabant.*  
Pass. *Ab hostibus constanter pugnabatur.*  
  
Act. *Medicinæ nos indigemus.*  
Pass. *Medicinæ a nobis indigetur.*

2. Ubi nihil ambigu esse potest, supprimitur Ablativus Agentis post Impersonalia Passiva: ut,

*Itur in antiquam sylvam.*

3. Hinc appareat, eosdem casus a Passivis Verbis regi, atque ab Activis præterquam unum Accusativum propioris Objecti.

4. *Vapulo, veneo, exulo, liceo, fio*, cum aliis quibusdam, vi Passivâ construuntur: ut,

*Testis ab reo fustibus vapulavit.*  
*Malo a cive spoliari, quam ab hoste venire.*  
*Torqueor, infesto ne vir ab hoste cadat.*

### § 97 F. I. Infinitivus cum Gerundiis et Supinis Substantivum Verbi efficit.

1. Infinitivus multis Verbis ac Participiis adjungitur et poetice Adjectivis: ut,

*Invidere non cadit in sapientem.*  
*Videor pius errare per lucos.*  
*Solent diu cogitare qui magna volunt gerere.*  
*Et cantare pares et respondere parati.*

2. Pro Accusativo Infinitivi ponitur Gerundium in *dem* post Propositiones: ut,

*Breve tempus satis est longum ad bene vivendum.*  
*Mores puerorum se inter uendendum detegunt.*

3. Pro Genitivo ponitur Gerundium in *di* post Adjectiva et Substantiva: ut

*Cupidus sum satisfaciendi reipublicæ.  
Thucydides omnes dicendi artificio vincit.*

4. Pro Dativo ponitur Gerundium in *do* post Adjectiva et Verba nonnulla: ut,

*Crassus disserendo par esse non potuit.*

5. Pro Ablativo ponitur Gerundium in *do* Causam, Instrumentum, aut Modum significans, vel cum Præpositionibus *ab*, *de*, *ex*, *in*, *cum*: ut,

*Nihil agendo homines male facere discunt.  
Jovem a juvando nominamus.*

6. Gerundia Activè significant: si verò Transitiva sunt, eorum constructio Passivè repræsentari potest, imò frequentius repræsentatur, per Participium in *dus*, quod inde Gerundivi nomen accipit.

7. Gerundiva constructio ejusmodi est, ut Substantivum in Gerundii casum trahetur, cum quo concordet Gerundivum: ut,

*E terrâ ignem elicimus ad colendos agros.  
Occasio videbatur rerum novandarum.*

8. Ad Necessitatem Passivè significandam Gerundivum in Neutre Genere impersonaliter adhibetur: ut,

*Civium bonis est a vobis consulendum.  
Orandum est ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.*

II. 1. Supinum in *um* postponitur, ut Accusativus, Verbis motum significantibus: ut,

*Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsæ.  
Scitatum oracula Phæbi mittimus.*

2. Supinum in *u* postponitur, ut Ablativus Respectūs, tum multis Adjectivis, tum Substantivis *fus*, *nefas*, *opus*: ut,

*Nil dictu fœdum visuque hæc limina tangat,  
Intra quæ puer est.  
Ecce (nefas visu) serpens altaribus exit.*

III. Participia, Gerundia, et Supinum in *um*, regunt casus suorum Verborum: ut,

*Ausi omnes immane nefas, ausoque potiti.*

§ 98. G. 1. Neutra Adjectiva utriusque Numeri ponuntur interdum Adverbialiter, præsertim apud poetas: ut,

*Serviet æternum qui parvo nesciet uti.  
Asper, acerba tuens, retro reddit.*

2. Conjunctiones Sociativæ et Dissociativæ similes Casus, Modos, et Tempora connectunt: ut,

*Miratur portas strepitumque et strata viarum.*

*Virtus nec eripi nec surripi potest.*

Nisi alia constructionis ratio intercedat.

H. 1 *Nē*, prohibitiva Conjunction, Imperativo vel Subjunctivo Modo jungitur: ut,

*Ne qua meis esto dictis mora.*

*Ne conferas culpam in me.*

2. Subjunctivum exigunt hæ Conjunctiones:

<i>Ut</i> (that)	<i>Dum</i>	(provided that)
<i>Nē</i> (lest, that — not)	<i>Modo</i>	
<i>Quo</i> (in order that)	<i>Dummodo</i>	
<i>Quominus</i> (but that)	<i>Tanquam</i>	
<i>Quin</i> (but that)	<i>Velut</i>	
<i>Quum</i> (since)	<i>Ceu</i>	
<i>Licet</i>	<i>Quasi</i>	(as if)
<i>Quamvis</i>	<i>Utinam</i>	
<i>Ut</i>	<i>O si</i>	(I wish that)

3. Subjunctivum vel Indicativum pro re natâ capiunt hæ Conjunctiones:

<i>Quum</i>	<i>Ante — quam</i>	(before that)
<i>Ubi</i>	<i>Prius — quam</i>	
<i>Ut</i>	<i>Post — quam</i>	
<i>Dum</i>	<i>(after that)</i>	
<i>Donec</i>	<i>Si (if)</i>	(unless)
<i>Quoad</i>	<i>Nisi</i>	
<i>Quoties</i> (as often as)	<i>Etsi</i>	
<i>Simul ac</i> (as soon as)	<i>Etiamsi</i>	
	<i>Tametsi</i>	(although)

4. Indicativum plerumque capiunt hæ Conjunctiones, nisi ratio loci Subjunctivum postulet:

<i>Quod</i> (that, because)	<i>Ut</i> (from the time when)
<i>Quia</i> (because)	<i>Dum</i>
<i>Quoniam</i> (since)	<i>Donec</i>
<i>Quando</i> (when, since)	<i>Quoad</i>
<i>Siquidem</i> (inasmuch as)	<i>Quanquam</i> (although)

5. *Quamvis* cum Indicativo reperitur apud historicos et poetas: ut,  
*Quamvis ingenio non valet, arte valet.*

6. Relativum, *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, Subjunctivum regit, ubi significat *quum*, *quamvis*, *ut*, vel *talis ut*: ut,

*Miseret tui me, qui hunc facias inimicum tibi.*

*Literas misi quibus et placarem eum et monerem.*

*Est qui vinci possit.*

*Quis est qui non oderit protervam pueritiam?*

7 Pronominibus et Particulis interrogandi, subordinatè positis, Subjunetivus additur . ut,

*Ipsè quis sit, utrum sit, an non sit, iā quoque nescit.*

Talia sunt :

*Quis, quantus, qualis, qui, quot, quotus, unde, ubi, quando,*  
*Quām, quamobrem, quare, cur, quomodo, nūn, nē, ut, an, utrum.*

3. Relativum vel Conjunction, quum subordinatur Infinitivo vel Subjunctivo, Subjunctivum regit : ut,

*Cæsar ad me scripsit, gratissimum sibi esse quod quieverim.*

*Molior ut Cæsar mihi concedat ut absim, quum aliquid in senatu contra Cnaeum agatur.*

9. Conjunction intelligitur aliquando : ut,

*Philosophiæ servias oportet. (supple ut.)*

*Quærām justum sit necne poema. (supple utrum )*

*Partem opere in tanto, sineret dolor, Icare, haberet. (supple si.)*

*Naturam expellas furcā, tamen usque recurret. (supple et si.)*

## FIRST

## RULES OF CONSTRUING AND PARSING:

FOR THE USE OF BEGINNERS.

§ 99. A. As every independent Sentence *must* have

- I. A Verb in a Proper Mood, expressed or understood ;
- II. A Subject in the Nominative Case, expressed or understood ; with which the Verb agrees (see § 101.).

So observe more particularly :

(a) A Substantive *may* have any of these Adjuncts :

- (1) Adjectives agreeing with it ;
- (2) Substantives in apposition to it ;
- (3) A Genitive governed by it ;
- (4) A Preposition and Case depending on it.

(b) An Adjective *may* have any of these Adjuncts :

- (1) An Adverb qualifying it ;
- (2) Cases governed by it ;
- (3) A Preposition and Case depending on it.

(c) A Verb *may* have any of these Adjuncts :

- (1) An Adverb qualifying it ;
- (2) Cases governed by it ;
- (3) Prepositions (with their Cases) depending on it ;
- (4) An Infinitive depending on it.

B. Therefore, in order to construe a simple Sentence :

I. Find its Verb, which must be in a Proper Mood.

*Obs.* If no such Verb appear, *est* or *sunt* is probably understood.

II. Find its Subject, which will be a Nominative Case of the same Number and Person as the Verb, answering the question *who* or *what* ?

*Obs.* 1. If no such Nominative appear, the Pronoun agreeing with the Verb must generally be understood as the Subject.

*Obs.* 2. If an Adjective appear in the Nominative, but no Substantive, a Substantive with which it agrees is generally supplied in English: usually *man* or *men*, if the Adjective is Masculine; *thing* or *things*, if it is Neuter.

III. Find the Adjuncts of the Subject, if any.

IV. Find the Adjuncts of the Verb, seeing first if it has an Adverb.

*Obs.* In order to find its other Adjuncts, see whether the Verb is Copulative or not. If Copulative, the chief Adjunct will be a Predicate Substantive or Adjective. If not Copulative, the Adjuncts, if any, will be some of those above-mentioned (c). See § 101.

V. Having done this, construe into English first the Subject with its agreeing Adjective, and their Adjuncts; then the Verb with its Adverb; then its other Adjuncts.

*Note.* Generally a Simple Sentence contains only one Verb of a Proper Mood: a Compound Sentence contains two or more such Verbs. But, when a Verb is followed by an Accusative and Infinitive, the Sentence is compound.

*Obs.* A Vocative Case, with its Adjuncts, may be construed at the beginning of the Sentence, or in some other convenient place.

§ 100. Observe the following Rules for Parsing the words of a Sentence, whether in writing or by mouth. State what Part of Speech any word is, and mention, if

(1) A Substantive, { Its Case—Number—Nom. Sing.—Genitive Termination—Declension—Gender  
—Word it agrees with or is governed by.

Give the Rule for its Gender, if desired, from the Accidence: and the Rule for its agreement or government, from the Syntax.

Decline it, if desired, through both Numbers.

*Obs.* It is useful, with a Substantive, to decline the Adjective Pronoun *meus*, in order to show the Gender. Thus, when required to decline *ager*, *a field*, say —

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Ager meus, <i>my field</i>	Agri mei, <i>my fields</i>
Gen.	Agri mei, <i>of my field</i>	Agrorum meorum, <i>of my fields</i>
Dat.	Agro meo, <i>to my field</i>	Agris meis, <i>to my fields</i>
Acc.	Agrum meum, <i>my field</i>	Agros meos, <i>my fields</i>
Voc.	Ager mi, <i>O my field</i>	Agri mei, <i>O my fields</i>
Abl.	Agro meo, <i>by my field</i>	Agris meis, <i>by my fields</i>

And in like manner—

Mensa mea, *my table*. Opus meum, *my work, &c. &c.*

(2) An Adjective, { Its Case—Gender—Number—Nom.  
                                  Sing.—What declined like?—What it  
                                  agrees with?

Decline it, if required.

(3) a. A Verb in a { Its Person—Tense—Mood—Voice—  
                                  Verb it comes from—Kind of Verb—  
Proper Mood               Conjugation—What Nom. it agrees  
                                  with?

Conjugate it, if required, according to § 44.

Give the Rule, if required, for its Perfect and Supine; and the Syntax Rule for its construction.

b. An Infinitive { Tense—Voice—Verb it comes from—  
                                  Kind of Verb—Conjugation—What go-  
                                  verned by?

c. Gerund or { Verb it comes from, &c., &c.  
                                  Supine,

Conjugate and give Rules for b, and c. as for a.

d. Participle, { Case—Gender—Number—Nom. Sing.  
                                  —Tense—Voice—Verb it comes from  
                                  —Kind of Verb—Conjugation—What  
                                  it agrees with?

Decline. Conjugate, and give Rules, as above, (2) (3) a.

(4) Pronoun Re- { What Antecedent?—How it agrees  
lative,                   with its Antecedent?—What Case?—  
                                  Why?

*Obs.* Personal Pronouns follow the rules of Substantives Possessive those of Adjectives: Demonstrative Pronouns may be used either as Substantives or Adjectives.

(5) Adverb,                   What word it qualifies?

## (6) Preposition,      What word it governs ?

**Note.** When the learner is somewhat advanced, he must also state, in parsing, the derivation and composition of words, the government of Moods, &c. &c.

---

**EXAMPLE.—**It is required to construe and parse the words :

Ad firmandum corpus multum conducit tempestiva animi remissio, quæ negligi non potest impune.

1. These words contain two connected simple sentences, or one compound sentence.

(1) Verb of first sentence is                  *conducit* (Third Pers. Sing.)

(2) Subject Nom. of first sentence is *remissio*.

(3) Adjuncts to the Subject are,

a. Agreeing Adjective,                  *tempestiva*.  
b. Genitive Case,                  *animi*.

(4) Adjuncts to the Verb are,

a. Adverb,                  *multum*.  
b. Preposition with Case,                  *ad firmandum corpus*

(1) Verb of second sentence is                  *potest*.

(2) Subject Nomin. of second sentence is *quæ*.

(3) Adjuncts to the Subject *quæ*,                  none.

(4) Adjuncts to the verb are,

a. Adverb,    *non*.  
b. Infinitive,    *negligi*.  
c. Adverb,    *impune*.

2. Construe the words in this order :

Tempestiva remissio | animi, | quæ | non potest | negligi  
*Seasonable relaxation*    *of-mind*,    *which*    *can-not*    *be-omitted*

impune, | *conducit* multum | ad firmandum corpus.  
*with-impunity*,    *conduces*    *much*    *to strengthening the-body*

3. Parse thus, taking the words in order of construing :

(1.) **Tempestiva.** Adjective. Nom. Fem. Sing. from *tempestivus* like *bonus*. Agrees with *remissio* by Rule § 93. A. I.

(2.) **Remissio.** Substantive. Nom. Sing. Third Decl. Fem. (*onis*). Subject of the Verb *conducit*. Rule for its Gender § 73. (a) (2).

(3.) Animi.	Substantive. Gen. Sing. from <i>animus</i> (i) <i>mind</i> . Second Decl. Masc. Governed by <i>remissio</i> by Rule § 93. B. 7. Rule for Gender, § 72.
(4.) Quæ.	Relative Pronoun. Agrees with Antecedent <i>remissio</i> , being Fem. Sing. Third Pers. Rule, § 93. III. Nominative to the Verb <i>potest</i> .
(5.) Non.	Adverb. Qualifies the Verb <i>potest</i> .
(6.) Potest.	Verb. Third Pers. Pres. Indic. Act. from the Irregular Neuter Verb <i>possum</i> ( <i>potes</i> , &c.), § 61. Agrees with its Nom. <i>quæ</i> by Rule § 93. II.
(7.) Negligi.	Verb. Pres. Infin. Pass. from the Transitive Verb <i>negligo</i> (is), <i>I-neglect</i> . Third Conj. Is governed by the Verb <i>potest</i> by Rule § 97. F. I. 1. Conjugate <i>negligo</i> , <i>negligis</i> , <i>neglexi</i> , &c. Rule for Preterperfect and Supine, § 91. 4. N. § 82. (b).
(8.) Impune.	Adverb Qualifies the Verb <i>negligi</i> (or <i>potest</i> ).
(9.) Conducit.	Verb. Third Pers. Pres. Indic. Act. from the Neuter Verb <i>conduco</i> (is), <i>I-conduce</i> . Third Conj. Agrees with its Nominative Case <i>remissio</i> by Rule § 93. II. Conjugate <i>conduco</i> , <i>conducis</i> , <i>conduxo</i> , &c. Rule for Preterperfect and Supine, § 82. (b).
(10.) Multum.	Adverb. Qualifies the Verb <i>conducit</i> .
(11.) Ad.	Preposition. Governs the Accus. Case <i>corpus</i> .
(12.) Firmandum.	Participle. Acc. Neut. Sing. from <i>firmandus</i> , Part. Gerundive Pass. from the Transitive Verb <i>fimo</i> (as); <i>I-strengthen</i> ; First Conj. Agrees with <i>corpus</i> by Rule § 97. I. 7.
(13.) Corpus.	Substantive. Acc. Sing. from <i>corpus</i> (oris). Third Decl. Neut. Governed by <i>ad</i> , by Rule § 94. V. 8. Rule for Gender, § 75. (c).

*Note.* Each rule, when required, must be repeated at full: each Substantive, when required, be declined with *meus*; and each Verb be conjugated according to § 44.

# SYNTAXIS, SIVE SENTENTIARUM CONSTRUCTIO.

---

## PARS I.

### DE SIMPLICI SENTENTIA.

---

#### § 101. PREFATORY EXCURSION.

SYNTAX teaches the correct arrangement of words in sentences. The simplest sentence is the Proposition or Enuntiation of a single thought: as, *homo est mortalis*, man is mortal. The simplest form of Sentence has three members:

1. *Subjectum*, the Subject; that is, the person, thing, or notion concerning which something is predicated, or declared.
2. *Prædicatum*, the Predicate; that which is predicated (*prædicatur*), or declared, concerning the Subject.
3. *Copula*, or the Link, which shows the connection between the Subject and its Predicate, and so constructs the sentence.
  - (1) The Subject must be a Substantive, or that which possesses the force of a Substantive: as *homo*, man; *ego*, I; *Gallus*, a Gaul; *errare*, to err; *tu*, thou.
  - (2) The Predicate, when distinct from the Copula, must be a Substantive, Adjective, Participle, or Adjectival Pronoun; as, *animal*, an animal; *mortalis*, mortal; *victus*, conquered; *noster*, ours: or a Preposition with its case (equivalent to a noun); as *sine vitiis*, *pro consule*.
  - (3) The Copula, when distinct from the Predicate, is generally some finite form of the Verb of being, *sum*.

Examples of Simple Sentences in which the three members are distinct:—

SUBJECT.	COPULA.	PREDICATE.
1. <i>Homines</i> .....	<i>sunt</i> .....	<i>animalia</i> .
Men.....	are .....	animals.
2. <i>Ego</i> .....	<i>sum</i> .....	<i>mortalis</i> .
I .....	am.....	mortal.
3. <i>Galli</i> .....	<i>erant</i> .....	<i>victi</i> .
The Gauls .....	were .....	conquered.
4. <i>Errare</i> .....	<i>est</i> .....	<i>nostrum</i> .
To err .....	is .....	ours

SUBJECT.	COPULA.	PREDICATE.
5. <i>Tu</i> .....	<i>es</i> .....	<i>pro consule.</i>
Theu .....	art .....	Proconsul.

But, in general, the Predicate and Copula are blended together in one finite Predicative Verb, which is then called the Predicate: as,

SUBJECT.	PREDICATE.
<i>Ego</i> .....	<i>disc-o.</i>
I .....	learn (am learning).
<i>Homines</i> .....	<i>spira-nt.</i>
Men.....	breathe (are breathing).

Here, strictly speaking, the crude Forms of the Verbs (*disc-*, *spira-*) are the Predicates, and the Endings (-o, -nt), are the Copulas. And, when the Subject is understood from the Ending, a single Verb may be a complete sentence. Thus, the famous despatch of Cæsar, *Veni, vidi, vici* (I came, I saw, I conquered), contains three distinct sentences, each consisting of one word only.

*Obs.* 1. When an Adjective qualifies a Substantive without being joined to it by a Copula, it is said (*attribui*, *attributum esse*) to be an Attributive or Epithet. Thus, in the sentence, *Vir bonus laudatur* (a good man is praised), *bonus* is an Epithet; but in *Vir est bonus* (the man is good), *bonus* is the Predicate.

*Obs.* 2. The Infinitive, Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, are called *Verbum Infinitum*: all the other forms of the Verb, any of which can make a complete sentence, are called *Verbum Finitum*.

*Obs.* 3. Objectum, the Object, is that person or thing upon which an action is directed: as, *Parentes amant liberos*, where *liberos* is the Object. Sometimes there are two Objects, a nearer and a remoter: as, *Pater librum filio dat*; where *librum* is the nearer Object, *filio* the remoter.

*Obs.* 4. *Copulative* Verbs are those which couple a Subject and a Nominal Predicate. Of these Verbs *sum* is the chief: but others also have a Copulative use, as *forem*, *fio*, *existo*, *evado*, *maneo*, *audio*, *nascor*, *videor*; and Passive Verbs of *making*, *naming*, *declaring*, *choosing*, *thinking*, *finding*, &c.: as *efficior*, *appellor*, *incor*, *nuncupor*, *dicor*, *feror*, *declaror*, *creor*, *designor*, *eligor*, *inscribor*, *existimor*, *putor*, *credor*, *agnoscor*, *habeor*, *invenior*, *reperior*, &c.

## DE CONCORDANTIIS.

### CONCORDANTIA PRIMA.

*Adjectivi cum Substantivo.*

§ 102. *Regula Generalis.*—Adjectiva, Participia, et Pronomina, sive attributa sive prædicata, cum Substantivis suis genere, numero, et casu concordant: ut,

*Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos ;  
Nullus ad amissas ibit amicus opes. — OVIDIUS.*

*Obs.* 1. Substantivum per ellipsis intelligitur : ut,  
*Laborem plerique fugiunt. (supple homines.) — CICERO.*  
*Cornix a lœvâ canit, corvus a dextrâ. (supple manu.) — CIC.*

*Obs.* 2. Neutra Adjectiva Substantivorum vice funguntur : ut,  
*Omnium rerum mors est extremum. — CIC.*  
*Honestum et utile pugnare aliquando videntur. — CIC.*  
*Verecundâ laxamus seria mensâ. — PERSIUS.*



## CONCORDANTIA SECUNDA.

*Verbi cum Nominativo Subjecti.*

§ 103. *R. G.* — Verbum finitum concordat cum Nominativo numero et personâ : ut,  
*Omnia vitia contra naturam pugnant. — SENECA.*  
*Sera nimis vita est crastina. — MARTIALIS.*

*Obs.* Aliquando Infinitivus, vel continuata Locutio, vel Adverbium cum Genitivo, pro Nominativo ponitur : ut,  
*Non est mentiri meum. — TERENTIUS.*  
*Incertum est quâm longa nostrûm cujusque vita futura sit. — CIC.*  
*Parum in eo putabatur esse animi. — CIC.*

## A. DE ELLIPSI NOMINATIVI.

§ 104. *Obs.* 1. Nominativus Pronominum raro ex primitur : ut,  
*Nitimus in vetitum semper cupimusque negata. — OVIDIUS.*  
(*Obs.*) Nisi distinctioni vel emphasi inserviat : ut,  
*Ego reges ejeci : vos tyrannos introducitis. — CIC.*

*Obs.* 2. *Dicendi, narrandi, et appellandi* Verba tertiae personæ pluralis Nominativum *homines* sæpè habent intellectum : ut,  
*Quod ciunt, auribus teneo lupum. — TER.*

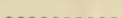
*Obs.* 3. Impersonalia Nominativum non habent expressum : ut,  
*Tædet ipsum vehementerque pænitet. — CIC.*  
(*Obs.*) Multa vero, quæ Impersonalia vocantur, Nominativum aliquem habent intellectum : ut,  
*Jam advesperascit. (supple dies.) — CIC.*

## B. DE ELLIPSI VERBI.

§ 105. Obs. 1. Personæ præsentis Verbi *sum* sæpè intelliguntur: ut,  
*Nihil bonum nisi quod honestum.* (supple est.) — CIC.

Obs. 2. Infinitivus interdum Nominativo postponitur: ut,  
*Tum pius Æneas humeris abscindere vestem.* — VIRG.

(Obs.) Plerumque autem Infinitivus Accusativo postponitur,  
præcedente Verbo finito: ut,  
*Tradunt Homerum cæcum fuisse.* — CIC.



## CONCORDANTIA TERTIA.

*Relativi cum Antecedente.*

§ 106. R. G. — Relativum cum Antecedente concordat  
genere, numero, et personâ: casu autem construi-  
tur cum suâ sententiâ: ut,

*Ea est jucundissima amicitia, quam similitudo  
morum conjugavit.* — CIC.

Obs. 1. Si Sententia pro Antecedente ponitur, Relativum est  
in neutro genere: ut,

*In tempore ad eam veni, quod rerum omnium est  
primum.* — TER.

Obs. 2. Interdum Antecedens in possessivo Pronomine in-  
cluditur: ut,

*Omnes laudare fortunas meas  
Qui natum haberem tali ingenio præditum.* (sci-  
licet, *fortunas mei qui.*) — TER.

§ 107. Nota. — Relativum, *Qui, quæ, quod*, plerumque considerari  
debet tanquam positum inter duos casus unius Substan-  
tivi, sive expressos sive suppressos: cum antecedente  
conveniet in genere et numero: cum sequente etiam in  
casu, sicut Adjectivum cum Substantivo.

Obs. 1. Ambo Casus interdum exprimuntur: ut,

*Erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus exire possent.* — CÆSAR.

Obs. 2. Plerumque supprimitur Casus posterior: ut,

*Animum rege, qui, nisi paret,  
Imperat.* (scilicet *qui animus.*) — HORATIUS.

Obs. 3. Interdum prior: ut,

*Sic tibi dent nymphæ quæ levet unda sitim* (scil. *undam quæ  
undæ.*) — OV.

**Ob. 4.** Interdum uterque: ut,

*Sunt quibus in satirā videor nimis acer. (scil. homines quibus hominibus.)* — Hor.



## SUPPLEMENTUM CONCORDANTIARUM.

### A. DE SYNESI.

§ 108. *Synēsis* est ea constructionis ratio, quæ ad sensum vocabulorum, non ad formam, spectat.

**R. G. I.** — Substantivum, formâ sed non sensu singulare, sœpè habet Verbum, Adjectivum, vel Relativum plurale: ut,

*Pars epulis onerant mensas.* — VIRGILIUS.

*Clamor inde populi, mirantium quid rei esset.* — LIVIUS.

*Cæsar equitatum præmittit, qui hostes observent* — CÆS.

**R. G. II.** — Substantivum, formâ sed non sensu neutrum vel femininum, interdum habet Adjectivum aut Relativum diversi generis: ut,

*Capita conjurationis securi percussi sunt.* — LIV.

*Ubi est is scelus, qui me perdidit?* — TER.

*Subeunt Tegeæa juventus*

*Auxilio tardi.* — STATIUS.

### B. DE PLURIBUS NOMINIBUS IN SUBJECTO.

§ 109. **R. G. I.** — Duo vel plura Nomina singularia conjuncta habent plerumque Adjectivum, Verbum, vel Relativum plurale: ut,

*Veneno absumpti sunt Hannibal et Philopæmen.* — LIV.

§ 110. **R. G. II.** — Si Nomina illa singularia diversarum sunt personarum vel generum, Verbum plurale cum Nominativo dignioris personæ, Adjectivum verò vel Relativum cum Substantivo dignioris generis, ferè concordat.

(a) Prima persona dignior est quàm secunda, secunda quàm tertia: ut,

*Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus.* — CIC.

(b) In rebus animatis dignius est masculinum genus quàm femininum: ut,

*Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt.* — TER.

(c) In rebus verò inanimis Adjectivum vel Relativum sæpiissimè erit in neutro genere: ut,

*Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt.* — SALLUSTIUS.

(*Obs.*) Verbum haud raro cum proximo Substantivo concordat: ut,  
*Religio et fides anteponatur amicitiae.* — CIC.  
*Convicta est Messalina et Silius.* — TACITUS.

### C. DE CONSTRUCTIONE VERBORUM COPULATIVORUM.

§ 111. *R. G.* — Verba Copulativa, sive finiti modi, sive infiniti, eundem habent utrinque casum: ut,

*Si spes est expectatio boni, mali expectationem esse necesse est metum.* — CIC.

*Syllaba longa brevi subjecta vocatur Iambus.* — HOR  
*Regius agnoscor per rata signa puer.* — OV.  
*Vobis licet esse beatis.* — HOR.

§ 112. *Obs. 1.* Verbum, inter duos Nominativos positum, interdum cum posteriore solo concordat: ut,

*Amantium iræ amoris integratio est.* — TER.

*Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda.* — CIC.

*Obs. 2.* Relativum, inter duo Substantiva ejusdem rei collocatur, cum posteriore solo sæpè concordat: ut,

*Animal plenum rationis, quem vocamus hominem.* — CIC.  
*Thebæ, quod Bœotiaæ caput est.* — LIV.

### D. DE APPPOSITIONE.

§ 113. *R. G.* — Substantivo, Pronomini, et interdum Sententiæ, apponi potest Substantivum ejusdem rei in eodem casu: ut,

*Effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum.* — OV.

*Nos consules desumus.* — CIC.

*Cogitet oratorem institui, rem arduam.* — CIC.

*Not.* — Cum duo Substantiva diversarum rerum concurrunt, alterum in Genitivo ponitur: ut,

*Recubans sub tegmine fagi.* — VIRG.

### DE RECTIONE CASUUM.

#### ACCUSATIVUS.

§ 114. Accusativus est casus propioris Objecti.

*R. G. I.* — Verba Transitiva regunt Accusativum propioris Objecti: ut,

*Sperne voluptates.* — HOR.

*Imprimis venerare Deum.* — VIEG.

*Percontatorem fugito.* — HOR.

*Obs. 1.* Verba quædam Neutra et Passiva Accusativum admittunt suæ operationis : ut,

*Duram servit servitutem.* — PLAUTUS.

*Claudius aleam lusit.* — SUETONIUS.

§ 115. *Obs. 2.* Verba Transitiva, quæ in Voce Passivâ Copulativa fiunt, duplicum habent Accusativum, unum Objectivum, alterum Prædicativum : ut,

*Ciceronem populus consulem declaravit.* — CIC.

*Hannibal Philippum hostem reddidit Romanis.* — NEPOS.

§ 116. *Obs. 3.* Verba quædam *rogandi* et *docendi* duplicum habent Accusativum, unum personæ, alterum verò rei : ut,

*Pacem te poscimus omnes.* — VIRG.

*Quid nunc te, asine, litteras doceam ?* — CIC.

Et interdum *celo* : ut,

*Ea ne me celet consuefeci filium.* — TER.

(*Obs.*) Eadem verba in Passivâ Voce retinent Accusativum rei : ut,

*Is primus rogatus est sententiam.* — LIV.

*Motus doceri gaudet Ionicos.* — HOR.

§ 117. *Obs. 4.* Accusativus Respectûs Græco more subjicitur tum Verbis Neutris et Passivis tum Adjectivis : ut,

*Micat auribus et tremit artus.* — VIRG.

*Inficitur teneras tota rubore genas.* — TIBULLUS.

*Germanorum feminae nudæ sunt brachia ac lacertos.* — TAC.

§ 118. *R. G. II.* — Accusativum regunt hæ Præpositiones :

*Ante, apud, ad, adversus,*

*Circum, circa, citra, cis,*

*Contra, inter, erga, extra,*

*Infra, intra, juxta, ob,*

*Penes, pone, post, et præter,*

*Prope, propter, per, secundum,*

*Supra, versus, ultra, trans;*

*His, super, subter, addito,*

*Et in, sub, si fit motio.*

§ 119. *R. G.* — Vocabularius Casus, regitur ab Interjectione, sive expressâ, sive intellectâ : ut,

*O Sol pulcher, O laudande.* — HOR.

*Alme Sol.* — HOR.

*Fili vel O fili.* — TER.

*Not.* — Interjectiones *en* et *ecce* regunt Accusativum et Nominativum ; *o, ah, heu, hem, proh*, Accusativum, Nominativum, et Vocabularius : ut,

*En miserum hominem !* — CIC.

*Ecce nova turba atque rixa !* — VIRG.

*Heu miserande puer !* — VIRG.

*Heu vanitas humana !* — PLINIUS.

*Proh Deum atque hominum fidem !* — CIC.

*Obs.* Dativum regunt *hei* et *væ* : ut,

*Hei misero mihi ! — TER.*

*Væ tibi, causidice ! — MART.*



## DATIVUS.

§ 120. Dativus est Casus remotioris Objecti. Interdum Agentem, interdum Propositum significat.

### A. DATIVUS OBJECTI.

*R. G. I.* — Omnia ferè Adjectiva et Verba, item Adverbia et Substantiva, regunt Dativum remotioris Objecti, cuius causâ est aut fit aliquid : ut,

*Non solum nobis divites esse volumus. — CIC.*

*Mihi istic nec seritur nec metitur. — PLAUT.*

*Numa virgines Vestæ legit. — LIV.*

*Urbi pater est urbique maritus. — LUCANUS.*

*Tibi luditur. — PERS.*

*Obs.* 1. Ita *sum* possessivè significans Dativum possidentis habet: ut,

*Est mihi namque domi pater, est injusta noverca. — VIRG.*

*Obs.* 2. Dativus Pronominis abundat eleganter : ut,

*Quid mihi Celsus agit ? — HOR.*

*Suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo. — TER.*

§ 121. *R. G. II.* — Dativum regunt plurima Adjectiva, Adverbia, et Verba, interdum etiam Substantiva, a quibus indicatur

*Commodum, communicatio,  
Comparatio, consecratio,  
Congruentia, consuetudo,  
Auxilium et aptitudo,  
Benignitas, vicinitas,  
Jucunditas, affinitas,*

*Traditio, venia, demonstratio,  
Promissio, fides, et narratio  
Obsequium, imperium,  
Et quicquid his contrarium;  
Cum nubo, vaco : cetera  
Sub primâ stabunt regulâ.*

(1) Adjectiva : ut,

*Patriæ sit idoneus, utilis agris. — JUVENALIS.*

*Nil fuit unquam sic impar sibi. — HOR.*

*Est finitimus oratori poeta. — CIC.*

*Turba gravis paci placidæque inimica quieti. — LUCAN.*

*Homini fidelissimi sunt equus et canis. — PLIN.*

*Omnibus supplex. — CIC.*

## (2) Adverbia : ut,

*Congruenter naturæ vivendum est. — CIC.*

*Improbo et inertis nemini bene esse potest. — CIC.*

## (3) Verba :

## (a) Transitiva : ut,

*Culturæ patientem commodat aurem. — HOR.*

*Præsentia confer præteritis. — LUCRETIUS.*

*Hunc lucum tibi dedico, Priape. — CATULLUS.*

*Quod alii donat sibi detrahit. — S. CLEMENS.*

*Hoc mihi confirmavit et persuasit. — CIC.*

*Nobis spondet fortuna salutem. — VIRG.*

## (b) Intransitiva : ut,

*Neve mihi noceat, quod vobis semper, Achivi,*

*Profuit ingenium. — OV.*

*Philosophia medetur animis. — CIC.*

*Tibi favemus. — CIC.*

*Irascor tibi. — CATULL.*

*Victrix causa deis placuit, sed victa Catoni. — LUCAN.*

*Parce pio generi. — VIRG.*

*Anguis Sullæ apparuit immolanti. — CIC.*

*O formose puer, nimium ne crede colori. — VIRG.*

*Imperat aut servit collecta pecunia cuique. — HOR.*

*Placitone etiam pugnabis amori? — VIRG.*

*Venus nupsit Vulcano. — CIC.*

*Philosophiæ semper vaco. — CIC.*

## (4) Substantiva : ut,

*Nulla fides regni sociis. — LUCAN.*

*Justitia est obtemperatio legibus et institutis. — CIC.*

§ 122. Obs. 1. *Æqualis, proprius, communis, par, alienus,*  
*Dissimilis, similis, dispar, consors, sociusque,*  
*Conscius, affinis, sacer, cœmulus, atque superstes,*  
*Pluraque, nunc voluere Dativum, nunc Genitivum.*

*ut, Media simillima veris sunt. — LIV.*

*Deos esse similes tui putas? — PLAUT.*

*Propria est nobis mentis agitatio et solertia. — CIC.*

*Proprium est oratoris ornatè dicere. — CIC.*

(Obs.) Eadem ferè Adjectiva, item Verba et Substantiva ejusdem significationis, sequitur etiam Præpositio cum suo easu ut.

*Hi inter se æquales et pares sunt.* — CIC.

*Hæc sunt locupletibus cum plebe communia.* — CIC.

*Homo sum : humani nihil a me alienum puto.* — TER.

*Homini cum Deo similitudo est.* — CIC.

*Senones cum Carnutibus consilia communicavere.* — CÆS.

§ 123. Obs. 2. Ex Adjectivis quæ affectionem animi denotant, multa capiunt Præpositiones *in*, *erga*, *adversus*, cum Accusativo : ut,

*Acer in hostem.* — HOR.

*Benignus erga te fui.* — PLAUT.

Obs. 3. *Natus*, *aptus*, *utilis*, cum aliis Adjectivis *commodi* et *congruentiæ*, Accusativo sæpè junguntur cum Præpositione *ad* : ut,

*Ad laudem et ad decus nati sumus.* — CIC.

*Thracibus promptus est ad mortem animus.* — TAC.

§ 124. Obs. 4. *Delecto* atque *jūvo*, *jubeo*, *rego*, *lædo*, *guberno*, et alia quædam Verba, Accusativo contra regulam junguntur : ut,

*Multos castra juvant.* — HOR.

*Tu regere imperio populos, Romane, memento.* — VIRG.

Obs. 5. *Tempero* et *moderor* nunc Dativum nunc Accusativum habent : ut,

*Privignis mulier temperat innocens.* — HOR.

*Temperat ora frænis.* — HOR.

*Hic moderatur equos qui non moderabitur iræ.* — HOR.

§ 125. R. G. III. — Dativum fermè regunt Verba composita cum Adverbii *bene*, *satis*, *male*; et cum Præpositionibus, præsertim his : —

<i>Ad</i> , <i>ante</i> , <i>ab</i> ,	<i>Sub</i> , <i>super</i> , <i>ob</i> ,
---------------------------------------	---

<i>In</i> , <i>inter</i> , <i>de</i> ,	<i>Con</i> , <i>post</i> , et <i>prœ</i> .
--	--

(1) Verba Transitiva : ut,

*Gigantes bellum diis intulerunt.* — CIC.

*Anatum ova gallinis sæpè supponimus.* — CIC.

*Deus animum præfecit corpori.* — CIC.

(2) Verba Intransitiva : ut,

*Ceteris satisfacio semper ; mihi nunquam.* — CIC.

*Sicilia quondam Italæ adhæsit.* — JUSTINUS.

*Vir mihi semper abest.* — OV.

*Impendent hominibus varia genera mortis.* — CIC.

*Squamis intermicat aurum.* — CLAUDIANUS.

*Lucumo superfuit patri.* — LIV.

*Vitia nobis sub virtutum nomine obrepunt.* — SEN.

*Obs.* Multa ex his variant constructionem : ut,

*Helvetii reliquos Gallos virtute præcedunt. — Cæs.*  
*In amore hæc insunt vicia. — TER.*

### B. DATIVUS AGENTIS.

§ 126. *R. G.* — Dativus Agentis sequitur Verbalia in *bilis*, et Gerundivum in *dus*; interdum Participia perfecta; raro Verba Passiva : ut,

*Multis ille bonis flebilis occidit. — HOR.*

*Restat Chremes qui mihi exorandus est. — TER.*

*Magnus civis obit et formidatus Othoni. — JUV.*

*Barbarus hic ego sum, quia non intelligor ulli*  
*— Ov.*

*Obs.* Verba et Participia Passiva plerumque habent Ablativum Agentis cum Præpositione *a* vel *ab* : ut,

*Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis. — HOR.*

*Mors Crassi est a multis defleta. — CIC.*

### C. DATIVUS PROPOSITI.

§ 127. *R. G.* — Dativus Propositi additur Verbo *sum* et multis aliis, vel pro Nominativo vel pro Accusativo : ut,

*Exemplo est magni formica laboris. — HOR.*

*Nucleum amisi; reliquit pignori putamina.*  
*— PLAUT.*

*Obs.* Sæpè etiam duplex admittitur Dativus, alter Objecti, alter autem Propositi : ut,

*Exitio est avidum mare nantis. — HOR.*

*Quod aliis vitio vertis, tibi laudi ne duxeris. — SEN*

~~~~~

### GENITIVUS.

§ 128. Genitivus vel Subjectivus est, vel Objectivus.

A. Subjectivus : ut,

*Crassi defensio. (scil. oratio quâ Crassus defendit.)*

B. Objectivus : ut,

*Defensio Gabinii. (scil. oratio quâ defensus est Gabinius.)*

Interdum uterque Genitivus ab eodem Substantivo pendet: ut,

*Repentina erat Crassi defensio Gabinii.* (scil. oratio  
quâ *Crassus Gabinium defendit.*) — CIC.

*Sic metus hostium, amor Dei, et similia, duplii sensu  
dici possunt.*

§ 129. A. GENITIVUS SUBJECTIVUS est in primis Auctoris et Possessoris; item Qualitatis, et Distributionis.

R. G. I.— Genitivus Auctoris et Possessoris sequitur omnia ferè Substantiva, necnon Verba *sum, facio, fio*, per ellipsis Substantivi: ut,

*Polycleti signa planè perfecta sunt.* — CIC.

*Singulorum opes sunt divitiæ civitatis.* — CIC.

*Omnia, quæ mulieris fuerunt, viri fiunt.* — CIC.

*Scipio Hispaniam Romanæ ditionis fecit.* — LIV.

§ 130. Obs. 1. *Est* Impersonale præponitur Genitivo, si intelligitur *Indoles, indicium, | Munus aut officium.*

ut, *Cujusvis hominis est errare.* — CIC.

*Improbi hominis est mendacio fallere.* — CIC.

*Honoris amplissimi est miseros defendere.* — CIC.

*Est adolescentis maiores natu vereri.* — CIC.

Obs. 2. Fit etiam ellipsis aliorum Nominum ante Genitivum: ut,

*Hectoris Andromache.* (supple *uxor.*) — VIRG.

*Deiphobe Glauci.* (supple *filia.*) — VIRG.

*Ventum erat ad Vestæ.* (supple *templum.*) — HOR.

*Hujus video Byrrhiam.* (supple *servum.*) — TER.

§ 131. Obs. 3. Genitivi *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, objectivè tantum usurpantur: subjectivè ponuntur Possessiva *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*: ut,

*Si tibi cura mei, sit tibi cura tui.* — OV.

*Quonam nostri tibi cura recessit?* — STAT.

*Venatum puer ire parat, mea maxima cura.* — VIRG.

*Nicias vehementer tuâ sui memorâ delectatur* — CIC.

(Obs. 1.) Genitivus Personalis in Possessivo inclusus recipit alterum Genitivum sibi concordantem vel appositum: ut,

*Respublica meâ unius operâ salva erat.* — CIC.

*Meum solius peccatum corrigi non potest.* — CIC.

*Aves fœtus adultos suæ ipsorum fiduciæ permittunt.* — QUINT.

*Nostros vidisti flentis ocellos.* — OV.

*Studium tuum adolescentis perspexi.* — CIC.

(Obs. 2.) *Nostri, vestri, objectivè, nostrûm, restrûm, partitivè* ponuntur.

§ 132 R. G. II. — Genitivus Qualitatis sequitur Substantiva et Verba Copulativa : ut,

*Ingenui vultūs puer ingenuique pudoris.* — JUV.  
*Claudius erat somni brevissimi.* — SUETONIUS.

*Obs.* Qualitas etiam in Ablativo ponitur: ut,

*Senex promissā barbā, horrenti capillo.* — PLIN.

§ 133. R. G. III. — Vocabula Partitiva, Numeralia, Comparativa et Superlativa, regunt Genitivum rei distributæ.

*Not.* — Adjectivum vel Pronomen plerumque erit in eodem genere cum Genitivo: Genitivus erit in Plurali Numero, nisi sit nomen collectivum.

1. Adjectiva et Pronomina Partitiva :

|                                        |                                     |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Alius, alter, uter, ullus,</i>      | <i>Hic, is, ille, qui, et quis,</i> |
| <i>Plerique, pauci, multi, nullus,</i> | <i>Tot, quot; cum Compositis;</i>   |
| <i>Solus, atque singuli,</i>           | <i>Et si quod aliud Adjectivum</i>  |
| <i>Ceteri, et reliqui;</i>             | <i>Acquirit sensum partitivum:</i>  |

ut, *Virtutum in aliâ alius excellit.* — CIC.

*Multæ harum arborum meâ manu sunt satæ.* — CIC.

*Elephanto belluarum nulla est prudentior.* — CIC.

*Stultorum quisnam beatus?* — CIC.

*Utroque restrûm delector.* — CIC.

*Lecti juvenum.* — STAT.

*Sequimur te, sancte deorum.* — VIRG.

2. Numeralia, sive Cardinalia, sive Ordinalia, item *princeps*, *medius* : ut,

*Homini uni animantium luctus est datus.* — PLIN.

*Sulla centum viginti suorum amisit.* — EUTROPIUS.

*Sicilia prima omnium nationum provincia est appellata.* — CIC.

*Nunc juvenum princeps, deinde future senum.* — Ov.

*Roma regionum Italiæ media est.* — LIV.

3. Comparativa et Superlativa : ut,

*Major Neronum.* — HOR.

*Gallorum fortissimi sunt Belgæ.* — CÆS.

4. Adverbia Superlativa : ut,

*Hoc ad te minimè omnium pertinet.* — CIC.

5. Substantiva Partitiva et partitivè posita : ut,

*Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.* — PLIN

*Piscium feminæ majores quam mares.* — PLIN.

§ 134. Obs. 1.—Distributionem etiam efficiunt Præpositiones *ex, in, inter, ante, de* : ut,

*Nihil ex his, quæ videmus, manet.* — SEN.

*Thales sapientissimus in septem fuit.* — CIC.

*Inter Scythicæ annes amanissimus Borysthenes.* — MELA.

*Ante omnes Turnus pulcherrimus.* — VIRG.

*Una de multis fuit in parentem*

*Splendidè mendax.* — HOR.

§ 135. Obs. 2.—Hi Genitivi, gentium, terrarum, aliisque, sequuntur  
Adverbia localia, *huc, eò, quò, ubi, similia* : ut,

*Migrandum aliquò terrarum arbitror.* — CIC.

*Vir bonus, ubicumque erit gentium, a nobis diligetur.* — CIC.

*Perseus perfugium sibi nusquam gentium esse ait.* — LIV.

*Huccine rerum venimus?* — PERS.

§ 136. R. G. IV. — Substantiva, Adverbia, item Neutra  
Adjectiva et Pronomina, Quantitatem significantia,  
regunt Genitivum rei demensæ : ut,

*Justitia nihil expedit præmii.* — CIC.

*Satis eloquentiæ, sapientiæ parum.* — SALL.

*Aliquid pristini roboris conservat.* — CIC.

*Dimidium facti qui bene cœpit habet.* — HOR.

*Quantum nummorum, tantum fidei.* — JUV.

§ 137. B. R. G. I. — GENITIVUM OBJECTIVUM regunt multa  
Substantiva, in quibus transitiva quædam vis est : ut

*Insitus est menti cognitionis amor.* — CIC.

Obs. Hic Genitivus aliquando Præpositionis cum casu vicem  
occupat: ut,

*Bellum Helvetiorum. (scil. cum Helvetiis.)* — CÆS.

§ 138. R. G. II. Genitivum Objectivum regunt Verbalia in  
*ax, Participia quædam adjectivè posita, et Adjectiva*  
*significantia*

|                                         |                                |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>Notitiam, curam, et cupiditatem,</i> | <i>Et quæ contrario sensu</i>  |
| <i>Memoriam, metum, crimen, po-</i>     | <i>stant;</i>                  |
| <i>testatem,</i>                        | <i>Poetae multa alia dant:</i> |

ut, *Tempus edax rerum.* — OV.

*Animus alieni appetens, sui profusus.* — SALL.

*Nescia mens hominum est fati.* — VIRG.

*Omnes immemorem beneficii oderunt.* — CIC.

*Ira est impotens sui.* — SEN.

*Fraterni sanguinis insons.* — Ov.  
*O scri studiorum.* — Hor.

§ 139. R. G. III. — Verba quædam *accusandi, convincendi, absolvendi, damnandi*, regunt, cum Accusativo personæ, Genitivum rei : ut,

*Cicero Verrem avaritiæ arguit.* — Cic.

*Condemnamus haruspices stultiæ.* — Cic.

*Ne quem innocentem capit is arcessas.* — Cic.

*Obs.* 1. Pro hoc Genitivo ponitur Præpositio, præsertim *de*, cum suo casu : ut,

*Accusatur inter sicarios et de beneficiis.* — Cic.

*Obs.* 2. Sine Præpositione usurpantur hi Ablativi, *crimine, lege, scelere, capite*, et alii nonnulli : ut,

*Themistocles crimine prodigionis absens damnatus est.* — NEP

*Legibus ambitus interrogatus pœnas dedit.* — Cic.

*Fulvium capite anquirendum subclamant.* — Liv.

*Obs.* 3. Similiter Verba *monendi*, cum Accusativo personæ, regunt Genitivum rei : ut,

*Res adversæ admonent nos religionum.* — Liv.

(*Obs.*) Vel Ablativum cum Præpositione *de* : ut,  
*Terentiam de testamento moneatis.* — Cic.

§ 140. R. G. IV. — *Memini, recordor, reminiscor, obliviscor*, nunc Genitivum regunt, nunc Accusativum : ut,

*Jubet mortis te meminisse Deus.* — MART.

*Dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos.* — VIRG.

§ 141. R. G. V. — *Misereor, miserresco*, Genitivo junguntur ; *miseror, commiseror*, Accusativo : ut,

*Nil nostri miserere.* — VIRG.

*Arcadii, quæso, miserescite regis.* — VIRG.

*Agesilaus commiseratus est fortunam Græciæ.*  
 — NEP.

§ 142. *Not.* 1. — Genitivus interdum ponitur post Verba *desinendi, potiendi, regnandi* : ut,

*Desine mollium tandem querelarum.* — Hor.

*Romani signorum et armorum potiti sunt.* — SALL.

*Daunus agrestium regnavit populorum.* — Hor.

*Not.* 2. — Rariores sunt Genitivi Causæ, Respectūs, Propinationis : ut,

*Laudabat leti juvenem.* — SIL.

*Animi pendeo.* — Cic.

*Da noctis mediae (supple poculum).* — Hor.

## ABLATIVUS.

§ 143. Ablativus est Casus qui circumstantia actionis definit.

R. G. I.—Adjectiva, Verba, et aliquando Substantiva, admittunt Ablativum significantem rei aut actionis causam, vel instrumentum, vel modum, vel materiam, vel limitationem qualemcumque.

§ 144. A. ABLATIVUS CAUSÆ sequitur Adjectiva, Verba, et præsertim Participia : ut,

*Cœptis immanibus effera Dido.* — VIRG.

*Oderunt peccare mali formidine pœnæ.* — HOR.

*Animus pravis cupidinibus captus.* — SALL.

§ 145. B. ABLATIVUS INSTRUMENTI sequitur Verba : ut,

*Dente lupus, cornu taurus petit.* — HOR.

*Hi jaculis, illi certant defendere saxis.* — VIRG.

§ 146. C. ABLATIVUS MODI plerumque sequitur Verba : ut,

*Injuria fit duobus modis, vi aut fraude.* — CIC.

*Obs.* Persæpè capit Præpositionem *cum* : ut,

*Magnâ cum curâ atque diligentâ scripsit.* — CIC

*Cum veniâ facito, quisquis es, ista legas.* — OV.

§ 147. D. (a) ABLATIVUS MATERIÆ sequitur Verba *construendi, consistendi*, et similia : ut,

*Animo constamus et corpore.* — CIC.

*Obs.* Vel cum Præpositione *ex* : ut,

*Beata vita constat ex rectis actionibus.* — SEN.

(b) *Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, potior*, Ablativum regunt : ut,

*Fungar vice cotis.* — HOR.

*Cùm victoriâ posset uti, frui maluit.* — FLORUS.

*Numidæ ferinâ carne vescebantur.* — SALL.

*Auro vi potitur.* — VIRG.

*Obs.* Hæc Verba antiquitùs Accusativum habebant : ut,

*Functus est officium boni viri.* — TER.

§ 148. (c.) Adjectiva et Verba, quæ ad *copiam egestatemve* pertinent, Ablativum regunt; multa etiam Genitivum : ut,

*Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus.* — PLAUT.  
*Numquam animus motu vacuus est.* — CIC.  
*Turpe est diffluere luxuriā.* — CIC.  
*Vacare culpā maximum est solatium.* — CIC.  
*Dives opum, dives pictai vestis et auri.* — VIRG.  
*Mancipiis locuples eget aeris Cappadocum rex.*  
— HOR.  
*Vis consilii expers mole ruit suā.* — HOR.  
*Hæ res vitæ me saturant.* — PLAUT.

(d) *Opus et usus* Ablativum regunt: ut,  
*Ubi res adsunt, quid opus est verbis?* — SALL.  
*Usus est filio viginti minis.* — PLAUT.

(e) *Dignus, indignus, prædictus, fretus*, item Verbum  
*dignor*, Ablativum regunt: ut,  
*Dignum laude virum Musa vetat mori.* — HOR.  
*Lentulus est singulari modestiā prædictus.* — CIC.  
*Haud equidem tali me dignor honore.* — VIRG.

#### § 149. E. ABLATIVUS LIMITATIONIS latè patet.

(a) Ablativus Respectūs jungitur præsertim Adjectivis,  
item Verbis et Substantivis: ut,  
*Ennius ingenio maximus, arte rudis.* — OV.  
*Oculis capti fodere cubilia talpæ.* — VIRG.  
*Agesilaus fuit claudus altero pede.* — NEP.  
*Et corde et genibus tremit.* — HOR.  
*Quid hoc homine facies?* — CIC.

#### § 150. Obs. Huc referuntur Ablativi illi, *domo, natione, numero,* similes; item *ætate et natu*: ut,

*Domo Carthaginienses sunt.* — PLAUT.  
*Mardonius natione Medus.* — NEP.  
*Non grandis natu est, sed tamen jam ætate proiectus.* — CIC.  
*Ennius fuit major natu quam Plautus et Navius.* — CIC.

#### § 151. (b) Ablativus Pretii sequitur Verba et Adjectiva significantia *emptionem, venditionem, vel aestimationem*: ut,

*Ego spem pretio non emo.* — TER.  
*Plurimus auro vénit honos.* — PROPERTIUS.  
*Multorum sanguine victoria stetit.* — LIV.  
*Quod non opus est, asse carum est.* — SEN.

*Obs.* 1 Per Ellipsin usurpantur, omissâ voce *pretio*, hi Ablativi,  
*vili, parvo, minimo, nimio, magio, plurimo, duplo, et  
dimidio* : ut,

*Parvo fames constat, magio fastidium.* — SEN.

*Obs.* 2. Æstimatio rei plerumque Genitivum habet, præsertim  
ellipticos illos, *magni, parvi, minimi, pluris, atque plu-  
rimi* : ut,

*Sapiens dolorem nihili facit.* — CIC.

*Voluptatem virtus minimi facit.* — CIC.

*Pluris est oculatus testis unus, quam auriti decem.* — PLAUT.

(*Obs.*) Tam Pretium quam Æstimationem significant, *pluris, minoris,  
tanti, quanti, maximi* : ut,  
*Emit hortos tanti, quanti Pythius voluit.* — CIC.

§ 152. (c) Ablativus Differentiæ jungitur Adjectivis, Adver-  
biis, et Verbis comparativæ et superlativæ sig-  
nificationis: ut,

*Sol multis partibus major est quam luna.* — CIC.  
*A Cynicis tunica distantia dogmata.* — HOR.

*Obs.* In primis Ablativi elliptici:

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Altero, hoc, eo, quo,</i><br><i>Nihilo et nimio,</i><br><i>ut, Eo gravior est dolor, quo culpa major.</i> — CIC.<br><i>Tanto pessimus omnium poeta,</i><br><i>Quanto tu optimus omnium patronus.</i> — CATUL.<br><i>Nihilo aliter sum atque fui.</i> — TER. | <i>Dimidio, duplo, quanto, tanto,</i><br><i>Paullo, multo, aliquanto:</i><br><i>Dimidio, duplo, quanto, tanto,</i><br><i>Paullo, multo, aliquanto:</i><br><i>Dimidio, duplo, quanto, tanto,</i><br><i>Paullo, multo, aliquanto:</i> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

§ 153. (d) Ablativus Comparationis regitur a Comparativis,  
sive Adjectivis, sive Adverbii.

*Notu.* — Hic Ablativus ponitur pro Conjunctione *quam* cum  
Nominativo vel Accusativo.

(1) Pro *quam* cum Nominativo . ut,

*Nihil est amabilius virtute.* — CIC.

*Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.* — HOR.

(2) Pro *quam* cum Accusativo : ut,

*Puto mortem dedecore leviorem.* — CIC.

*Neminem Lycurgo utiliorem Lacedæmon genuit.* —  
VALERIUS MAXIMUS.

*Obs.* 1. *Quam* duobus Comparativis eleganter interponitur : ut,  
*Triumphus Camilli clarior erat quam gratior.* — LIV

*Obs.* 2. *Quam* eleganter omittitur post *plus, amplius, minus* : ut,

*Plus quingentos colaphos infregit mihi.* — TER.

*Obs.* 3. Comparationi inserviunt etiam Præpositiones *ante, præter,  
supra, præ* : ut,

*Pygmalion, scelere ante alios immanior omnes.* — VIRG.  
*Crux præter ceteras altior.* — SUET.

§ 154. R. G. II. — Ablativum regunt hæ Præpositiones.

|                                                                                                            |                                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>A, ab, absque, coram, de,</i><br><i>Palam, clam, cum, ex, et e,</i><br><i>Sine, tenus, pro, et præ:</i> | <i>His subter, super, addito,</i><br><i>Et in, sub, si fit statio.</i> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|

*Obs.* 1. Præpositio in Compositione eundem nonnunquam Casum regit, quem et extra Compositionem regebat: ut,

*Detrudunt naves scopulo.* — VIRG.

*Te nunc alloquor, Africane.* — CIC.

*Obs.* 2. Eleganter iteratur eadem Præpositio: ut,  
*E corpore exedit animus.* — CIC.

(*Obs.*) Vel importatur nova: ut,

*Alto defluxit ab æthere tabes.* — LUCAN.

*Obs.* 3. Verba *discedendi, separandi, arcendi, removendi*, et similia, omissâ quoque Præpositione, regunt Ablativum: ut,

*Cedes coemptis saltibus et domo.* — HOR.

*Populus Atheniensis Phocionem patriâ pepulit.* — NEP.

(*Obs.*) Huc refer Ablativum post Verba et Participia Originis: ut,  
*Atreus Tantalo prognatus, Pelope natus.* — CIC.  
*Sate sanguine divûm.* — VIRG.

*Obs.* 4. *Tenus* vel Genitivum pluralem vel Ablativum regit, et post suum Casum ponitur: ut,

*Crurum tenus a mento palearia pendent.* — VIRG.

*Antiochus Tauro tenus regnare jussus est.* — CIC.

*Obs.* 5. *Cum* ita subjungitur casibus Pronominum Personalium, et plerumque Relativi, ut ex duobus vocibus una fiat: ut, *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quicunque pro quocum, quibuscum.*

#### A. DE ABLATIVO ABSOLUTO.

§ 155. R. G. — Substantivum et Participium conjunctim ponuntur in Ablativo, quem Absolutum vocant: ut,

*Regibus exactis consules creati sunt.* — LIV.

*Cæsare venturo, Phosphore, redde diem.* — MART.

*Pereunte obsequio imperium etiam intercidit.* — TAC.

*Obs.* 1. Absolutè etiam ponitur Substantivum cum Substantivo vel Adjectivo, ubi intelligitur Participium *existendi*: ut,

*Nil desperandum est, Teucro duce et auspice Teucro.* — HOR.

*Jamque cinis, vivis fratribus, Hector erat.* — OV.

*Obs.* 2. Aliquando cum Ablativo Participii absolutè ponitur continuata Locutio pro Ablativo Substantivi : ut,

*Excepto quod non simul esses, cetera latet.* — HOR.

## DE CONSTRUCTIONE TEMPORIS.

§ 156. *R. G. I.* — Definitio Temporis in Ablativo ponitur, si rogatur quando vel *intra quantum tempus* : ut,

*Hieme omnia bella conquiescunt.* — CIC.

*Quicquid est, biduo sciemus.* — CIC.

*Obs.* 1. In definiendo Tempore multus est Præpositionum usus : ut,

*Sol binas in singulis annis reversiones facit.* — CIC.

*De die.* (id est, *ante finem diei.*) — HOR.

*De nocte.* (id est, *ante finem noctis.*) — HOR.

*De multa nocte.* (id est, *multo ante finem noctis.*) — CIC.

*Sub vesperum.* (id est, *appropinquante vespero.*) — CÆS.

*Diem ex die expecto.* — CIC.

*Obs.* 2. *Quanto tempore abhinc, antè, vel post, interdum per Ablativum, interdum per Accusativum dicitur :* ut,

*Comitia jam abhinc triginta diebus erant habita.* — CIC.

*Hoc factum est fermè abhinc biennium.* — PLAUT.

*R. G. II.* — Duratio temporis, ubi rogatur *quamdiu*, frequentius in Accusativo ponitur, rarius in Ablativo : ut,

*Pericles quadraginta annos præfuit Athenis.* — CIC.

*Imperium Assyrii mille trecentis annis tenuere.* — JUST.

## DE CONSTRUCTIONIBUS LOCI ET SPATII.

157. A. *R. G. I.* — Locus, in quo est aut fit aliquid, ponitur in Ablativo, vel sine Præpositione, vel longè frequentius cum Præpositione *in* : ut,

*Ibam forte Viâ Sacrâ.* — HOR.

*In Lemno uxorem ducit.* — TER.

*Obs.* 1. Oppidi nomen, in quo est aut fit aliquid, ponitur in Ablativo, modò sit vel tertiae Declinationis, vel pluralis Numeri : ut,

*Alexander Babylone mortuus est.* — CIC.

*Philippus Neapoli est, Lentulus Puteolis.* — CIC.

*Obs.* 2. Sed in Genitivo ponitur, si et Declinationis est primæ vel secundæ, et singularis Numeri : ut,

*Quid Romæ faciam ? mentiri nescio.* — JUV.

*Is habitat Miletii.* — TER.

§ 158. R. G. II.—Loci Nomen a Præpositione ferè regitur p̄st Verbum motūs: ut

*Profectus est in Galliam.*—CÆS.

*Ab Europâ petis Asiam.*—CURTIUS.

*Obs.* 1. Oppidi nomen, ad quod itur, in Accusativo sine Præpositione ferè ponitur: ut,

*Regulus Carthaginem rediit.*—CIC.

*Obs.* 2. Oppidi nomen, a quo itur, in Ablativo sine Præpositione ferè ponitur: ut,

*Demaratus fugit Corintho.*—CIC.

*Obs.* 3. Sed et Oppida sæpè capiunt, et alia Nomina omittunt, Præpositionem post Verba motūs: ut,

*A Brundisio nulla fama venerat.*—CIC.

*Pars Scythiam et rapidum Cretæ veniemus Oaren.*—VIRG.

§ 159. *Obs.* 4. *Humus, domus, et rus* oppidorum constructionem imitantur: ut,

*Cadmus spargit humi, mortalia semina, dentes.*—OV.

*Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi.*—CIC.

*Ite domum saturæ, venit Hesperus, ite capellæ.*—VIRG.

*Video rure redeuntem senem.*—TER.

§ 160. B. R. G. I.—Spatium Distantiæ frequentiùs in Accusativo, interdum in Ablativo ponitur: ut,

*Aberam ab Amano iter unius diei.*—CIC.

*Æsculapii templum quinque millibus passuum ab Epidauro distat.*—LIV.

R. G. II.—Spatium Progressionis in Accusativo ponitur: ut,

*Millia tum pransi tria repimus.*—HOR.

R. G. III.—Spatium Dimensionis frequentissimè in Accusativo, interdum in Ablativo, interdum in Genitivo ponitur: ut,

*Erant muri Babylonis ducentos pedes alti.*—PLIN.

*Longum sesquipedē, latum pede.*—PLIN.

*Areas latas pedum denūm facito.*—COLUMELLA.

## DE CONSTRUCTIONE VERBORUM IMPERSONALIUM.

§ 161 R. G. I.—*Libet, licet, liquet, et pleraque Impersonalia*, regunt Dativum: ut,

*Ne libeat tibi quod non licet.*—CIC.

*Sævis inter se convenit ursis.*—JUV.

R. G. II. — *Piget, pudet, pœnitet, tædet atque miseret*, regunt Accusativum Personæ, cum Genitivo Rei, vel cum Infinitivo: ut,

*Miseret te aliorum: tui te nec miseret, nec pudet.* — PLAUT.  
*Me civitatis morum piget tædetque.* — SALL.

*Eos partim scelerum, partim ineptiarum pœnitet.* — CIC.

*Quem pœnitet peccasse, pœnè est innocens.* — SEN.

R. G. III. — *Delectat, juvat, decet, dedecet*, impersonaliter posita. Accusativum cum Infinitivo postulant: ut,

*Oratorem irasci minimè decet.* — CIC.

*Me juvat in primâ coluisse Helicona juventâ.* — PROP.

R. G. IV. — *Oportet* vel Accusativum cum Infinitivo regit, vel Nominativum cum Subjunctivo, Conjunctione *ut* omissâ: ut,

*Legem brevem esse oportet.* — CIC.

*Me ipsum ames oportet, non mea.* — CIC.

R. G. V. — *Pertinet, attinet*, Præpositionem *ad* cum Accusativo sumunt: ut,

*Ad rempublicam pertinet, me conservari.* — CIC.

*Profundat, perdat, pereat, nihil ad me attinet.* — TER.

R. G. VI. — *Interest et rēfert* Genitivum admittunt: ut,

*Interest omnium rectè facere.* — CIC.

*Rēfert compositionis, quæ quibus anteponas.* — CIC.

Obs. 1. Cum his Verbis junguntur, loco Pronominum Personalium Ablativi feminini, *meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā*, subauditâ voce *re*: ut,

*Et tuā et meā interest te valere.* — CIC.

*Quid rēfert meā, cui serviam?* — PHÆDRUS.

Obs. 2. Adduntur his Verbis Genitivi Æstimationis, *tanti, quanti magni, parvi, pluris*: ut,

*Utriusque nostrū magni interest, ut te videam.* — CIC.

*Hoc non pluris rēfert, quād si imbrem in cibrum geras.* — PLAUT.

Not. 1. — Verba Neutra in Passivâ Voce impersonaliter usurpantur pro quibuslibet personis, Ablativo personæ cum Præpositione *ab* vel expresso vel intellecto: ut,

*Ab omnibus reclamatum est. (scil. omnes reclamārunt.)* — CIC.

*Quid agitur? statur. (scil. statur a nobis, sive stamus.)* — TER.

Not. 2. — *Cœpit, debet, desinit, potest, solet, incipit*, Infinitivis Impersonaliis præposita, ipsa fiunt Impersonalia: ut,

*Pigere eum facti cœpit.* — JUST.

*Perveniri ad summa, nisi ex principiis, non potest.* — QUINT.

## DE CONSTRUCTIONE VERBORUM PASSIVORUM.

§ 162. R. G. — Activa sententia ferè omnis ita in Passivam converti potest, ut Nominativus Activæ sententiæ fiat in Passivâ Ablativus Agentis.

A. Si Activæ sententiæ Verbum Accusativum habet propioris Objecti, Verbum in Passivâ personale erit, Accusativo Activæ in Nominativum Passivæ transeunte: ut,

Act. *Egregiè consul rem gessit.*

Pass. *Egregiè ab consule res gesta est.* — LIV.

B. Sin minus, Verbum Passivæ impersonale erit, et vel sine casu stabit, vel eundem casum reget, quem in Activâ regebat: ut,

Act. *Hostes constanter pugnabant.*

Pass. *Ab hostibus constanter pugnabatur.* — CÆS.

Act. *Medicinæ nos indigemus.* — CIC.

Pass. *Medicinæ a nobis indigetur.*

Act. *Mihi isti nocere non possunt.*

Pass. *Mihi ab istis noceri non potest.* — CIC.

Act. *Litibus et jurgiis supersedere vos æquum est.*

Pass. *Litibus et jurgiis supersederi a vobis æquum est.* — CIC.

*Obs.* Ubi nihil ambigi esse potest, supprimitur Ablativus Agentis post Impersonalia Passiva: ut,

*Itur in antiquam silvam.* — VIRG.

*Non potest jucundè vivi, nisi cum virtute vivatur.* — CIC.

*Not.* 1. — Hinc apparet, eosdem casus a Passivis Verbis regi, atque ab Activis, præterquam unum Accusativum propioris Objecti. Exempla pete suprà: B.

*Not.* 2. — *Vapulo, veneo, exulo, liceo, fio*, cum aliis quibusdam, vi Passivâ construuntur: ut,

*Testis ab reo fustibus vapulavit.* — QUINTILIANUS.

*Malo a civi spoliari, quam ab hoste vēnire.* — QUINT.

*Torqueor, infesto ne vir ab hoste cadat.* — OV

## DE CONSTRUCTIONE PARTICIPIORUM.

§ 163. R. G. — Participia, quæ Verbi Adjectiva sunt, cùm Substantivis attribuuntur, tum etiam regunt casus Verborum a quibus oriuntur, Activa Activorum, Deponentia Dependentium, Passiva Passivorum.

[*(Obs. 1.)* Participii Praeteriti usus in Verbis Passivis atque in Deponentibus accuratè distinguendus est: in Passivis enim Activè usurpari nunquam potest: in Deponentibus plerisque solum Activè usurpat: ex Deponentibus tamen Transitivis multa sunt, quorum Participia Praeterita tam Passivè quam Activè significant.

*(Obs. 2.) Cœnatus, pransus, fisus, juratus, et ausus, Gavisus, solitus, ceu Deponentia rectè Construimus, licet Activis orientia Verbis; His etiam exosus, pertæsus, et adde perosus.*

*(Obs. 3.)* Participium in *dus* Passivè semper significat.]

- ut, *Cernimus ire suis parentia finibus astra.* — MANILIUS.
- Virgo compositos ostentatura capillos.* — AUSONIUS.
- Nubiferi montes et saxa minantia calo.* — SILIUS.
- Nil oriturum alias, nil ortum tale fatemur.* — HOR.
- Duces functos virtute canemus.* — HOR.
- Ausi omnes immane nefas, ausoque potiti.* — VIRG.
- Omnia ei quæsita, meditata, evigilata erant.* — GELLIUS.
- Male parta male dilabuntur.* — CIC.
- Paridem solitus contendere contra.* — VIRG.
- Oculos exosa viriles.* — OV.
- Pueris sententias ediscendas damus.* — SEN.
- Vita data est utenda, datur sine fœnore nobis*
- Mutua, nec certo persoluenda die.* — OV.

---

## DE INFINITIVO SUBSTANTIVE POSITO, ET DE CONSTRUCTIONIBUS GERUNDIORUM, GERUNDIVI, ET SUPINORUM.

§ 164. Infinitivus cum Gerundiis et Supinis Substantivum Verbi efficit.

*R. G. I.* — Infinitivus Nominativi vel Accusativi loco sæpè ponitur: ut,

- Inridere non cadit in sapientem.* — CIC.
- Dulce et decorum est pro patriâ mori.* — HOR.
- Velle suum cuique est.* — PERS.
- Mori nemo sapiens miserum dixerit.* — CIC.
- Multum interest inter dare et accipere.* — SEN.

§ 165. *R. G. II.* — Gerundia pro casibus Infinitivi ponuntur, et ipsa regunt casus suorum Verborum; sed sine casu frequentiū apparent.

**A.** Pro Accusativo Infinitivi ponitur Gerundium in *dum* post Præpositiones *ad, inter*; rariūs post *ob, in, ante*: ut,  
*Breve tempus satis est longum ad bene vivendum.* — CIC.  
*Mores puerorum se inter ludendum detegunt.* — QUINT.

**B.** Pro Genitivo Infinitivi ponitur Gerundium in *di* post Adjectiva Genitivum regentia, et post multa Substantiva: ut,  
*Epaminondas studiosus erat audiendi.* — NEP.  
*Cupidus sum satisfaciendi reipublicæ.* — CIC.  
*Thucydides omnes dicendi artificio vincit.* — CIC.  
*Scribendi rectè sapere est et principium et fons.* — HOR.

**C.** Pro Dative Infinitivi ponitur Gerundium in *do* post Adjectiva Commodi et Congruentiæ, item post Verba nonnulla: ut,  
*Crassus disserendo par esse non potuit.* — CIC.  
*Epidicum operam quærendo dabo.* — PLAUT.

**D.** Pro Ablativo Infinitivi ponitur Gerundium in *do* Causam, Instrumentum, aut Modum significans, vel cum Præpositionibus *ab, de, ex, in, cum*: ut,  
*Nihil agendo homines male facere discunt.* — COLUM.  
*P. Scipio Latinè loquendo cuivis erat par.* — CIC.  
*Jovem a juvando nominamus.* — CIC.  
*Multa de bene beatèque vivendo a Platone disputata sunt.* — CIC.

§ 166. *Not.* — Gerundia Activè significant: si verò Transitiva sunt, eorum constructio Passivè repræsentari potest, imò frequentiūs repræsentatur, per Participium in *dus*, quod inde Gerundivū nomen accipit.

**R. G. III.** — Gerundiva constructio ejusmodi est, ut Substantivum in Gerundii casum trahatur, cum quo concordet Gerundivum: ut,  
*E terrâ ignem elicimus ad colendos agros.* — CIC.  
*Occasio videbatur rerum novandarum.* — LIV.  
*M. Antonius fuit triumvir reipublicæ constituendæ.* — NEP.  
*Exercenda est memoria ediscendis veterum scriptis.* — CIC.  
*Brutus in liberandâ patriâ est interfectus.* — CIC.

§ 167. **R. G. IV.** — Ad Necessitatem Passivè significandam Gerundivum in Neutro Genere impersonaliter adhibetur ita, ut, cum Dative vel Ablativo Agentis, sive expresso sive intellecto, sui etiam Verbi constructiōnem habeat: ut,  
*Suo cuique judicio utendum est.* — CIC.  
*Civium bonis est a vobis consulendum.* — CIC.  
*Orandum est ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.* — JUV.  
*Eudoxus opinatur, Chaldæis minimè esse credendum.* — CIC.

*Obs.* In Verbis Transitivis rarer est Impersonalis **constructio**, **est** tamen ubi obviām fit: ut,

*Æternas quoniam pœnas in morte timendum.* — **LUCR.**

Gerundivum enim ipsum, Adjectivè positum, suâpte vi Necessitatem exprimit: ut,

*Deus et diligendus est et timendus.* — **TERTULLIANUS.**

*Agnoscenda et amplectenda sunt beneficia divina.* — **S. CYPRIANUS.**

**§ 168. R. G. V.** — Supinum in *um*, vi Activâ præditum, sui Verbi casum regit; postponitur autem, ut Accusativus, Verbis motum significantibus, ad Actionis finem indicandam: ut,

*Ast ego non Graiis servitum matribus ibo.* — **VIRG.**

*Coriolanus in Volscos exsulatum abiit.* — **LIV.**

*Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsæ.* — **Ov.**

*Scitatum oracula Phæbi mittimus.* — **VIRG.**

*Obs.* Ex Supino in *um* et Impersonali Infinitivo *iri* conficitur Futurum Infinitivi Passivi: ut,

*Audierat non datum iri filio suo uxorem.* — **TER.**

**R. G. VI.** — Supinum in *u*, vi Passivâ præditum, postponitur, ut Ablativus Respectūs, tum multis Adjectivis, tum Substantivis *fas*, *nefas*, *opus*: ut,

*Nil dictu fœdum visuque hæc limina tangat*

*Intra quæ puer est.* — **JUV.**

*Ecce (nefas visu) serpens altaribus exit.* — **Ov.**

**Not.** — Supina formam habent Substantivorum Quartæ Declinationis

## DE ADJECTIVORUM USU.

**§ 169. (a)** *Primus et extremus, postremus et ultimus, imus.*

*Intimus et medius, sic summus et infimus, atque*

*Ceterus et reliquus, partitivè attribuuntur:*

ut, *Primâ luce summus mons a Labieno tenebatur.* — **CÆS.**

**(b)** Neutra Adjectiva utriusque Numeri ponuntur interdum Adverbialiter, præsertim apud poetas: ut,

*Serviet æternum, qui parvo nesciet uti.* — **HOR.**

*Asper, acerba tuens, retrò redit.* — **VIRG.**

**(c)** Adjectivum sæpè ita attribuitur, ut Anglicè per Adverbium reddi necesse sit:

*Tum tu insiste audax muris.* — **LIV.**

*Castris se pavidus tenebat.* — **LIV.**

§ 170. Superlativum ita usurpatur, ut non modò altissimum omnium gradum, sed etiam präaltum quemcunque designet: ut,  
*Ego sum miserior quam tu, quæ es miserrima.* — CIC.

*Obs.* Pronomen *quisque* Superlativo distribuendo adhibetur: ut,  
*Epicureos doctissimus quisque contemnit.* — CIC.  
*Maximæ cuique fortunæ minimè credendum est.* — LIV.

---

## DE NUMERALIUM USU.

§ 171. A. Cardinalia.

(a) *Unus* non, nisi cum Emphasi, ponitur: ut,  
*Matronæ annum, ut parentem, Brutum luxerunt.* — LIV.  
*Amicitiae vis est in eo, ut unus quasi onimus fiat ex pluribus.* — CIC.

*Obs.* *Unus* sæpè vim habet Superlativam, sæpè Superlativo rum vim auget: ut,

*Demosthenes unus eminet inter omnes oratores.* — CIC  
*P. Nigidius, unus omnium doctissimus.* — CIC.

(b) *Mille* nunc Substantive, nunc Adjectivè, usurpatur *millia* Substantivè tantùm: ut,

*Amplius mille hominum cecidit.* — NEP.

*Mille greges illi.* — OV.

*Quattuor millia hominum Capitolium occupavere.* — LIV

B. Ordinalia in Temporum Rationibus usurpantur: ut,

*Plato uno et octogesimo anno scribens mortuus est.* — CIC.  
*Octavus annus est ex quo Britanniam vicistis.* — TAC.

*Obs.* 1. Ad Ordinalia distribuenda usurpatur *quisque*: ut,  
*Quinto quoque anno Sicilia tota censemur.* — CIC.

*Obs.* 2. *Alter* nunc ut *secundus* nunc ut *unus e duobus* ponitur: ut,  
*Alter ab undecimo tum me jam ceperat annus.* — VIRG  
*Quidquid negat alter, et alter.* — HOR.

C. Distributiva efficiunt ut, quod fiat, cuique e pluribus, vel a quoque, vel quoque tempore factum esse appareat: ut,  
*Militibus quini viceni denarii dati sunt.* — LIV.  
*Verberibus mulcant, sexageni singulos.* — TAC.  
*Ursæ pariunt plurimum quinos.* — PLIN.

§ 172. D. (a) As Romanus, sive Libra, antiquissimis temporibus æneus erat: unde Genitivus *aeris* ellipticè ponitur aliquando, *Assibus* omissis: ut,

*Millibus aeris quinquaginta census est.* — LIV

(b) Nummus Romanus, qui antiquissimè binos Asses cum Semisse continebat, hinc *Sestertius* (semis-tertius) vocatus, Signum habebat HS, corruptum ex IIS (2½): ut,  
*Tiberius populo trecenos nummos viritim dedit.* — SUET.  
*Pretium constitutum est in singulos modios HS terni.* — CIC.

(c) *Sestertium* continebat mille *Sestertios*, et ipsum interdum Siglo HS designatur: ut,

*Ducena sestertia singulis dedit.* — TAC.

*Candidati HS quingenia deposuerunt.* — CIC.

*Obs.* Adverbia Numeralia, *decies* et quæ majora sunt, ubi numeri in *Sestertiorum* definiunt, suppleri sibi volunt *centena millia*: ut,  
*Vicies HS (Sestertii, Sestertiūm), id est, 2,000,000 Nummūm.*  
*Ter et quadragies HS - - - 4,300,000 Nummūm.*

---

## DE PRONOMINUM USU.

### § 173. A. Personalia et Possessiva.

(a) Pronomina Pluralia, *nos*, *noster*, pro Singularibus *ego*, *meus*, sæpè ponuntur: ut,  
*Nōris nos, inquit, docti sumus.* — HOR.  
*Ad nostra me studia referam literarum.* — CIC.

(b) *Sui* et *suus* Reflexiva sunt, et referuntur ad Subiectum tertiae Personæ: ut,  
*Senatui populus moderandi sui potestatem tradidit.* — CIC.  
*Themistocles domicilium Magnesiæ sibi constituit.* — NEP.  
*Sentit animus se vi suā, non alienā, moveri.* — CIC.  
*Homerum Colophonii civem esse dicunt suum.* — CIC.

*Obs.* 1. Referri possunt Reflexiva ad Objectum, si ipsa Subjecto appendent, si Subjectum primæ est aut secundæ Personæ, si denique nullus ambiguitati locus est; quod ubi fit, Objecto plerumque postponitur Reflexivum: ut,

*Scipionem impellit ostentatio sui.* — CÆS.

*Cæsarem sua natura mitiorem facit.* — CIC

*Apibus fructum restituo suum.* — PHÆD.

*Suis flammis delete Fidenas.* — LIV.

*Multa sunt civibus inter se communia.* — CIC.

(*Obs.*) Sed Pronominis *quisque* casibus Reflexivum præponitur: ut,  
*Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam.* — NEP.

*Longiùs aut propriùs mors sua quemque manet.* — PROPERT.

*Obs.* 2. Referuntur etiam Reflexiva ad Personam indefinitam: ut,  
*Subsequitur cæcus Amor sui.* — HOR.  
*Deforme est de se prædicare.* — CIC.  
*Difficile est sua virtus nōesse.* — CIC.

*Obs. 3.* Ubi Reflexivo non est locus, usurpatur Demonstrativum, præsertim *is*: ut,

*Aranti Quintio nuntiatum est eum dictatorem factum* — CIC.  
*Condiunt Ægyptii mortuos et eos domi servant.* — CIC.  
*Chilius te rogat, et ego ejus rogatu.* — CIC.

*Obs. 4.* Pro Reflexivi casibus, si in his futura est ambiguitas, Pronominis *ipse* casus obliqui ponuntur: ut,

*Cæsar milites incusavit, cur de suâ virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent.* — CÆS.

**§ 174. B. (a)** Pronomina Demonstrativa ita ferè distinguenda sunt *is* est de quo mentio facta est; *hic* mihi propior; *iste* alteri propior: *ille* qui ab utroque remotus est.

*Obs. 1.* *Iste* cum contemptu quodam sæpè dicitur: ut,  
*Quid sibi isti miseri volunt?* — CIC.

*Errare malo cum Platone, quam cum istis vera sentire.* — CIC.

*Obs. 2.* *Ille* famam aut dignitatem nonnunquam innuit: ut,  
*Veneramini illum Jovem, custodem hujus urbis.* — CIC.

*Obs. 3.* Cum *hic* et *ille* ad duo anteposita respiciunt, *hic* refertur ad id quod vel posterius in sententiâ, vel prius est in animo narrantis; *ille* ad id quod vel prius in sententiâ, vel posterius est in animo narrantis: ut,

*Idem et docenti et discenti propositum esse debet, ut ille prodesses velit, hic proficeret.* — SEN.

*Melior est certa pax quam sperata victoria; haec in tuâ, illa in deorum manu est.* — LIV.

**§ 175. (b)** *Ipse* est omnium Personarum, et vim auget cum Substantivorum, tum Pronominum, quibus apponi solet: ut,

*Ipse Pater dextrâ molitur fulmina.* — VIRG.

*Tardè nosmet ipsos cognoscimus.* — CIC.

*Sibi ipsa improbitas cogit fieri injuriam.* — SYRUS.

*Me ipse consolor.* (Id est, *nemo aliis me consolatur verum ego*; ubi emphasis est in Subjecto.) — CIC.

*Me ipsum consolor.* (Id est, *neminem alium ego consolor rerum me*; ubi emphasis est in Objecto.)

*Obs. 1.* *Ipse* pro ultrò vel sponte suâ ponitur aliquando: ut,  
*Ipsæ veniunt ad mulctra capellæ.* — VIRG.

*Obs. 2.* *Ipse* præstantissimam Personam interdum significat: ut,  
*Pythagorei respondere solebunt; Ipse dixit* (scil. Pythagoras). — CIC.

*Obs. 3.* *Ipse* tempori exactè definiendo adhibetur: ut,  
*Athenis decem ipsos dies fui.* — CIC.  
*Nunc ipsum sine te esse non possum.* — CIC.

**C.** Pronomina Interrogativa sunt *quis*, *quisnam*, substantivè usurpata; *qui*, *quinam*, adjectivè: ut,

*Quid præclarum non idem arduum?* — CIC.

*O qui tuarum, corve, pennarum est nitor?* — PHÆD.

*Quæ fuerit in republicâ tempestas quis nescit?* — CIC.

§ 176. D. Indefinita, *quis* et *qui*, sequuntur plerumque Particulas quales sunt *ne*, *si*, *sive*, *nisi*, *qui*, *quò*, *quam*, *quum*, *unde*, *ubi*, *ut*, *an*, *num*. *Aliquis* et *aliqui* ponuntur vel sine Particulis, vel cum Particulis, sensu minus indefinito quam *quis* et *qui*; ut significetur is, quem existere credimus, sed nondum novimus: ut,

*Oppida cœperunt munire et ponere leges,  
Ne quis fur esset, neu latro, neu quis adulter.* — HOR  
*Si mala condiderit in quem quis carmina, jus est.* — HOR  
*Semper aliqui anquirendi sunt quos diligamus.* — CIC.  
*Si superstest aliquis post funera sensus.* — OV.

§ 177. Obs. 1. *Aliquis* interdum pro *eximio* ponitur: ut.

*Sese aliquem credit.* — PERS.

Obs. 2. *Quidam* definitius est quam *aliquis*; ut significetur is, quem novimus quidem, sed non nominamus: ut,

*Accurrit quidam, notus mihi nomine tantum.* — HOR.

(Obs.) Hinc cum contemptu ponitur aliquando: ut,

*Habitan hic quædam mulieres pauperculæ.* — TER

## DE CONJUNCTIONIBUS SOCIATIVIS ET DISSOCIATIVIS.

§ 178. Conjunctiones Sociativæ et Dissociativæ similes Casus, Modos, et Tempora connectunt: ut,

*Miratur portas, strepitumque, et strata viarum.* — VIRG.

*Virtus nec eripi nec surripi potest.* — CIC.

*Amicitia conveniens est ad res vel secundas vel adversas.* — CIC.

Nisi alia Constructionis ratio intercedat: ut,

*Pompeius Dyrrachii, Apolloniæ, omnibusque oppidis maritimis hiemare constituit.* — CÆS.

Obs. 1. Conjunctiones Sociativæ per Asyndeton omittuntur: ut,

*Ex cupiditatibus odia, dissidia, seditiones, bella nascuntur.* — CIC.

Obs. 2. Comparationi inserviunt *ac*, *atque*, interdum *et*, *que*, *ut*, post Adjectiva vel Adverbia Similitudinis et Dissimilitudinis:

*Par, dispar, aliis, similis, diversus, et idem,  
Proinde, perinde, pro eo, contra, contrarius, æquè,  
Quies aliter, pariter, juxta. secus adde, simulque :*

ut, *Dissimilatio est, quum alia dicuntur ac sentias.* — CIC.

*Obitum filiæ tuae pro eo ac debui graviter tuli.* — CIC.

*Omnia ferè contra ac dicta sunt evenére.* — CIC.

*Pro civium salute æquè ac pro meâ laboravi.* — CIC.

*Simul atque natum animal est, gaudet voluptate.* — CIC.

## DE VERBI TEMPORIBUS ET MODIS.

§ 179. I. Omnis Actio in Tempore ponitur, vel Præsentis, vel Præteriti, vel Futuri: ita verò, ut vel alterā temporali relatione careat, vel habeat alteram relationem temporalem.

A. Tempora Verbalia, quæ alterā temporali relatione carent (Aorista, Indefinita, sive Absoluta), sunt:

- a. Præsens Aoristum, *scribo*, Anglicè *I write*.
- b. Præteritum Aoristum, *scripti*, — *I wrote*.
- c. Futurum Aoristum, *scribam*, — *I shall write*.

B. Tempora Verbalia, quæ habent alteram relationem temporalem (Relativa) sunt:

|                                 |   |                                                                          |
|---------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (a) Præsens<br>cum Relatione    | { | (1) Præsenti, <i>scribo</i> ,      Anglicè <i>I am writing</i> .         |
|                                 |   | (2) Præteritâ, <i>scripti</i> , — <i>I have written</i> .                |
|                                 |   | (3) Futurâ, <i>scripturus sum</i> , — <i>I am about to write</i> .       |
| (b) Præteritum<br>cum Relatione | { | (1) Præsenti, <i>scribem</i> , — <i>I was writing</i> .                  |
|                                 |   | (2) Præteritâ, <i>scripteram</i> , — <i>I had written</i> .              |
|                                 |   | (3) Futurâ, <i>scripturus fui</i> , — <i>I was about to write</i> .      |
| (c) Futurum<br>cum Relatione    | { | (1) Præsenti, <i>scribam</i> , — <i>I shall be writing</i> .             |
|                                 |   | (2) Præteritâ, <i>scriptero</i> , — <i>I shall have written</i> .        |
|                                 |   | (3) Futurâ, <i>scripturus ero</i> , — <i>I shall be about to write</i> . |

*Obs.* 1. Temporum Passivorum similis est ratio.

*Obs.* 2. Tempus historicum in primis est Præteritum Aoristum. Multus autem in historia usus est Præteritorum Relativorum (b). Præsens etiam historicè usurpatur, ut legentium oculis quasi pingatur actio: ut,

*Dimiso senatu, decemviri prodeunt in concionem, abdicantque se magistratu, ingenti hominum lætitia. — LIV.*

*Obs.* 3. In epistolis Romani Præterito ferè utebantur, ubi nos Præsenti utimur: ut,

*Res, quum hæc scribem, erat in summo discrimine. — CIC.*

*Obs.* 4. Perfectum eleganter exprimit quæ citò vel more fiunt: ut,

*Terra tremit: fugere feræ. — VIRG.*

*Qui studet optatam cursu contingere metam*

*Multa tulit fecitque puer. — HOR.*

## II. Ex Modis,

A. Indicativus enuntiat absolutè.

B. Imperativus imperat vel hortatur.

*Obs.* 1. Ne prohibitiva Imperativo vel Subjunctivo jungitur: ut,

*Ne qua meis esto dictis mora. — VIRG.*

*Ne conferas culpam in me. — TER.*

*Obs.* 2. Pro Imperativo eleganter ponitur Futurum Simplex: ut.

*Non verbum verbo curabis reddere.* — HOR.

*Si quid acciderit novi, facies ut sciam.* — CIC.

C. Conjunctioni triplex usus est.

(a) Potentialis; qui speciem habet vel conditionalem, vel permissivam, vel dubitativam: ut,

*Id arbitror apprimè in vitâ esse utile, ut ne quid nimis:*

*Ita sine invidiâ laudem invenias, et amicos pares.* — TER.

*Si sine pace tuâ atque invito numine Troes*

*Italianam petiere, luant peccata, neque illos*

*Juveris auxilio.* — VIRG.

*Eloquar an sileam?* — OV.

*Obs.* 1. Peculiaris usus est Perfecti Potentialis, ut affirmet, neget, aut vetet cum urbanitate et moderatione quâdam: ut,

*Bruti judicium, puce tuâ dixerim, longè antepono tuo.* — CIC.

*Nil ego contulerim jucundo sanus amico.* — HOR.

*Obs.* 2. Eleganter usurpari solet Futurum Perfectum pro Simpli*ci*Futuro: ut,

*Ah, si pergis, abiero.* — TER.

*Hoc mihi gratissimum feceris.* — CIC.

(b) Optativus; vel sine Particula, vel post Particulas *ne*, *utinam*, *O si, si, ut pro utinam*: ut,

*Valeant cives mei, sint incolumes, sint beati!* — CIC.

*Ita vivam ut maximos sumptus fucio!* — CIC.

*Ne sim salvis si aliter scribo ac sentio!* — CIC.

*Utinam minus vitæ cupidit fuisset ausus.* — CIC.

*O mihi præteritos referat si Jupiter annos!* — VIRG.

*Ut illum dii deæquac perdant!* — TER.

(c) Subjunctivus propriè dictus, quia Verbis et Particulis subjugitur.

D. Superiùs dictum est (§ 164.) Infinitivum quasi Substantivum Verbi esse, quod vel subjectivè vel objectivè stare posset. Jam verò Simplex Infinitivus

(a) Subjectivè jungitur Verbis Impersonalibus: ut,

*Juvat ire sub umbras.* — VIRG.

*Non cuivis honini contingit adire Corinthum.* — HOR.

*Liber semper discere.* — CIC.

(b) Objectivè sequitur multa Verba, et in primis

(1) Verba Voluntatis, *volo, nolo, malo, aveo, cupio, &c.*

(2) Verba Potentiæ, Officii, et Consuetudinis, *possum, quo, nequeo, debeo, soleo, consuesco, &c.*

(3) Verba Actionis incipiendæ, continuandæ, vel depoñendæ, *cæpi*, *meditor*, *statuo*, *disco*, *dœceo*, *conor*, *pergo*, *desino*, &c., ut,

*Solent diu cogitare qui magna volunt gerere.* — CIC.  
*Miserè cupis, inquit, abire.* — HOR.

*Socrates parens philosophiaæ jure dici potest.* — CIC.  
*Intueri solem adversum nequimus.* — CIC.

*Suos quisque debet tueri.* — CIC.

*Gallinas saginare Deliaci cœpere.* — PLIN.

*Statui res gestas Romanorum perscribere.* — SALL.

*Scipiones Saguntum pergunt ire.* — LIV.

*Venæ et arteriæ micare non desinunt.* — CIC.

*Quid sit futurum cras, fuge quærere.* — HOR.

(4) Prædicativè sequitur Verba Passiva multa, quibus in Activâ subjungitur Accusativus cum Infinitivo, *videor*, *credor*, *putor*, *existimor*, *dicor*, *feror*, *narror*, *traditor*, *memoror*, &c.: ut,

*Videor pios errare per lucos.* — HOR.

*Verus patriæ diceris esse pater.* — MART.

*Aristides unus omnium justissimus fuisse traditur.* — CIC.

*Obs. 1* Post Adjectiva vel Poeticus est Infinitivus, vel Argenteæ, quam vocant, *Ætatis*: ut,

*Et cantare pares et respondere parati.* — VIRG.

*Cereus in vitium flecti, monitoribus asper.* — HOR.

*Agricola fuit peritus obsequi.* — TAC.

*Obs. 2.* Futuri Infinitivi, cum Activi, tum Passivi, circumlocutio sæpè fit per *fore ut*, *futurum esse ut*, cum Subjunctivo: ut,

*Spero fore ut in cælum migremus.* — CIC.

*Dixit futurum esse ut balnea incalescecent.* — TAC.

*Pompeius dixerat, fore uti exercitus Cæsaris pelleretur.* — CÆS.

*Obs. 3.* Infinitivus Historicus locum habet in gravi narratione: ut,

*Tum verò ingenti sono cælum strepere, et inter horrendos fragores micare ignes.* — LIV.

*Obs. 4.* Pro Infinitivo Præsentis eleganter usurpatur Infinitivus Perfecti; ut,

*Commisisse cave quæ mox mutare labores.* — HOR.

*Quiescere erit melius.* — LIV.

## PARS II.

## DE COMPOSITA SENTENTIA.

## § 180. PREFATORY EXCURSION.

I. *Oratio Recta* means any statement, command, or question directly put.

*Oratio Obliqua* means any statement, command, or question indirectly put, depending on some verb which stands in *Oratio Recta*.

Thus, *Valeo*, *An valeat?* *Vale*, are *Oratio Recta*: while *Scin' me valere?* *Nescio an valeat*, *Cura ut valeas*, contain *Oratio Obliqua*; *me valere* depending on the *Oratio Recta scin'*; *an valeat* on *nescio*; *ut valeas* on *cura*.

II. A Compound Sentence consists of two or more Simple Sentences connected together; of which one is the Principal, the others either (A) Coordinate, or (B) Subordinate.

A. A Coordinate Sentence is one which does not depend in construction upon the Principal Sentence. Coordinate Sentences are introduced by such particles as *et*, *que*, *nec*; *aut*, *vel*; *sed*, *autem*; *nam*, *enim*; *igitur*, *itaque*; *deinde*, *denique*; &c.: as, *Gyges a nullo videbatur*; *quod se autem omnia videbat*. — CIC.

B. A Subordinate Sentence is one which depends in construction on the Principal Sentence. Subordinate Sentences are of three kinds.—

(1) Substantival : (2) Adverbial : (3) Adjectival.

(a) A Substantival Sentence is one which stands, like a Substantive, as Subject, Object, or in Apposition. Substantival Sentences belong to *Oratio Obliqua*, and are of three kinds: (a) Oblique Enuntiation: (b) Oblique Petition: (c) Oblique Interrogation.

(a) The Oblique, or Indirect Enuntiation, is formed generally by the Accusative with Infinitive Mood, sometimes by *ut* with Subjunctive, or *quod* with Indicative or Subjunctive Mood. Thus, *Amicitia, nisi inter bonos, esse non potest*, is a Direct Enuntiation: whilst *Verum est, amicitiam, nisi inter bonos, esse non posse*, is a Compound Sentence, containing the Direct Enunciation, *Verum est*, and the Oblique Enunciation, *amicitiam, nisi inter bonos, esse non posse*; which is Substantival, being the Subject of the Verb *est*, and having *verum* for its Predicate. So, *Invidia gloriae comes est*, is a Direct Enunciation; but *Est hoc commune vitium, ut invidia gloriae comes sit*, is a Compound Sentence, containing the Oblique Enuntiation, *ut invidia gloriae comes sit*, in Apposition to *hoc*, the Subject of *est*, of which *commune vitium* is the Predicate. Again, *Calet ignis* is a Direct Enuntiation: *Sentimus culere ignem* a Compound Sentence, having the Direct Enuntiation *sentimus*, and the Oblique, *culere ignem*, which is the Object of *sentimus*.

(b) The Oblique Petition is formed by the Subjunctive Mood, with

or without the Conjunction *ut* or *ne*, or by the Infinitive; following Verbs of *desire*, *command*, *endeavour*, &c. Thus *Mane in sententiâ* is a Direct Petition, which may be expressed in a Compound Sentence by *Oro ut maneas in sententiâ*, *Oro maneas in sententiâ*, or *Oro te manere in sententiâ*.

(e) The Oblique Interrogation is formed by dependent Interrogatives, whether Pronouns or Particles, governing a Subjunctive Mood. Thus *Quis est?* is a Direct Interrogation: but *Nescio quis sit, incertum est quis sit*, are Compound Sentences, containing the Oblique Interrogation, *quis sit*, which is the Object of *nescio*, and the Subject of *est*.

(2) An Adverbial Sentence is one which qualifies the Principal Sentence like an Adverb, answering the questions, *how*, *why*, *when*, &c. Adverbial Sentences are formed by Conjunctions, and are: (a) Consecutive (*so that*); (b) Final (*in order that*); (c) Causal (*because since*); (d) Temporal (*when, while, until, &c.*); (e) Conditional (*if, unless*); (f) Concessive (*although, whereas*); (g) Comparative (*as if, as though, &c.*).

(3) An Adjectival Sentence is one which qualifies the Principal Sentence like an Adjective or Epithet. It is formed by the Relative Pronoun *qui*, or by a Relative Particle.

The Relative Pronoun *qui quæ quod* (with its Particles) has great influence in Latin Construction. It is of all persons, and may be used compendiously as a substitute for the union of a Conjunction with a Personal Pronoun. Hence it forms Coordinate Sentences when used for *et ego, et tu, et is, &c.*; for *ego autem, tu autem, is autem, &c.*; for *ego igitur, tu igitur, is igitur, &c.*; for *ego enim, tu enim, is enim, &c.* And it forms Subordinate Sentences when used for *ut ego, ut tu, ut is, &c.*; for *quia ego, quia tu, quia is, &c.*; for *si ego, si tu, si is, &c.*; for *etsi ego, etsi tu, etsi is, &c.*

**Note.** — It is to be observed that Subordinate Sentences may have others subordinate to them, in relation to which they are therefore principal clauses. From what has been said of Substantival Sentences, it appears that such principal clauses of *Oratio Obliqua* are, mostly, either in the Infinitive or in the Subjunctive Mood. Its subordinate clauses generally take the Subjunctive; as may be seen in the subjoined example: —

**Oratio Recta.** — *Ars earum rerum est, quæ sciuntur; oratoris autem omnis actio opinioribus, non scientiâ continetur: nam et apud eos dicimus, qui nesciunt, et ei dicimus, quæ nescimus ipsis.* — Cic.

**Oratio Obliqua.** — (*Antonius apud Ciceronem docet:*) *Artem earum rerum esse, quæ sciantur; oratoris autem omnem actionem opinione, non scientiâ, contineri: quia et apud eos dicat, qui nesciant, et ipse dicat, quod nesciat.* — QUINT.

**Oratio Recta** may be virtually oblique, when it contains the statement of an opinion or thought. Thus, the sentence, *Themistocles noctu ambulabat, quod somnum capere non posset*, implies that Themistocles alleged inability to sleep as the reason *why* he walked by night

## DE SENTENTIIS SUBSTANTIVALIBUS.

## § 181 (A) Enuntiatio Obliqua.

*R. G.* — Infinitivus cum Accusativo sui Subjecti

(a) Subjectivè jungitur Copulæ *est* et Verbis Impersonalibus: *ut*,  
*Fucinus est vinciri civem Romanum.* — Cic.

*Omnibus bonis expedit salvam esse rempublicam.* — Cic.  
*Constat leges ad salutem civium inventas esse.* — Cic.

(b) Objectivè jungitur multis Verbis, in quibus inest *sentiendi* aut *declarandi* vis: *ut*,

*Pompeios desedisse terræ motu audivimus.* — Sen.

*Xenophanes ait lunam habitari.* — Cic.

(c) Appositionem facit aliquando: *ut*,

*Illud temerè dictum, sapientes omnes esse bonos.* — Cic.

*Obs. 1.* Pro hoc Infinitivo sæpè ponitur *ut* cum Subjunctivo: *ut*

*Reliquum est ut officiis certemus inter nos.* — Cic.

*Expedit ut civitates sua jura habeant.* — Just.

*Illud meā refert, te ut videam.* — Cic.

Sæpè quòd cum Indicativo, ni poscatur Subjunctivus: *ut*,

*Gratum est quòd patriæ civem populoque dedisti.* — Juv.

*Hoc præstamus maxime feris, quòd loquimur.* — Cic.

*Mitto quòd omnes meas tempestates subieris.* — Cic.

(Obs.) Oportet et *necesse est*, Subjunctivum regentia, *ut* omittunt *ut*,

*Philosophiae servias oportet, ut liber sis.* — Cic.

*Virtus voluptatis aditus intercludat necesse est.* — Cic.

*Obs. 2.* *Sperandi* et *pollicendi* Verba malunt Infinitivum Futuri: *ut*,

*Sperabam id me asscuturum.* — Cic.

*Pollicebatur pecuniam se esse redditurum.* — Cic.

*Obs. 3.* Post *metuendi* formulas regunt Subjunctivum *ne* et *ut pre ne non*: *ut*,

*Verendum est ne fames in urbe sit.* — Cic.

*O puer, ut sis vitalis metuo.* — Hor.

*Obs. 4.* Indignationem notat Infinitivus Interrogans: *ut*,

*Mene incepto desistere victimam?* — Virg.

Vel ejus vice *ut* cum Subjunctivo: *ut*,

*Te ut ulla res frangat?* — Cic.

## § 182. (B) Petitio Obliqua.

*R. G.* — *Optandi, rogandi, hortandi, imperandi, permitendi, curandi, enitendi, efficiendi, similibusque formulis additur Subjunctivus cum Conjunctionibus *ut*, *ne*, vel omissâ aliquando Conjunctione:*

(a) Subjectivè: *ut*,

*Postulatur ab amico ut sit sincerus.* — Cic.

*Cavendum est ne assentatori patefasias aures.* — Cic.

*Hæc omnia prætermittas licet.* — Cic.

(b) Objectivè : ut,

*Immortalia ne spores monet annus.* — HOR.

*Potes efficere ut malè moriar, ne moriar non potes.* — PLIN  
*Sine te exorem, mi pater.* — TER.

(c) Per Appositionem : ut,

*Hoc te rogo, ne demittas animum.* — CIC.

*Vetus est lex illa, ut idem amici velint.* — CIC.

Obs. Post multa ex his Verbis æquè placet Infinitiva constructio: ut.

*Pompeius rem ad arma deduci studebat.* — CÆS.

*Jubet nos Pythius Apollo noscere nosmet ipsos.* — CIC.

### § 183. (C) Interrogatio Obliqua.

R. G.— Pronominibus et Particulis interrogandi, subordinate positis, Subjunctivus additur:

(a) Subjectivè : ut,

*In beneficio videndum est, quando et cui et quemadmodum et quare demus.* — CIC.

(b) Objective : ut,

*Tu quotus esse velis rescribe.* — HOR.

*Quis est, quin cernat, quanta vis sit in sensibus?* — CIC.

(c) Per Appositionem : ut,

*Ipse quis sit, utrum sit, an non sit, id quoque nescit.*

CATULL.

Not. — Talia sunt :

*Quis, quantus, qualis, qui, quot, quotus, unde, ubi, quando, quām, quamobrem, quare, cur, quomodō, num, nē, ut, an, utrum.*

## DE SENTENTIIS ADVERBIALIBUS.

### § 184. (A) Consecutivæ Sententiæ.

R. G.— *Ut, ut non, ut nihil, ut nullus, ut nemo*, consecutivæ sensu, Subjunctivum postulant.

(a) Post Demonstrativa *sic, ita, eo, tam, adeo, tot, tantus, tamen, is, hic, huc* : ut,

*Quis tam demens est ut suâ voluntate mæreat?* — CIC.

*Titus ita facilis fuit ut nulli quidquam negaret.* — EUTR.

*Tantus terror fuit ut egredi nemo sit ausus.* — NEP.

*Decoris vis ea est ut ab honesto non queat separari.* — CIC.

(b) Suppresso Demonstrativo : ut,

*Arboribus consita Italia est, ut tota pomarium videatur.*  
— VARRO.

(c) Post Comparativum et *quām* : ut,

*Iocrates majore ingenio est quām ut cum Lysia comparetur.* — CIC.

*Obs.* *Tantum abest duas sententias sibi subordinatas habet, primam Substantivalem, alteram Adverbialem : ut,*

*Tantum abest ut nostra miremur, ut nobis non satisfaciat ipse Demosthenes. — Cic.*

### § 185. (B) Finales Sententiae.

*R. G.* — *Ut, ne, ut ne, finali sensu, Subjunctivum postulant : ut,*

*Ut jugulent homines, surgunt de nocte latrones. — Juv.*

*Legum idcirco servi sumus, ut liberi esse possimus. — Cic.*

*Ne vana urbis magnitudo sit, Romulus asylum aperit. — Liv.*

*Scipio rus abiit, ne ad causam dicendam adesset. — Cic.*

*Exercenda est animadversio ut ne quid temere agamus.*  
— Cic.

### § 186. (C) Causales Sententiae.

*R. G. I.* — *Quum, causali sensu, Subjunctivum plerūmque regit ; sed interdum Indicativum : ut,*

*Quæ quum ita sint, in alia omnia abeo. — Cic.*

*Quum in Matii familiaritatem venisti, gaudeo. — Cic.*

*R. G. II.* — *Quòd, quando, quia, quandoquidem, quoniam, siquidemque, causali sensu, Indicativo gaudent, nisi opus sit Subjunctivo : ut,*

*Adsunt propterea quòd officium sequuntur. — Cic*

*Tacent, quia periculum metuunt. — Cic.*

*Dicite, quandoquidem in molli consedimus herbâ. — Virg.*

*Quoniam jam nox est, discedite. — Liv.*

### § 187. (D) Temporales Sententiae.

*R. G. I.* — *Quum, quando, quoties, simul, ut, simul atque, ubi postquam, temporales, Indicativo gaudent : quum sæpe Subjunctivo, post et ante Tempus Præteritum : ut,*

*Tua res agitur, paries quum proximus ardet. — Hor.*

*Ut veni coram, non sum permulta locutus. — Hor.*

*Miserum est fodere, ubi sitis fauces tenet. — Plaut.*

*Zenonem, quum Athenis essem, audiebam frequenter. — Cic.*

*Decessit Agesilaus, quum in portum venisset. — Nep.*

*R. G. II.* — *Dum, donec, quoad, antequam, priusquam, pro sententiâ loci, nunc Indicativum, nunc Subjunctivum capiunt : ut,*

*Homines, dum docent, discunt. — Sen.*

*Expectate dum consul fiat Kæso. — Liv.*

*Cato, quo ad vixit, virtutum laude crevit. — Nep.*

*Opperire quo ad scire possis, quid tibi agendum sit. — Cic*

*Antequam opprimit lux, erumpamus. — Liv.*

*Providentia est, per quam animus aliquid videt, antequam factum sit. — Cic.*

## § 188. (E) Conditionales Sententiæ.

**R. G. I.** — *Si, nisi, ubi conditio, ut incerta, proponitur, Conjunctivo præmittuntur; aliàs, Indicativo: ut,*

*Si vales, bene est. — CIC.*

*Sincerum est nisi vas, quodcunque infundis acescit. — HOR.*

*Si quod erat grande vas, lèti afferebant. — CIC.*

*Si noles sanus, curres hydropicus. — HOR.*

*Sume, catelle: negat: si non des, optet. — HOR.*

*Si foret in terris, rideret Democritus. — HOR.*

*Si id scissem, nunquam huc tulissem pedem. — TER.*

*Si Atheniensis essem, clarus nunquam fuisses. — CIC.*

**R. G. II.** — *Modò, dum, dummodo, modò ut, conditionali sensu, Subjunctivum regunt: ut,*

*Manent ingenia senibus, modò permaneat industria. — CIC.*

*Caligula jactabat illud: Oderint dum metuant. — SUET.*

*Scies, modò ut tacere possis. — TER.*

## § 189. (F) Concessivæ Sententiæ.

**R. G. I.** — *Etsi, tametsi, etiamsi, pro re natâ nunc Indicativum nunc Conjunctionivum capiunt: ut,*

*Etsi culpâ tenemur, scelere liberati sumus. — CIC.*

*Obtundis, tametsi intelligo. — TER.*

*Etiamsi non is esset Cæsar qui est, tamen ornandus videretur. — CIC.*

**R. G. II.** — *Quamquam, utut, Indicativo gaudent: ut,*

*Quamquam festinas, non est mora longa. — HOR.*

*Utut erga me est meritus, mihi cordi est tamen. — PLAUT.*

**R. G. III.** — *Quamvis, quantumvis, licet, ut, quam, ne, concessivo sensu, Subjunctivum regunt: ut,*

*Quod turpe est, quamvis lateat, non fiet honestum. — CIC.*

*Licet vitium sit ambitio, causa virtutum est. — SEN.*

*Ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas. — OV.*

*Phocion fuit pauper, quam divitissimus esse posset. — NEP.*

*Ne sit summum malum dolor, malum certè est. — CIC.*

*Obs. 1.* *Quamvis cum Indicativo reperitur apud historicos et poetas: ut,*

*Quamvis ingenio non valet, arte valet. — OV.*

*Obs. 2.* *Eleganter excidunt Conjunctiones si, etsi: ut,*

*Partem opere in tanto, sineret dolor, Icare, haberes. — VIRG.*

*Naturam expellas furcâ, tamen usque recurret. — HOR.*

## § 190. (G) Comparativæ Sententiæ.

**R. G.** — *Comparativæ Particulæ quasi, tanquam, oru, velut, cum similibus, Subjunctivum regunt: ut,*

*Parvi primo ortu jacent, tanquam sine animo sint. — CIC.*

*Tum verò attoniti, ceu templo irrumperet hostis*

*Exsiluere patres. — SIL.*

## DE SENTENTIIS ADJECTIVALIBUS.

§ 191. R. G. I.—Relativum, *qui quæ quod*, Indicativo jungitur, nisi opus sit Subjunctivo : ut,  
*Quis fuit, horrendos primus qui protulit enes?* — Ov.  
*Obs.* Itidem Correlativa *qualis, quantus, quot*; et Universalia *quis, quis, quicunque, quotcumque*, cum similibus.

§ 192. R. G. II.—*Qui*, causaliter sensu, Subjunctivo gaudet : ut,  
*Miseret tui me, qui hunc facias inimicum tibi.* — Ter.  
*Obs.* *Ita non quo, pro non quod:* ut,  
*Non quo quenquam plus amem eo feci.* — Ter.  
*Not.* — Similiter construitur *non quin pro non quia non*.

§ 193 R. G. III.—*Qui*, concessivo sensu, Subjunctivo gaudet : ut,  
*Egomet, qui leviter Græcas literas attigissem, tamen Athenis commoratus sum.* — Cic.

§ 194. R. G. IV.—*Qui*, finali sensu, Subjunctivum regit : ut,  
*Litterus misi, quibus et placarem eum et monerem.* — Cic.  
*Obs.* *Hinc quo pro ut eo Subjunctivum regit:* ut,  
*Ager novatur, quo meliores fetus edat.* — Cic.

§ 195. R. G. V.—*Qui*, consecutivo sensu, Subjunctivum regit :  
(a) Post Demonstrativa, *talis, is* pro *talis, tantus, tam, adeo, similia* : ut,  
*Non is sum qui his rebus delecter.* — Cic.  
*Nihil tanti est quo vendamus libertatem.* — Cic.  
(b) Omissio Demonstrativo : ut,  
*Audies ex me quod non omnes probent.* — Cic.  
(c) Post Comparativum et *quàm* : ut,  
*Majora deliquerant quàm quibus ignosci posset.* — Liv.  
(d) Post *dignus, indignus, idoneus, aptus* : ut,  
*Dignus est qui imperet.* — Cic.  
(e) Ubiunque significat *talis ut* : sic enim construitur  
(1) Post *est, sunt, invenio, reperio, habeo, similia* : ut,  
*Est qui vinci possit.* — Hor.  
*Inventus est qui flammis imponeret manum.* — Liv.  
*Habes qui assideat, fomenta paret.* — Hor.  
(2) Post *aliquis, pauci, multi, solus, similia*, indefinite posita : ut,  
*Est aliquid quod non oporteat, etiamsi licet.* — Cic.  
*Solus es, Cai Cæsar, cuius in victoriâ nemo ceciderit nisi armatus.* — Cic.

(3) Post *nemo*, *nihil*, *nullus*, similia, item post Interrogativa negationem expectantia: ut,

*Nihil est quod tam deceat quam constantia.* — CIC.

*Quis est qui non oderit protervam pueritiam?* — CIC.

*Obs.* Relativæ Particulæ *quo*, *quà*, *quomodo*, *quare*, *ubi*, *unde*, *cur*, cum similibus, iisdem ferè regulis, quibus Relativum *qui* *quæ quod*, Indicativum vel Subjunctivum postulant: ut,

*Perge quo cœpisti.* — CIC.

*Digna res est ubi nervos intendas.* — TER.

*Erat nihil cur properato opus esset.* — CIC.

§ 196. Not. 1. *Quominus*, post Verba quæ quid *impedimenti* continent, Subjunctivum regit inceptæ, sed impeditæ actionis: ut,

*Senectus non impedit quominus litteris utamur* — CIC.

*Non recusavit quominus pœnam subiret.* — NEP.

*Per Afranum stetit quominus dimicaretur.* — CÆS.

(*Obs.*) *Ne* post eadem Verba prohibet actionem: ut,

*Pontus erat vetitus ne mergeret aequore terram.* — MANIL.

*Sulpicius intercesserat ne exiles reducerentur.* — CIC.

Not. 2. *Quin* (qui-ne, quî-ne) Subjunctivum regit:

(a) Pro *qui non* post Negativa et Interrogativa: ut,

*Nihil est quin male narrando possit depravari.* — TEB.

*Nullum intermisi diem quin scriberem.* — CIC.

*Quis fundum colit, quin sues habeat?* — VARRO.

(b) Pro *quod non*, *ut non*, post negationem vel interrogationem dubitationis, abstinentiæ, *impedimenti*, *causæ*, et similiū: ut,

*Non dubito quin fuerint ante Homerum poetæ.* — CIC.

*Nec requies quin mox pomis exuberet annus.* — VIRG.

*Facere non possum quin quotidie ad te mittam.* — CIC.

*Prorsus nihil abest quin sim miserrimus.* — CIC.

*Quin ad diem decedam nulla causa est.* — CIC.

*Quis dubitet quin in virtute divitiae positæ sint?* — CIC.

*Quid est causæ quin decemviri coloniam in Janiculum possint deducere?* — LIV.

## DE ALIIS QUIBUSDAM PARTICULIS.

§ 197 (A) *Nendum* Subjunctivo jungitur: ut,

*Mortalia facta peribunt,*

*Nendum sermonum stet honos et gratia vivax.* — HOR.

(B) *Ne . . . quidem* negativam vim auget, interpositâ inter *ne* et *quidem* eâ parte sententiæ, in quâ fit emphasis:

(a) Præcedente Verbo cum alterâ Negativâ: ut,

*Non prætereundum est ne id quidem.* — CIC

(b) Sequente Verbo sine alterâ Negativâ ut,

*Ne ad Catonem quidem provocabo.* — CIC.

C. (a) *Nē, an*, interrogativæ particulæ, dubitanter interro-gant: *num* responsionem expectat negativam: *nonne, annon* affirmativam: ut,

*Qualis est tua mens? potesne dicere?* — CIC.

*An tu me tristem esse putas?* — PLAUT.

*Num negare audes?* — CIC.

*Canis nonne similis lupo est?* — CIC.

(b) In Duplici Interrogatione sunt hæ varietates.

1. *Utrum* sequente *an*: ut,

*Hæc utrum abundantis an egentis signa sunt?* — CIC.

2. *Num* sequente *an*: ut,

*Num duas habetis patrias an est illa patria com-munis?* — CIC.

3. *Nē* sequente *an*: ut,

*Romamne venio an hic maneo an Arpinum fugio?* — CIC.

4. Particula omissa, sequente *an* aut *nē*: ut

*Interrogatur tria pauca sint anne multa?* — CIC.

*Quærām justum sit necne poëma?* — HOR.

## DE CONSTRUCTIONIBUS ORATIONIS OBLIQUÆ.

§ 198. R. G. I.— Sententia, quæ subordinatur Orationi Obliquæ, sive Relativo sive Conjunctione intercedente, Subjunctivum exigit: ut,

*Ais, quoniam sit natura mortalis, immortalem etiam esse oportere.* — CIC.

*Scito me, postquam in urbem venerim, redisse cum libris in gratiam.* — CIC.

*Fateor me oratorem, si modò sim, ex Academiæ spatiis exstisset.* — CIC.

*Simile veri est, non ex iisdem semper populis exercitus scriptos, quamquam eadem semper gens bellum intulerit.* — LIV.

*Sapientissimum esse dicunt eum, cui, quod opus sit, ipse veniat in mentem; propriùs accedere illum, qui alterius bene inventis obtemperet.* — CIC.

*Cæsar ad me scripsit, gratissimum sibi esse quod quieverim.* — CIC.

**199. R. G. II.**— Sententia Subordinata, quæ opinionem ejuspiam vel cogitationem indicat, sive Relativo sive Conjunctione intercedente, Subjunctivum exigit : ut,

*Laudat Africanum Panætius quòd fuerit abstinentis.—Cic.*

*Alium rogantes regem misere ad Jovem,*

*Inutilis quoniam esset qui fuerat datus.—Phædr.*

*Sapiens non dubitat, si ita melius sit, migrare de ritâ.—Cic.*

*Darius ejus pontis, dum ipse abesset, custodes reliquit.—Nep.*

*Etsi nihil habeat in se gloria, cur expetatur, tamen virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur.—Cic.*

*In Hispaniâ prorogatum veteribus imperatoribus est imperium cum exercitibus quos haberent.—Liv.*

*Quum abessem, quotiescumque patria in mentem veniret, hæc omnia occurabant, colles, campique, et Tiberis, et hoc cælum, sub quo natus educatusque essem.—Liv.*

**200. R. G. III.**— Relativum vel Conjunctionio, quum subordinatur Subjunctivo, Subjunctivum regit : ut,

*Tanta est caritas patriæ, ut vestris etiam legionibus sanctus essem, quòd eum a me servatum esse meminissent.—Cic.*

*Evidem illud molior, ut mihi Cæsar concedat, ut absim quum aliquid in senatu contra Cnæum agatur.—Cic.*

*Erat in Hortensio memoria tanta, ut, quæ secum commentatus esset, ea sine scripto verbis eisdem redderet, quibus cogitavisset.—Cic.*

**Not.**— Oratio Obliqua longè excurrit apud Historicos; Enuntiationes in primis, tum etiam his adspersæ Petitiones Interrogationesque : ut,

*Orat Tarquinius Veientes, ne se extorrem egentem ex tanto modò regno cum liberis adolescentibus ante oculos suos perire sinerent : alios peregrè in regnum Romanum accitos ; se regem, augentem bello Romanum imperium, a proximis sceleratâ conjuratione pulsum : . . . patriam se regnumque suum repetere, et persequi ingratos cives velle : ferrent opem, adjuvarent ; suas quoque veteres injurias ultum irent, toties cæsas legiones, agrum ademptum.—Liv.*

*Docebat Cæsar, quâm veteres quâmq[ue] justæ causæ necessitudinis ipsis cum Æduis intercederent ; quæ senatus consulta, quoties, quâmq[ue] honorifica in eos facta essent ; ut omni tempore totius Galliae principatum Ædui tenuissent, priùs etiam quâm nostram amicitiam appetissent : populi Romani hanc esse consuetudinem, ut socios atque amicos non modò sui nihil desperdere, sed gratiâ, dignitate, honore antiores velit esse : quod verò ad amicitiam populi Romani attulissent. id iis eripi quis puti posset ? — Cæs.*

# PROSODIÆ COMPENDIUM.

---

§ 201. DE Syllabarum quantitate disserit,  
Et de Metrorum legibus, Prosodia.

---

## DE SYLLABARUM QUANTITATE DEFINITIONES.

1. Mensura Tempus eloquendæ est syllabæ:  
Quod et vocatur Quantitas.

*Obs.* Vocalis observetur : in vocalium  
Stat quantitate syllabarum quantitas.

2 *Longi (-) brevisque (.) Temporis notas habes.*

*Obs.* 1. Singulis longis brevibusque binis  
Par est eademque potestas.

*Obs.* 2. *Communis* audit illa, quæ interdum brevis,  
Et rursus eadem longa vocalis sonat.

*Not.* — *H* non habetur consonans, nullamque viii  
Exercet in Prosodiâ.

---

## REGULÆ QUANTITATIS GENERALES.

§ 202. *R. G. I.* — Omnis Diphthongus contractaque Syllaba longa  
est :

Ut *praēs*, *heū*, *gaūdens* : *cōāgo* fit *cōgo*, *nīhūl* *nīl* ;  
Pro *bōvibus* *bōbus* ; *mōmentum* pro *mōvimentum*.

*Obs.* At tu vocali *præeuntem* corripies *præ*.

§ 203. *R. G. II.* — Dant Derivatis proprium Primaria tempus :  
Sic *sălceta* *sălix*, *pōnum* *pōmaria* format.

*Obs.* Fit tamen in multis aliter : sic *āret* *ārena*,  
Sic *hūmanus* *hōmo* est ; sic *lūcet* parva *lūcerna*.

*R. G. III.* — Nec non Simplicium tempus Composta sequuntur  
A *pūto* sic *repūto*, sic a *mēmor* *immēmor* exstat.

*Obs.* Sunt excepta tamen : sic *nūbo* *pronūba* format.

§ 204 *R. G. IV.* — Prævia vocali vocalis corripitur : ceu  
*Principiūm*, *prōhibe* :

*Obs.* 1 Sed multa hinc excipe Græca : ut,  
*Chāonis*, *Ænēas*, *Clio*, *Myrtōus*, *Enyō*.

*Obs. 2.* A longam Primæ priscus Genitivus habebit :  
*Terrāi, aulāi* ; sic format Quinta, *diēi* :  
 Scribe tamen *rēi* atque *rēi*, *fidēi* atque *fidēi*.

*Obs. 3.* Longa Vocabo est penultima vocis in *aīus*,  
 Aut *eius* ; *Cūi, Pompēi*, hāc lege sonantur.

*Obs. 4.* I Verbi *fīo* longa est, nisi cūm comes est *er* ;  
 “ *Omnia nunc fīent, fīeri quæ posse negabam.* ”

*Obs. 5.* I dat communem Genitivus in *ius* : ut *ille*  
*Illūus illūusque* facit : sic *īus īusque*  
*Totus et unus* habent, *ipse isteque, nullus et ullus* :  
*Alterius semper breviat* ; producit *alīus*.

*Obs. 6.* Nunc *Dīana* feras agitat, nunc *dīa Dīana*.  
 Sic *ōhe* vel *ōhe* ; sed semper dicimus *ēheu*.

§ 205. R. G. V.—Longa situ vocalis erit, quam bina sequetur  
 Consona; sic, *pāllōr trīstīs* : seu voce in eādem  
*J* subit, *x*, aut *z* ; sic, *Ajāx, āxis, Amāzon*.

*Obs.* Excipe *quadrījugus, bijugus*, quæ corripiunt *i*.

*Not.* — Vocalis, vi curta suā, communis erit, si  
 Consona postponens liquidam sibi muta sequetur :  
 Sic rectè *lugūbre* melos vel *lugūbre* dices :  
*Dūplex* sive *dūplex*, *Tēcmessam* sive *Tēcmessam*.

*Obs. 1.)* *N* post *g* longam dat semper : ut *āgnus* et *īgnis*.  
 Nec minus *m* post *g* ; *tēgmen* quod monstrat et *āgmen*.

*(Obs. 2.)* Syllaba si liquidam diviserit altera mutā,  
 Longa prior semper : quod *sūb-ruit, āb-lue*, monstrant

§ 206. R. G. VI.—Perfecti brevis est geminati syllaba prima :  
 Ut, *pēpuli, dīdici, pūpugi, cēcidi*, atque *cēcidi*.

R. G. VII.—Efficiunt primam Perfecta disyllaba longam,  
 Ut, *vīdi, lēgi, mōvique*. Sed excipis octo :  
*Bībi, dēdi, fūi, fīdi,*  
*Stēti, stīti, tūli, scīdi*.

G. VIII.—Primam producuntque disyllaba ritè Supina,  
 Ut, *vīsum, lōtum, mōtumque*. Sed excipis octo :  
*Itum, cītum, dātum, lītum,*  
*Rātum, rūtum, sātum, sītum*.



## DE QUANTITATE SYLLABARUM FINALIUM.

§ 207. R. I.—Pleraque produces Monosyllaba, qualia *mē, vēr*.

*Obs.* Corripiuntur in *l, b, d, t, ut, vēl, sūb, id, ēt, stāt* :

*Es* cum compositis, ut *adēs* : *quē, vē, quumque* rogat, *nē*.  
*Fēc, nēc, ān, īn, fēr, pēr, tēr, vīr, cōr, quis, bīs, īs* et *cls*.

§ 208. *R. II.* — Producuntur in *A*; ceu *frustrā*, *intrāque*, *parāque*.

*Obs.* Sed casus rectos et quartos excipe: quales,  
*Carminā Musā* canit; resonant *Amaryllidā* sylvæ.  
 Atque vocativos plerosque, ut *Orestā*, *Thyestā*:  
*Ejā*, itā particulas, cumque his *quiā*, quæ breviant *a*.

§ 209. *R. III.* — Corripiuntur in *E*: ceu *legē timetē carerē*.

*Obs.* *E* longam Primæ casus Quintæque requirunt,  
 Ut *Thisbē*, *speciē*: quæ derivantur ab illis,  
 Ut *quarē* atque *hodiē*: contractaque, qualia *Tempē*:  
 Verba in *eo* primi numeri Mandantia, ut *audē*:  
 (Sed *cavē* sive *cavē* scribendi est æqua potestas)  
 Ex Adjectivis Adverbia ducta Secundæ,  
 Ut *miserē*: jungantur *ohē*, *fermēque*, *ferēque*.

§ 210. *R. IV.* — Producuntur in *I*: ceu *dici*, *orbīque*, *dolique*.

*Obs.* Attamen hinc multos Græcorum deime Dativos  
 Atque Vocativos, ut *Thyrsidī*, *Phyllidī*, *Chlorī*:  
*Sicubī*, *necubī* deme, *nisi* et *quasi*, queis brevis est *i*.  
 (At *mihi*, *ubi*, *tibi*, *ibi*, *sibi*, communem faciunt *i*.)

§ 211. *R. V.* — Producuntur in *O*: ceu *virgō*, *ultrōque*, *juvōque*

*Obs.* At *putō* finalem, *sciō*, *nesciō*, corripiunt *O*:  
 Adde *modō* et compôsta, *duō*, *octō*, *egō*, queis *citō* junge.  
*O* proprium claudens nomen communis habetur,  
 Ut *Matho*, (sed longa est in Græcis semper, ut *Argō*).  
 Quædam Flaccus habet communia, plurima Naso,  
 Plura poetarum corruptior addidit ætas.

*R. VI.* — Producuntur in *U*: sic *tū*, *dictūque*, *diūque*.

*R. VII.* — Corripiuntur in *Y*: sic dant *chelȳ*, *Tiphȳ*, poe<sup>æ</sup>.

212. *R. VIII.* — In *C* producuntur, ut *illīc* (excipe *donēc*).

*R. IX.* — Corripi in *L*, *D*, *T*: sic *Hannibāl*, *illūd*, *amavit*.

*R. X.* — Corripiuntur in *N*: ceu *culmēn*.

(At excipe Græca  
 Multa, ut *Hymēn*, *Acrōn*, vocali prædita longâ.)

*R. XI.* — Corripiuntur in *R*: ceu *calcār*, *amabitūr*, *Hectōr*.

*Obs.* Græca tamen, *cratēr*, *aethēr*, producis, et *aēr*.

§ 213. *R. XII.* — Producuntur in *As*: ut *terrās*

(Excipe Græca

Queis Genitivus -ădis, ceu *Pallās*: et excipe casus  
 Crescentū quartos, ceu *lampadās*: his *andās* adde.

*R. XIII.* — Producuntur in *Es*, ut *sedēs* atque *riderēs*.

*Obs.* Excipienda tamen quae Græci corripiunt; ut  
*Troadēs*: excipias etiam *penēs*, excipiasque  
 Crescentis brevis est penultima queis Genitivi,  
 Ut *segēs* (at *pariēs* semper producitur, atque  
*Pēs* cum compositis: *abiēs*, *ariēsque*, *Cerēsque*).

§ 214. *R. XIV.* Corripiuntur in *Is*: ceu *dicerīs*, *utilīs*, *enīls*.

*Obs.* Obliqui casus plurales excipiuntur,  
 Ut *terrīs*, *vobīs*: etiam persona secunda  
 In primo numero Quartæ Praesentis, ut *audīs*:  
 Composita a *vīs*, *sīs*: *malīs*, *nolīsque*, *velīsque*.  
 (Sed *ris* Præteriti et persona secunda Futuri  
 Activæ Voci rectè communis habetur;  
*Fecerīs*, *addirīs*, *tulerīs*.) Et nomina produc  
 Crescentis longa est penultima queis Genitivi,  
 Ut *Samnīs*: itidem *Simōīs*, *gratīsque*, *forīsque*.

§ 215. *R. XV.* — Producuntur in *Os*: ut *ventōs* atque *sacerdōs*.

*Obs.* Corripienda tamen quae Græci corripiunt, ut  
*Phasidōs*, *Argōs*, *epōs*. Sic *compōs* et *impōs*, *ōs*, *exōs*.

*R. XVI.* — Corripiuntur in *Us*: ceu *tempūs*, *amamūs*, et *intūs*.

*Obs.* Hinc Quartæ casus contractos excipe, ut *artūs*:  
 Longaque crescentis penultima queis Genitivi,  
 Ut *tellūs incūsque*, *juventūs* atque *senectūs*:  
 Producta a Græcis, ut *Sapphūs* atque *Melampūs*,  
 Atque piis cunctis venerandum nomen *Iesūs*.

*R. XVII.* — Corripiuntur in *Ys*: *chelys* ut, *chlamīs*, *Othriyā*,  
*Erinnīyā*.

*Not.* — Dicit ab *Auctorum* scriptis ea syllaba tempus,  
 Regula quam longam nulla brevemve facit.

## DE METRORUM LEGIBUS.

### DEFINITIONES.

§ 216. 1. In proferendis syllabis *Arsin* voca  
 Elationem vocis (huic *Ictus* comes);  
 Thesisque contra vocis est depressio.  
 Pes syllabarum est certa consecutio:  
 Pedumque certa consecutio *Rhythmus*:  
 Apud poetas *Versus* est nomen *Rhythni*;  
 Certumque Versuum ordinem *Carmen* voca  
*Metrumve*: et audit certa pars *Versūs Metrum*.

§ 217 2. Syllaba longa brevi subjecta vocatur *Iambus*: - -  
 Quod si longa brevi præcesserit, ille *Trochæus*: - -  
*Pyrrhichius* brevibus voluit consistere binis: - -

*Spondeus* binis voluit consistere longis : - -  
*Dactylus* efficitur longâ brevibusque duabus : - √ √  
Postque breves binas *Anapæstus* simplice longâ : √ √ -  
*Tribrachyn* huc brevibus formatum subjice ternis. √ √ √

*Not.* 1. — Quem Thesis incipiat, dices *ascendere Rhythnum* :  
Quale tuus specimen versus, Iambe, dabit :  
Cœperit ex Arsi contra, *descendere* dices ;  
Dactyle, tu talem, tuque, Trochæe, facis.

*Not.* 2. — *Metrum* in Dactylico carmine singuli,  
At bini in reliquis constituunt pedes.

*Not.* 3. — Complendis metris cui syllaba deficit una,  
Hic Versus Catalecticus audit.  
Complendis metris cui deerit syllaba duplex,  
Ille Brachycatalecticus audit.  
Syllaba cui superest completis unica metris,  
Versus Hypercatalecticus audit.  
Cui nihil aut deest aut superest, teres atque rotundus  
Versus is Acatalecticus audit.

### DE SCANSIONE ET FIGURIS SCANSIONIS.

§ 218. *Scansio*, | quam variâ con|cinnant | arte Figuræ,  
Distribu|it Ver|sum | pro rati|one Pe|dum.

A. Vocalem elidit *Synalœpha* in limite vocis,  
Si Vocalis erit subnexæ in limine vocis ;  
*Phyllid' am'* | *ant' ali|as* : *nam* | *me dis|cedere* | *flevit*.  
(pro *Phyllida*, *amo*, *ante*.)

*Obs.* 1. Interdum legem Synalœphæ infringit *Hiatus* :  
*Ter sunt* | *conatī im|ponere* | *Peliō* | *Ossam*.

*Obs.* 2. *Heu*, *O*, et *ah* nunquam vocalis proxima delet.

B. *Ecthlipsis* Vocalem atque *m* de limite trudit,  
Si Vocalis erit subnexæ in limine vocis ;  
*O cu|rás homin'* | *O quant'* | *est in* | *rebus in|ane*.  
(pro *hominum*, *quantum*.)

§ 219. C. Syllaba de binis conflata *Synæresis* audit,  
Ut monstrant *deest*, *dein*, *aureos*, *alvearia*, *Thesei*.

*Obs.* Apud poetas jura consonantium  
Subinde sumit *I* vel *U*:

“ *Flūviorum rex Eridanus. Labat āriete murus.*  
*Gēnua tremunt. Pectunt et tēnuia vellera Sere.*”

D. Una sed in binas divisa *Dicæsis* audit.  
Quod tibi *Naiades* monstrant flavique *Suëvi*:

*Obs.* Ponitur *U* pro *V*: *silūas*, *solaītque* videbis.

§ 220 E. Ante pedum finem *Cæsura* vocabula finit.

“*Lumina, labentem || cælo || quæ ducitis annum.*”—VIRG

*Obs.* Quam fecit natura brevem, vocalis in Arsi

Longa fit interdum, Cæsurâ Ictuque favente :

“*Pectoribūs || inhians spirantia consulit exta.*”

F. Secernit vocemque pedemque *Dialysis* unâ :

“*Lumina || labentem cælo quæ || ducitis || annum.*”

*Not.* — Ultima communis censemur syllaba versûs.

## DE VERSIBUS DACTYLICIS.

### I. DE HEXAMETRO SIVE SENARIO DACTYLICO.

§ 221. Hexameter pedibus senis concluditur : horum

Dactylus est quintus : sextâ statione locatur

Spondeus ; reliquisque locis reperitur utervis.

*Obs.* 1. Quintâ| sede lo|cat re|rūm gravi|tas spon|deūm.

*Obs.* 2. Hexametrum Cæsura solet distinguere, quâ pes  
Tertius aut quartus || sese || discernit in Arsi.

(*Obs.* 1.) Post Thesin interdum Cæsura est unica Versûs :  
“*Impiger, iracundus, || inexorabilis, acer.*”—HOR.

(*Obs.* 2.) Damnaris versum, Cæsurâ qui vacet omni.

*Obs.* 3. Efficit Hexametri de more disyllaba finem  
Sive trisyllaba vox, rarò polysyllaba, rarò,  
Altera ni præeat, claudit monosyllaba versum.

*Obs.* 4. Ultima perrarò sorbetur syllaba versûs :  
Quod quum contingit, tum versus *Hypomester* audit :  
“*Omnia | Mercuri|o simi|lis, vo|cemque co|lore|mque,*  
*Et cri|nes fla|vos et |membra de|cora ju|ventæ.*”—VIRG

### II. DE PENTAMETRO DACTYLICO.

§ 222. Pentameter partes binas habet : utraque binis

Procedit pedibus, sequitur quos syllaba longa.

Primam pro lubitu Spondeus, Dactylus, intrant :  
Dactylicis tantum pedibus pars altera gaudet.

*Obs.* 1. Pentametri primam partem Cæsura secundâ  
Separat: atque loco Synalœpha excluditur illo.  
“*Quamvis| ingenio || non valet, | arte va|let.*”

*Obs.* 2. Pentametri format de more disyllaba finem.

(*Obs.*) *Est* licet ad finem, si fit Synalœpha, remitti :  
“*Invi|tis oculis || littera | lecta tu|a est.*”

Vel si vox anteit monosyllaba, qualis in illo.

*Præmia | si studi|o || consequor | ista, sat | est.*

*Obs.* 3. Ne partis primæ sit vox monosyllaba finis,  
Ni vox præcedat monosyllaba, qualis in illo :  
“*Magna ta|men spes | est || in boni|tate De|i.*”

Vel vox interdum brevibus confecta duabus :

*Hæc præ|stat sinc | vi ! sc̄ptra tre|menda Jo|vn.*

### III. DE CARMINE HEROICO ET DE CARMINE ELEGIACO.

§ 223. Hexametris gaudet solis Heroica Musa:  
Hexametros Elegi Pentametrosque ligant

*Obs.* Disticha perfectum malunt includere sensum:  
Nec simplicis sententiæ  
Constructionem distichis scindi placet.

### § 224. HEXAMETRI DACTYLICCI

(QUI ET VERSUS MEMORIALES SUNT DE VOCUM DIFFERENTIA).

Cantat *acanthis* avis, sed floret *acanthus* in agris.  
In siluis *acer* est: equus *acer* Olympia vincit.  
Qui fert *arma humeris*, *armo* dux fertur equino.  
Mel vaga condit *āpis*: deus est *Ægyptius Apis*.  
Vexat *asilus* equos; miseros exceptit *asylum*.  
Qui sculpit, *cælat*, qui servat condita, *celat*.  
Voce *cānes*; duc eja *cānes*, nisi tempora *cānes*.  
Tenduntur nexi *casses*; nitct ærea *cassis*.  
*Casside* cinge caput: capiuntur *cassibus* apri.  
*Cēdo* facit *cessi*; *cecidi cado*; *cædo cecidi*.  
*Clava* ferit: *clavus* firmat; *clavisque* recludit.  
Fert ancilla *cōlum*; penetrat res humida *cōlum*.  
Rusticus arva *cōlit*, sed *cōlat* turbida vina.  
*Cominus* ense feris; jactâ cadis *eminus* hastâ.  
Ut placeas *cōmīti*, mores *cōmes* indue *cōmes*.  
*Cōmædi* scenam, *cōmēdones* quærite *cænam*.  
*Consule* doctores; sic tu *tibi* *consulis* ipsi.  
Bellandi *cupido* nocuit sua sæpè *cupido*.  
Carmina *dīcuntur*, Domino dum templa *dīcantur*.  
Solveare *diffidit*, nodum qui *diffidit* ense.  
Uxorem *ducit* vir; *nubit* sponsa marito.  
*Edūcat* hic catulos, ut mox *edūcat* in aþros.  
Si tibi non est *æs*, *ēs* inops, et pinguia non *ēs*.  
Fallit sæpe *frētum* placido nimis æquore *frētum*.  
*Fructus* arboribus, *fruges* nascuntur in agris.  
Sol nubes *fūgit*, et *fūgit* irreparabile tempus.  
Ales *hirundo* volat; nat *hirudo*; vernat *arundo*.  
Per quod quis peccat, per *idem* mox plectitur *idem*.  
Difficilis *lābor* est, cujus sub pondere *lābor*.  
Frons pueri est *lēvis*, *lēvis* autem lingua puellæ.  
In silvis *lēpōres*, in verbis quære *lēpōres*.  
Non *licet* asse *mihi*, qui *me* non asse *licetur*.  
*Mālo* ego *māla* meâ bona quâm *māla* frangere *mālā*.  
*Merr* *vēnit*, *mercesque* *vēnit* quæsita labore.  
*Mulcet* amante manu, dum *mulget* *Sylvia* vaccam.

Carus eris Domino, *miseris* si *miseris* aurum.  
 Nitere, parve puer, cupies quicumque *nitere*.  
 Oblita quæ fuco rubet, est *oblita* decori.  
 Occidit ille dolc turpi, quem *occidit* amicus.  
 Opperior Caium qui pullo *operitur* amictu.  
 Os (*oris*) mandat, sed *os* (*ossis*) manditur *ore*.  
 Uxor is pârere et pârere, pârare mariti est.  
 Pârentes pueri faciunt gaudere pârentes.  
 Nî pendere vôles, non debita pendere nôles.  
 Lude *pilâ*: *pilum* torquetur : *pila* columna est.  
 Pro reti et regione *plâga* est; pro verbere *plâga*.  
 Sunt cives urbis *pôpulus*; est *pôpulus* arbor.  
 Si vitare pôtes, ne plus duo pocula pôtes.  
 Prora prior, *puppis* pars postera, et ima *carina*.  
 Tribula grana terunt; *tribuli* nocuere novali.  
 Spondet *vas* (*vadis*), at *vas* (*vasis*) continet escam.  
 Vas caput, at nummos tantum *præs* præstat amicè.  
 Si transire vélis maris undas, utere vélis.

---

### ELEGORUM EXEMPLA

(QUI ET VERSUS MEMORIALES SUNT).

Fidē, sed ante vîdē: qui *fîdit*, nec benè *vîdit*,  
     Fallitur: ipse *vîdē* ne capiare *fîdē*.  
 Forfice sartores, tonsores *forpice* gaudent;  
     At faber ignitum *forcipe* prensat opus.  
 Consortes fortuna eadem, *socios* labor idem,  
     Unum *collegas* efficit officium:  
 At caros faciunt schola, ludus, mensa, *sodales*.  
     Sulcus agri *lîra* est: dat *lyra* tacta modos.  
 Ne sit *securus*, qui non est *tutus* ab hoste;  
     Ad flumen *ripas*, ad mare *littus* habes.  
 Sunt ætate *senes*; *veteres* vixere priores:  
     Quod non est *simulo* *dissimulo*que quod est.  
 Ungula conculcat; lacerat, tenet, arripit *unguis*;  
     *Ulva* tenax stagno nascitur, *alga* mari.  
 Vallamus proprie castra, at *sepimus* ovile,  
     Hasta *teres* dici, sphæra *rotunda* potest.  
 Quod scriptum est *dele*, sed flammam *extingue* lucernæ;  
     Lingua cibum *gustat*, qui bene cunque *sapit*.  
 Est in carne *cutis*, detracta e corpore *pellis*;  
     *Tergum* pandit homo; bellua *tergus* habet.  
 Pistor habet *furnum*; *fornace* *hypocausta* calescunt:  
     Hæc *nôta* Grammatici non mihi *nôta* fuit.  
 Anne *nôvi* quid habes? Alium pete: nil ego *nôvi*.  
     Quod minimè *rerefert* garrulus ille *rerefert*.  
 Si quâ fortè *sêdes*, atque est tibi commoda *sêdes*,  
     Illa *sêdē* *sêdē*; fôrs nova tuta parum est.

# TRANSLATIONS OF THE LATIN RULES AND EXAMPLES.

---

---

## § 17.

|                                                     |                                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| Poema, <i>a poem</i> , n.                           | Vās, <i>a vessel</i> , n.                             |
| Mare, <i>a sea</i> , n.                             | Vas, <i>a surety</i> , m.                             |
| Leo, <i>a lion</i> , m.                             | Mas, <i>a male</i> , m.                               |
| Natio, <i>a nation</i> , f.                         | As, <i>a pound</i> , m.                               |
| Caro, <i>flesh</i> , f.                             | Gigas, <i>a giant</i> , m.                            |
| Ordo, <i>order</i> , m.                             | Elephas, <i>an elephant</i> , m.                      |
| Virgo, <i>a virgin</i> , f.                         | Adamas, <i>adamant</i> , m.                           |
| Homo, <i>a man</i> , c.                             | Nubes, <i>a cloud</i> , f.                            |
| Nemo, <i>no man</i> , c.                            | Milēs, <i>a soldier</i> , c.                          |
| Turbo, <i>a whirlwind</i> , m.                      | Hospēs, <i>a host</i> , or <i>guest</i> , c.          |
| Ligo, <i>a spade</i> , m.                           | Satellēs, <i>a body-guard</i> , c                     |
| Macedo, <i>a Macedonian</i> , m.                    | Mergēs, <i>a sheaf</i> , f.                           |
| Lac, <i>milk</i> , n.      Sōl, <i>the sun</i> , m. | Segēs, <i>standing corn</i> , f.                      |
| Mel, <i>honey</i> , n.      Fel, <i>gall</i> , n.   | Interprēs, <i>an interpreter</i> , c.                 |
| Rēn, <i>the kidney</i> , m.                         | Tegēs, <i>a mat</i> , f.      Quiēs, <i>rest</i> , f. |
| Sindōn, <i>fine linen</i> , f.                      | Obsēs, <i>a hostage</i> , c.                          |
| Haleyōn, <i>a kingfisher</i> , f.                   | Præsēs, <i>a president</i> , c.                       |
| Lumen, <i>light</i> , n.                            | Pēs, <i>a foot</i> , m.      Mercēs, <i>hire</i> , t. |
| Pecten, <i>a comb</i> , m.                          | Herēs, <i>an heir</i> , c.                            |
| Calcār, <i>a spur</i> , n.                          | Æs, <i>copper</i> , n.                                |
| Jubār, <i>a sunbeam</i> , n.                        | Præs, <i>a surety</i> , m.                            |
| Par, <i>a pair</i> , n.      Far, <i>meul</i> , n.  | Avis, <i>a bird</i> , f.                              |
| Carcēr, <i>a prison</i> , m.                        | Amnis, <i>a river</i> , m.                            |
| Vēr, <i>spring</i> , n.                             | Lapīs, <i>a stone</i> , m.                            |
| Patēr, <i>a father</i> , m.                         | Cassīs, <i>a helmet</i> , f.                          |
| Imber, <i>a shower</i> , m.                         | Tigris, <i>a tiger</i> , c.                           |
| Itēr, <i>a journey</i> , n.                         | Cinīs, <i>ashes</i> , m.                              |
| Latēr, <i>a brick</i> , m.                          | Pulvīs, <i>dust</i> , m.      Iīs, <i>strife</i> , f. |
| Honōr, <i>honour</i> , m.                           | Samnis, <i>a Samnite</i> , m.                         |
| Arbōr, <i>a tree</i> , f.                           | Quirīs, <i>a Roman</i> , m.,                          |
| Æquōr, <i>a smooth surface</i> ( <i>sōa</i> ), n.   | Dīs, <i>Pluto</i> , m.                                |
| Marmōr, <i>marble</i> ( <i>sea</i> ), n.            | Sanguīs, <i>blood</i> , m.                            |
| Cor, <i>the heart</i> , n.                          | Glīs, <i>a dormouse</i> , m.                          |
| Fulgūr, <i>lightning</i> , n.                       | Dōs, <i>a dowry</i> , f.                              |
| Ebūr, <i>ivory</i> , n.                             | Cōs, <i>a whetstone</i> , f.                          |
| Iecūr, <i>the liver</i> , n.                        | Sacerdōs, <i>a priest</i> , or <i>priestess</i> , c.  |
| Ætas, <i>age</i> , f.                               | Flōs, <i>a flower</i> , m.                            |

Os, *a mouth*, n.  
 Custōs, *a guardian*, c.  
 Bōs, *an ox*, c.  
 Os, *a bone*, n.  
 Virtūs, *virtue*, f.  
 Servitūs, *slavery*, f.  
 Juventūs, *youth*, f.  
 Senectūs, *old age*, f.  
 Salūs, *safety*, f.  
 Palūs, *a marsh*, f.  
 Incūs, *an anvil*, f.  
 Pecūs, *a beast*, f.  
 Tellūs, *earth*, f.  
 Rūs, *the country*, n.  
 Mūs, *a mouse*, m.  
 Grus, *a crane*, f. Sus, *a swine*, c.  
 Vulnūs, *a wound*, n.  
 Tempūs, *time*, n.  
 Pecūs, *cattle*, n.  
 Laus, *praise*, f.  
 Fraus, *deceit*, f. Puls, *pulse*, f.  
 Frons, *a brow*, f.  
 Pars, *a part*, f. Frons, *a leaf*, f.  
 Glans, *an acorn*, f.  
 Trabs, *a beam*, f.  
 Stirps, *a trunk*, f.  
 Hiems, *winter*, f.  
 Cælebs, *a bachelor*, m.

Municeps, *a burgess*, f.  
 Princeps, *a chief*, c.  
 Auceps, *a fowler*, c.  
 Caput, *a head*, n.  
 Pax, *peace*, f. Fax, *a torch*, f.  
 Judex, *a judge*, c.  
 Vindex, *an avenger*, c.  
 Index, *an informer*, c.  
 Ilex, *scarlet oak*, f.  
 Carex, *sedge*, f. Vibex, *a weal*, f.  
 Vervex, *a wether*, m.  
 Nex, *death*, f. Lex, *law*, f.  
 Grex, *a flock*, m.  
 Remex, *a rower*, m.  
 Senex, *an old person*, c.  
 Supellex, *furniture*, f.  
 Cornix, *a crow*, f.  
 Calix, *a cup*, m.  
 Fornix, *an arch*, m.  
 Strix, *a screech owl*, f.  
 Nix, *snow*, f. Vox, *a voice*, f.  
 Nox, *night*, f.  
 Nux, *a walnut-tree*, f.  
 Lux, *light*, f.  
 Conjux, *a spouse*, c.  
 Phryx, *a Phrygian*, m.  
 Lynx, *a lynx*, m.  
 Arx, *a citadel*, f.

§ 21. (Dant) The following nouns make (*im pro em*) *im* instead of *em* (Accusativo) in the Accusative case; (*i pro e*) and *i* instead of *e* (in Ablativo) in the Ablative: buris, *a ploughtail*; cucumis, *a cucumber*; amussis, *a carpenter's rule*; ravis, *hoarseness*; sitis, *thirst*; vis, *force*; (*et*) and tussis, *a cough*; (*et*) and (flumina) names of Rivers (quæ claudit *is*) which end in *is*; (*ut*) as Albis, *the Elbe*; Liris, *the Garigliano*; Tiberis, *the Tiber*.\* (Sumunt) The following take (*im vel em*) either *im* or *em* (Accusativo) in the Accusative case, (*i vel e*) and either *i* or *e* (in Ablativo) in the Ablative: neptis, *a grand-daughter*; febris, *a fever*; messis, *a harvest*; clavis, *a key*; puppis, *a ship's stern*; pelvis, *a pan*; restis, *a rope*; navis, *a ship*; securis, *an axe*; turris, *a tower*; (adde his) add to these, sementis, *seed-time*; (atque) and strigilis, *a flesh-brush*.†

\* Also some nouns of Greek origin in *is*; as, Syrtis, Charybdis, poesis.

† The following nouns sometimes have Abl. Sing. in *i*: amnis, anguis, avis, civis, classis, finis, fustis, ignis, unguis, imber, supellex. Notice ruri, *in the country*; vesperi, *at eventide*.

(Neutra) Neuter Nouns (*quæ exeunt*) which end (in *at*, *ar*, *e*,) in *al*, *ar*, and *e*, (gaudent) prefer (*fingere*) to form (*i* Singularis Ablativi) *i* in the Ablative Singular, (*ia* Pluralis Nominativi) and *ia* in the Nominative Plural. (His excepta sunt) From these are excepted (in *ar*) the following in *ar*: *baccar*, *a kind of plant*; *nectar*, *nectar*; *jubar*, *a sunbeam*; *far, corn or meal*.

(Quæ efferunt) Those which form (*ium pro um*) *ium* instead of *um* (Plurali Genitivo) in the Genitive case Plural (sunt) are, 1. (*i* formantia Ablativo) Nouns forming *i* in the Ablative Singular; 2. (non crescentia Genitivo) Nouns not increasing in the Genitive case; 3. (pleraque) most Nouns (in *x* vel *s*) ending in *x* or *s* (positis post consonantem) following a consonant\*; 4. (cum aliis Monosyllabis) with other Nouns of One Syllable; *mas*, *a male*; *mus*, *a mouse*; *nix*, *snow*; *nox*, *night*; *os*, gen. *ossis*, *a bone*; *cos*, *a whetstone*; *sal*, *salt*; *sol*, *the sun*; *cor*, *the heart*; *pax*, *peace*; *glis*, *a dormouse*; *lis*, *strife*; (et) and *dos*, *a dowry*. (His excipienda sunt) From these must be excepted (quæ *um* libenter efferunt) the following, which prefer to form *um*: *vates*, *a prophet*, *prophetess*, *poet*, or *poetess*; *senex*, *an old man*; *pater*, *a father*; *panis*, *bread*; (et) and *accipiter*, *a hawk*; (et) and *canis*, *a dog*; *frater*, *a brother*; *mater*, *a mother*; *juvenis*, *a youth*; (et *sæpius*) and generally *apis*, *a bee*; *volucris*, *a bird*. †

§ 70. (Viri) Names of Men, (Populi) names of Peoples, (et) and (Divi) names of Gods, (Venti) names of Winds, (Menses) names of Months, (Montes) names of Mountains,

\* Many nouns in *ns* either take or reject *i* in Gen. Pl., as, *parens*, *parentium*, or *parentum*. So all Present Participles.

Nouns in *as* *ātis*, *is ītis*, *ax ācis*, *ix īcis*, often form Gen. Pl. in *ium*; as *civitas*, *civitatum*.

Several monosyllables and other nouns of this Declension fluctuate in the formation of the Gen. Pl., and the student must observe the usage of writers.

† All Adjectives following the 3d Decl. form Acc. Sing. Masc. in *em*. Parisyllabic adjectives form Abl. Sing. in *i*; as, *tristis*, *tristi*; imparisyllables in *i* or *e*; and of these, Participles and Comparatives prefer *e*; others *i*, except a few which take *e*; as *dives*, *pauper*, *sospes*, *superstes*. Adjectives of this Declension form Nom. Pl. Neut. in *ia*, except the Comparatives, and *vetus*, *vetera*. And those which form Nom. in *ia* form Gen. Pl. in *ium*, except *celer*, *dives*, *inops*, *pauper*, and some others. *Memor*, *uber*, *degener*, have no Neut. Pl., and form Gen. Pl. in *um*.

(Rivi) names of Rivers, (sunt) are (Generis Masculini) of the Masculine Gender. (Plantæ) Names of Plants, (Divæ) names of Goddesses, (Feminæ) names of Women, (Terræ) names of Countries, (Urbes) names of Cities, (Insulæ) names of Islands, (sunt, are (Generis Feminini) of the Feminine Gender. \* (Vox indeclinabilis) Any undeclined Word (est) is (Neutrius Generis) of the Neuter Gender. (Sunt) The following are (Communis Generis) of the Common Gender : *civis, a citizen*; *hostis, an enemy*; *juvenis, a young person*; *testis, a witness*; *judex, a judge*; *artifex, an artizan*; *auctor, an author*; *exsul, an exile*; *opifex, an artificer*; *comes, a companion*; *heres, an heir*; *hospes, a guest or host*; *dux, a leader*; *obses, a hostage*; *interpres, an interpreter*; *conjux, a husband or wife*; *incola, an inhabitant*; *sacerdos, a priest or priestess*; *vindex, an avenger*; *adolescens, a young man or woman*; *infans, an infant*; *index, an informer*; *parens, a parent*; *præsul, a president*; *par, a mate*; *custos, a guardian*; *municeps, a burgess*; *satelles, a body-guard*; *bos, an ox or cow*; *miles, a soldier*; *vates, a seer or poet*; *augur, a soothsayer*; *grus, a crane*; *canis, a dog*; *tigris, a tiger*; *serpens, a serpent*: *eius, a swine*; (jungimus) we add *dama, a deer*; *talpa, a mole*. †

§ 71. (*A* et *e*) Words ending in *a* and *e* (sunt) are (Feminina) Feminine; (*as* et *es*) words ending in *as* and *es* (sunt) are (Masculina) Masculine.

(Masculorum nomina in *a*) The names of Males ending in *a* (sunt) are (Masculina) Masculine : (*ut*) *as, nauta* or *navita, a sailor*; *verna, a slave born in his master's house*; (*et*) and *poeta, a poet*; *scurra, a buffoon*; *scriba, a notary*; (*et*) and *propheta, a prophet*.

\* Winds follow the Gender of *ventus*, months of *mensis*, mountains of *mons*, rivers of *fluvius*, plants of *arbor*. Some rivers are Fem., as *Styx*, *Lethe*, *Allia*. Many names of Mountains are Fem., as *Ossa*, *Cæta*, *Ætna*, *Rhodope*, *Alpes*, &c.; some Neuter, as *Soracte*, *Pelion*. Some names of Plants are Masculine, as *oleaster, a wild olive*; some Neuter, as *siler, a withy*. Some names of Cities are Masculine, as *Sulmo*, *Selinus*; and those in *i*, as *Delphi*, *Veii*; some Neuter, as *Tibur*, *Anxur*, *Tarentum*, *Præneste*.

† Those names of Animals which are found in only one gender are called *Epicena*; and the words *mas* or *femina* must be used when it is necessary to distinguish the sex: as Masc. *passer, a sparrow*; *passer femina, a hen-sparrow*; Fem. *vulpes, a fox*; *vulpes mas or mascula, a dog-fox*.

§ 72. (*Us et er*) The terminations *us* and *er* belong (Masculinis) to Masculine Nouns; (*um*) the termination *um* (tribuitur) is assigned (Neutris) to Neuter Nouns.

(In *us*) The following Nouns in *us* (Feminina sunt) are Feminine: *alvus*, *the belly*; *arctus*, *the Bear constellation*; *carbasus*, *canvass*; *colus*, *a distaff*; *humus*, *the ground*; *methodus*, *a method*.\* *Virus*, *poison*; *pelagus*, *the sea*; (Neutra) are Neuter. *Vulgus*, *the common people*, (fere sit) may generally be (Neutrum) Neuter: (subinde) now and then (fit Masculum) it is made Masculine.

§ 73. (Masculis) Among Masculine words (inseritur) is placed (quod claudit *o*, *or*, *os*, vel *er*) any Noun which ends in *o*, *or*, *os*, or *er*; (et) and (Nomen) any Noun (desinens in *es*) ending in *es*, (si) if (flectit casus impares) it forms imparisyllabic cases [that is, if it increases in the Genitive case Singular].

(Illa) Those Nouns (quæ desinunt in *do* et *go*) which end in *do* and *go* (Feminina sunt) are Feminine; (sed) but (manent) the following remain (Masculina) Masculine: *cardo*, *a hinge*; *ligo*, *a spade*; *ordo*, *order*; (atque) and *margo*, *a margin*.

(In *io*) Nouns in *io* (sunt) are (Feminina) Feminine: (illa) those (tantum) only (Masculina) are Masculine, (quæ) which (vel spectabis) you may either see (oculis) with your eyes (vel tu tractabis) or you may touch (manibus) with your hands.†

*Caro*, gen. *carnis*, *flesh* (mavult) prefers (addere se) to be added (Femininis) to Nouns feminine.

(Pauca in *or*) A few Nouns in *or* (sunt Neutra) are Neuter: *æquor*, *the level of the sea or of a plain*; *ador*, *parched corn*; *marmor*, *marble*, or *the smooth sea*; *cor*, *the heart*. *Arbor*, *a tree*, (est Femininum) is Feminine.

*Cos*, *a whetstone*, (et) and *dos*, *a dowry*, (sunt Feminina) are Feminine: (utrumque *os*) the two words, *os ossis*, *a bone*; and *os oris*, *a mouth*; (Neutra) are Neuter.‡

(Multa in *er*) Many Nouns in *er* (sunt) are (Neutra) Neuter: *verber*, *a stripe*; *siler*, *a withy*; *acer*, *a maple*; *ver*, *spring*; *tuber*, *a wen*; *uber*, *a teat*; (et) and *cadaver*,

\* Also, *vannus*, *a winnowing-fan*, is fem.

† As *papilio*, *a butterfly*; *scipio*, *a staff*. Numerals in *io* are masc. *as ternio*, *senio*.

‡ The Greek words *chaos*, *epos*, *melos*, are Neuter.

a *carcass*; *piper*, *pepper*; *iter*, *a journey*; (*et*) and *papaver*, *a poppy*.

(*Æs*), *brass* or *copper*, (*est neutrum*) is neuter; (*sex in es*) six Nouns in *es* (*quæ*) which (*flectunt casus impares*) form imparisyllabic cases (*sunt*) are (*Feminina*) Feminine: *compes*, *a fetter*; *teges*, *a mat*; *merces*, *reward*, *hire*; *merges*, *a cornsheaf*; *quies*, *rest*; *seges*, *standing corn*.\*

§ 74. (Inseras Femininis) You must place among Feminine words (*quæ claudunt is, x, aus, et as*) those which end in *is*, *x*, *aus*, and *as*, (*s cum consonante nexa*) in *s* immediately following a consonant, (*es æqualiter inflexa*) and *es* forming parisyllabic cases [that is, not increasing in the Genitive case Singular].

(Multa) Many Nouns (*quæ claudit is*) which end in *is* (*sunt*) are (*Masculini Generis*) of the Masculine Gender: *amnis*, *a river*; *axis*, *an axle*; *callis*, *a path*; *collis*, *a hill*; *caulis*, *a stalk*; *cucumis*, *a cucumber*; (*et*) and *follis*, *a leathern bag* or *bellows*; *fascis*, *a bundle*; *funis*, *a rope*; *fustis*, *a cudgel*; *finis*, *an end* or *boundary*; *ignis*, *fire*; *orbis*, *a circle*; (*atque*) and *crinis*, *hair*; *panis*, *bread*; *piscis*, *a fish*; *postis*, *a doorpost*; *ensis*, *a sword*; *sentis*, *a bramble*; *corbis*, *a basket*; *torquis*, *a chain*; *mensis*, *a month*; *torris*, *a firebrand*; *unguis*, *a nail* or *talon*; (*et*) and *canalis*, *a conduit*; *vectis*, *a lever*; *vermis*, *a worm*; (*et*) and *sodalis*, *an intimate companion*; *cassis*, *a net*; *cinis*, *ashes*; *glis*, *a dormouse*; (*et*) and *anguis*, *a snake*; *lapis*, *a stone*; *pulvis*, *dust*; (*atque*) and *sanguis*, *blood*.†

(Pleraque) Most Nouns (*quæ claudit ex*) which end in *x* (*Masculina sunt*) are Masculine, (*ut*) as *grex*, *a flock*; (*sed*) but (*manent*) the following remain (*Feminina*) Feminine; *nex*, *death*; *supellex*, *furniture*; *ilex*, *the scarlet oak*; *carex*, *sedge*; *lex*, *a law*.‡

(In *ix*) The following in *ix* (*Masculina sunt*) are Masculine: *fornix*, *an arch* or *vault*; *phœnix*, *the fabulous bird so called*; (*et*) and *calix*, *a cup*.§

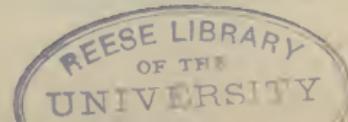
(In *as*) The following words in *as* (*Masculina sunt*) are

\* *Ales*, *a bird*, is Common.

† *Anguis*, *callis*, *corbis*, *cinis*, *pulvis*, *torquis*, are sometimes Feminine. *Casses*, *nets*, is Masculine; *cassis*, *idis*, *helmet*, Feminine.

‡ *Fæx*, *forfex*, *forpex*, *vibex*, are Feminine. *Cortex*, *imbrex*, *obex*, *pumex*, *rumex*, *silex*, are sometimes Feminine.

§ *Bombyx*, *onyx*, are Masculine; also the parts of the As in *x*, a *quincunx*.



Masculine: vas, vatis, *a personal surety*; gigas, *a giant*; elephas, *an elephant*; as, assis, *a Roman coin and weight*; mas, *a male*; (et) and adamas, *adamant*; (Neutra) the following are Neuter; vas, vasis, *a vessel*; nefas, *sin*; fas, *right*.

(Adde) Add (Masculinis) to Masculine words: mons, *a mountain*; fons, *a fountain*; (et) and torrens, *a torrent*; gryps, *a griffin*; (et) and pons, *a bridge*; rudens, *a cable*; hydrops, *dropsy*; dens, *a tooth*; (et) and bidens, *a two-pronged fork*; oriens, *the east*; occidens, *the west*; (et) and tridens, *a trident*.\*

(In *es*) The following in *es* (Masculina sunt) are Masculine; verres, *a boar-pig*; (et) and acinaces, *a scimitar*.

§ 75. (Neutra claudunt) Neuter words of the 3d declension end in *a* (et) and *e, ar, ur, us, c, l, n, t*, (et) and *t*.

(In *ur*) The following words in *ur* (Masculina sunt) are Masculine: furfur, *bran*; turtur, *a turtle-dove*; vultur, *a vulture*; fur, *a thief*.

(In *us*) The following in *us* (Masculina sunt) are Masculine: lepus, Gen. leporis, *a hare*; (et) and mus, *a mouse*.

(In *us*) The following in *us* (Feminina sunt) are Feminine: virtus, *virtue*; (atque) and servitus, *slavery*; juven-tus, *youth*; incus, *an anvil*; (atque) and palus, *a marsh*; senectus, *old age*; tellus, *earth*; (atque) and salus, *health*; (quibus *u*) in which *u* (manet longa) remains long (in transitu Genitivi) in passing to the Genitive case.

(Et) Also pecus, Gen. pecudis, *a beast*, (est) is (Feminini Generis) of the Feminine Gender.

(In *l*) The following in *l* (Mascula sunt) are Masculine: mugil, *a sea-mullet*; consul, *a consul*; sal, *salt*; sol, *the sun*; (atque) and pugil, *a pugilist*.

(Masculina sunt) The following are Masculine: ren, *a kidney*; splen, *the spleen*; pecten, *a comb*; delphin, *a dolphin*; attagen, *a woodcock*.

(In *on*) The following in *on* (Feminina sunt) are Feminine: Gorgon, *a Gorgon*; sindon, *muslin*; halcyon, *a king-fisher*.

§ 76. (In Quarta) In the Fourth Declension (tribuimus *us*) we assign the termination *us* (Masculis) to Nouns Masculine; (Neutris *u*) the termination *u* to Nouns Neuter.

(Quartæ in *us*) The following of the Fourth Declension in *us* (Feminina sunt) are Feminine: domus, *a house*; porticus,

\* The parts of the As in *ns* are Masculine; as, triens, quadrans.

*a porch*; *acus*, *a needle*; *Idus*, *the Ides in a Roman month*; (*atque*) *and manus*, *a hand*; *tribus*, *a tribe*; *nurus*, *a daughter-in-law*; *socrus*, *a mother-in-law*; *anus*, *an old woman*.

§ 77. (Inseres Femininis) You will place among Feminine words (Nomina Quintæ) Nouns of the Fifth Declension (in *es*) ending in *es*.

Dies, *a day*, (*est*) is (in Singulo) in the Singular Number (mas) Masculine (vel) or (Femininum) Feminine; (in Plurali Numero) in the Plural Number (*semper*) always (Masculinum) Masculine.

§ 78. (Singularis Numerus) The Singular Number (*deest*) is wanting (multis Nominibus) to many Nouns: (*ut*) *as*, *manes*, *the spirits of the dead*; *loculi*, *a purse*; *penates*, *household deities*; *cunæ*, *a cradle*; *thermæ*, *warm baths*; *nugæ*, *trifles*; *grates*, *thanks*; *arma*, *arms*; *viscera*, *bowels*; *magalia*, *cottages*; (*cum déum Festis*) with Festivals of the gods, (*ut*) *as*, *Floralia*, *the festival of Flora*.\*

\* The following is a further list of Substantives wanting the Singular Number: —

#### FIRST DECLENSION.

|                                                       |                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Angustiæ</i> , <i>straits</i> .                    | <i>Minæ</i> , <i>threats</i> .                       |
| <i>Argutiæ</i> , <i>refinements</i> .                 | <i>Minutiae</i> , <i>details</i> .                   |
| <i>Bigæ</i> , <i>a chariot and pair</i> .             | <i>Nundinæ</i> , <i>market-day</i> .                 |
| <i>Clitellæ</i> , <i>panniers</i> .                   | <i>Nuptiæ</i> , <i>a bridal</i> .                    |
| <i>Deliciæ</i> , <i>delight</i> , <i>daintiness</i> . | <i>Phaleræ</i> , <i>horse-trappings</i> .            |
| <i>Divitiæ</i> , <i>riches</i> .                      | <i>Prestigiæ</i> , <i>jugglery</i> .                 |
| <i>Epulæ</i> , <i>a feast</i> .                       | <i>Primitiæ</i> , <i>first-fruits</i> .              |
| <i>Excubizæ</i> , <i>a night watch</i> .              | <i>Quisquiliæ</i> , <i>rubbish</i> .                 |
| <i>Exequiæ</i> , <i>a funeral</i> .                   | <i>Reliquiæ</i> , <i>remnants</i> .                  |
| <i>Exuviaæ</i> , <i>spoils</i> .                      | <i>Salebrae</i> , <i>roughnesses</i> .               |
| <i>Facetiæ</i> , <i>pleasantries</i> .                | <i>Salinæ</i> , <i>a salt-work</i> .                 |
| <i>Feriæ</i> , <i>a holiday</i> .                     | <i>Scalæ</i> , <i>a staircase</i> .                  |
| <i>Habenæ</i> , <i>reins</i> .                        | <i>Scopæ</i> , <i>a besom</i> .                      |
| <i>Induciæ</i> , <i>a truce</i> .                     | <i>Tenebrae</i> , <i>darkness</i> .                  |
| <i>Inferiæ</i> , <i>offerings to the dead</i> .       | <i>Tricæ</i> , <i>intricacies</i> , <i>trifles</i> . |
| <i>Insidiæ</i> , <i>an ambush</i> .                   | <i>Valvæ</i> , <i>folding-doors</i> .                |
| <i>Lapidicinæ</i> , <i>a stone quarry</i> .           | <i>Vindiciæ</i> , <i>a claim</i> , <i>defence</i> .  |

Also *Calendæ*, *the Calends*; *Nonæ*, *the Nones of a month*; *Athenæ*, *Thebæ*, *Syracuseæ*, with other towns.

#### SECOND DECLENSION.

##### (a) Masculine.

|                                             |                                         |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>Cancelli</i> , <i>a lattice</i> .        | <i>Inferi</i> , <i>the Gods below</i> . |
| <i>Cani</i> , <i>white hairs</i> .          | <i>Liberi</i> , <i>children</i> .       |
| <i>Codicilli</i> , <i>writing tablets</i> . | <i>Posteri</i> , <i>posterity</i> .     |
| <i>Fasti</i> , <i>annals</i> .              | <i>Superi</i> , <i>the Gods above</i> . |
| <i>Fori</i> , <i>the hatches</i> .          |                                         |

(Multæ) Many Substantives (quæ) which (carent Plurali) are destitute of a Plural Number (apparent) appear (lectitantes) to students.\*

(Nonnulli Casus) Some Cases (absunt his) are wanting to these Nouns : fas, *right*; frugis, *fruit*; dapis, *a feast*; opis, *help*; vis, *force*; (et) and (multa) many Nouns (præter hæc) besides these (apparent) appear, (quæ) which (carent) are destitute of (Casibus nonnullis) some Cases.†

(b) *Neuter.*

Bellaria, *dainties*.  
Crepundia, *toys*.  
Cunabula, *a cradle*.  
Exta, *entrails*.  
Justa, *funeral offerings*.

Lamenta, *lamentations*.  
Munia, *duties*.  
Præcordia, *the midriff*.  
Tesqua, *wild places*.

Also names of People and Places, as Volsci, Delphi, Leuctra, &c

THIRD DECLENSION.

(a) *Masculine and Feminine.*

Antes, *the rows of vines*.  
Cervices, *the neck* (also sing. in poetry).  
Cœlites, *the Gods above*.  
Fides, *a lute* (also sing. in poetry).

Fores, *a door*.  
Lemures, *goblins*.  
Majores, *ancestors*.  
Minores, *posterity*.  
Proceres, *nobles*.

Also names of People, Places, &c., as Brigantes, Cyclades, &c.

(b) *Neuter.*

Brevia, *shallows*.

Mœnia, *city walls*.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Artus, *limbs*.

Idus, *the Ides*.

\* Among the many words which are not used in the Plural Number, notice : — (1) Materialia : as, aurum, *gold*; argentum, *silver*; lac, *milk*, sanguis, *blood*. (2) Abstracta : as, letum, *death*; senectus, *old age*; famæ, *hunger*; pietas, *piety*. (3) Collectiva : as, vulgus, *the common people*; supellex, *furniture*. (4) And the following : aer, *the atmosphere*; æther, *the sky*; humus, *the ground*; pontus, pelagus, *the sea*; tellus, *earth*; ævum, *time*; ver, *spring*; vesper, *evening*.

† Nouns defective in Case are numerous. Those having only one case in a Number are called Monoptota; those having two, Diptota; three, Triptota, &c.

(1) Many Nouns have only the Nom. and Accus. in one or both Numbers :—

(a) Greek Neuters in *os* in Sing. and Plur., as melos, melē.

(b) Fas, nefas, instar, nihil, nescio, opus (*need*), in Sing. only, having no Plur.

(Quæ efferunt) Those which form (Numerum Pluralem) the Plural Number (in *a* vel *i*) in *a* or *i* (sunt) are: frenum, *a bit*; carbasus, *canvas*; (et) and locus, *a place*\*; rastrum, *a rake*; sibilus, *a hiss*; (et) and jocus, *a jest*†; Tartarus, *hell*, (fit) becomes (in Plurali) in the Plural Number Tartara; (et) and cœlum, *heaven*; cœli.

(Quædam) Some Substantives (abundant Casibus) are

(c) Rura, mella, farra, tura, murmura, metus, situs, spes, &c., in Plur., which form Sing. fully.

(2) Many Verbals of the Fourth Decl. are used in Dat. Sing. or Abl. Sing. only; as, Dat. despiciui, derisui, ostentui, &c.; Abl. injussu, rogatu, permissu, promptu, procinctu, natu, &c.

(3) Various words are used in single Cases with an adverbial force; as, Abl. noctu, gratis, ingratia, fortuitu, &c.: Accus. infitias (*ire*), *to deny*; (ad) incitas (*redigere*), *to reduce to extremity*; venum (*tradere*), *to offer for sale*; suppetias (*ferre*), *to lend succours*: Gen. diecis (*causa*), *for form's sake*; nauci (*facere*), *to hold cheap*, &c.

(4) Observe especially the following Defectives: —

(Ambages, *a circuit*) has Abl. Sing. and full Plur.

Astus, *cunning*, Nom. and Abl. Sing., Nom. and Acc. Plur.

(Cassis, *a net*), Acc. Abl. Sing. (both rare), full Plur.

(Compes, *a fetter*), Abl. Sing., full Plur.

(Daps, *a feast*), has all but Nom. Sing., full Plur.

(Ditio, *sway*), has all but Nom. Sing., no Plur.

(Faux, *a jaw*), Abl. Sing., full Plur.

Fors, *chance*, Nom. Abl. Sing., no Plur.

(Frux, *fruit*), has all but Nom. Sing., full Plur.

Grates, *thanks*, Nom. Acc. Plur.

Inquies, *restlessness*, Nom. Sing.

(Juger. *an acre*), Abl. Sing., Dat. Abl. Plur.; other forms from jugerum, i.

Mane, *morning*, Nom. Acc. Abl. Sing., no Plur.

Nemo, *nobody*, Gen. nullius, Dat. nemini, Acc. neminem, Abl. nullo.

(Obex, *a bolt*), Abl. Sing., full Plur.

(Ops, *help*), Gen. Acc. Abl. Sing., full Plur.

Pondo, *pounds*, indeclin. Plur.

(Prex, *prayer*), Abl. Sing., full Plur.

(Repetundæ, sc. pecuniae, *extortion*), Gen. Abl. Plur.

(Spons, *inclination*), Abl. Sing.

(Verber, *a stripe*), Gen. Abl. Sing., full Plur.

Gen. vicis, Acc. vicem. Abl. vice, *change*. no Nom. S., full Plur.

Vis, *force*, Nom. Acc. Abl. Sing., full Plur., vires, virium, &c.

Frugi, the old Dat. of frux. is used Adjectively; as, homo frugi, *an honest man*. So nequam, *worthless*, is of all cases.

\* Loca, *spots*; loci, *spots or places in books, topics*.

† Ostrea, *an oyster*; Pl. ostreæ and ostrea

redundant in Cases: (*ut*) as, *domus*, *a house*; *laurus*, *a laurel*; *Œdipus*. \*

\* Declension of *Domus*: —

| <i>Singular.</i> |                       | <i>Plural.</i>             |
|------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| Nom.             | <i>Domus</i> .        | <i>domus</i> .             |
| Gen.             | <i>Domūs</i> .        | <i>domuum or domorum</i> . |
| Dat.             | <i>Domui</i> .        | <i>domibus</i> .           |
| Acc.             | <i>Domum</i> .        | <i>domus or domos</i> .    |
| Abl.             | <i>Domu or domo</i> . | <i>domibus</i> .           |

The Gen. *Domi* is used to signify *at home*; as, *domi meæ*, *at my home*.

*Laurus*, *cypressus*, *colus*, *ficus*, *pinus*, follow the 2d Declension, but also take from the 4th the Cases in *us* and *u*; *Œdipus*, Gen. *Œdipodis* and *Œdipi*. There are many Substantives with a two-fold Declension; as, *juventa* and *juventus*; *vespera* and *vesper*, *eri* (which forms Abl. *vespero*, *vespere*, or *vesperi*); *duritia* and *durities*, &c. Many Adjectives have also double forms, as *bijugus* and *bijugis*.

*Vas* makes Gen. Pl. *vasorum*, Dat. *vasis*. So *anciliorum* from *ancile*, *a shield*. Greek Nouns in *ma*, Gen. *tīs*, have Dat. Pl. *tīs*; as, *poema*, Dat. Pl. *poematis*.

The following Substantives change their signification in the Plural Number: —

| <i>Sing.</i>                               | <i>Plur.</i>                                                                                           |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Ædes, <i>a temple</i> ;                    | ædes, <i>a house</i> .                                                                                 |
| Aqua, <i>water</i> ;                       | aquæ, <i>medicinal springs</i> .                                                                       |
| Auxilium, <i>help</i> ;                    | auxilia, <i>auxiliary forces</i> .                                                                     |
| Bonum, <i>a good</i> ;                     | bona, <i>goods, effects</i> .                                                                          |
| Carcer, <i>a prison</i> ;                  | carceres, <i>a starting-place</i> .                                                                    |
| Castrum, <i>a fort</i> ;                   | castra, <i>a camp</i>                                                                                  |
| Cera, <i>wax</i> ;                         | ceræ, <i>a waxen tablet</i>                                                                            |
| Comitium, <i>the Assembly-place</i> ;      | Comitia, <i>the Assembly at Rome</i>                                                                   |
| Copia, <i>plenty</i> ;                     | copiæ, <i>forces</i> .                                                                                 |
| Epulum, <i>a sacred feast</i> ;            | epulæ, <i>a banquet</i> .                                                                              |
| Facultas, <i>a faculty</i> ;               | facultates, <i>means</i> .                                                                             |
| Finis, <i>an end</i> ;                     | fines, <i>boundaries</i> .                                                                             |
| Fortuna, <i>fortune</i> ;                  | fortunæ, <i>the gifts of fortune, a fortune</i> .                                                      |
| Gratia, <i>favour</i> ;                    | gratiæ, <i>thanks</i> .                                                                                |
| Hortus, <i>a garden</i> ;                  | horti, <i>a pleasure-garden</i> .                                                                      |
| Impedimentum, <i>a hindrance</i> ;         | impedimenta, <i>baggage</i> .                                                                          |
| Littera, <i>a letter of the alphabet</i> ; | litteræ, <i>an epistle, or literature</i> .                                                            |
| Ludus, <i>play</i> ;                       | ludi, <i>public games</i> .                                                                            |
| Lustrum, <i>a term of five years</i> ;     | lustra, <i>luirs of wild beasts</i> .                                                                  |
| Natalis, <i>a birth-day</i> ;              | natales, <i>origin</i> .                                                                               |
| Opera, <i>exertion</i> ;                   | operæ, <i>workmen</i> .                                                                                |
| Opis (Gen.), <i>help</i> ;                 | opæs, <i>power, wealth</i> .                                                                           |
| Pars, <i>a portion</i> ;                   | partes, <i>a part in a play</i> .                                                                      |
| Rostrum, <i>a beak</i> ;                   | rostra, <i>the pulpit for speaking in the Roman forum (adorned with the beaks of captured ships)</i> . |
| Sal, <i>salt</i> ;                         | sales, <i>wit</i> .                                                                                    |
| Tabula, <i>a board</i> ;                   | tabulæ, <i>writing tablets</i> .                                                                       |

§ 79.\* (Verborum prima conjugatio) the first conjugation of verbs, (cui *o*, *as*, *āre*, terminatio) the termination of which is *o*, *as*, *āre*, (fit *avi* in Perfecto) becomes in the Preterperfect Tense *avi*; (subjicit *atum* Supino) and makes its Supine end in *atum*.

(Hinc excipienda sunt) From this rule must be excepted (quae efferunt) verbs which form (*ui itum*) *ui* in the Preterperfect, and *itum* in the Supine.

## Present.

|                                 |
|---------------------------------|
| crepo, <i>I utter a sound</i> ; |
| cubo, <i>I lie down</i> ;       |
| sono, <i>I sound</i> ;          |
| domo, <i>I tame</i> ;           |
| veto, <i>I forbid</i> ;         |
| tono, <i>I thunder</i> ;        |

## Preterp.

|         |
|---------|
| crepui, |
| cubui,  |
| sonui,  |
| domui,  |
| vetui,  |
| tonui,  |

## Supine.

|           |
|-----------|
| crepitum. |
| cubitum.  |
| sonitum.  |
| domitum.  |
| vetitum.  |
| tonitum.  |

|                       |
|-----------------------|
| Seco, <i>I cut</i> ;  |
| frico, <i>I rub</i> ; |

|         |
|---------|
| secui,  |
| fricui, |

|          |
|----------|
| sectum.  |
| frictum. |

|                       |
|-----------------------|
| Juvo, <i>I help</i> ; |
| lävo, <i>I wash</i> ; |

|       |
|-------|
| jūvi, |
| lāvi, |

|        |
|--------|
| jutum. |
| lötum; |

(et vindicat) and it takes also *lävatum*.

|                       |
|-----------------------|
| Do, <i>I give</i> ;   |
| sto, <i>I stand</i> ; |

|        |
|--------|
| dědi,  |
| stěti, |

|         |
|---------|
| dătum.  |
| stătum. |

Mico, *I glitter*, (dat Perfectum *micui*) makes its Preterperfect *micui*; Plico, *I fold*; (dat Perfectum *plicui*) makes its Preterperfect *plicui*; (Mico fert) mico takes (nullum supinum) no supine; (*atum* dat vel *itum* Plico) Plico makes *plicatum* or *plicitum*.

§ 80. (Verborum altera conjugatio) the second conjugation of Verbs, (cui *eo*, *es*, *ēre*, terminatio) the termination of which is *eo*, *es*, *ēre*, (fit *ui* in Perfecto) becomes in the Preterperfect Tense *ui*, (subjicit *itum* Supino) and makes its Supine end in *itum*.

(Hinc excipiehda sunt) From this rule must be excepted (quae efferunt) Verbs which form (*evi*, *etum*) *evi* in the Preterperfect, and *etum* in the Supine; (ut) as,

## Present.

|                            |
|----------------------------|
| neo, <i>I spin</i> ;       |
| deleo, <i>I blot out</i> ; |

## Preterp.

|         |
|---------|
| nevi,   |
| delevi, |

## Supine.

|          |
|----------|
| netum.   |
| deletum. |

(Adde his) Add to these:—

|                       |
|-----------------------|
| fleo, <i>I weep</i> ; |
| pleo, <i>I fill</i> ; |
| oleo, <i>I grow</i> ; |

|        |
|--------|
| flevi, |
| plevi, |
| olevi, |

|           |
|-----------|
| fletum.   |
| pletum.   |
| oletum. † |

(cum Compositis) with their compounds.

\* Translate et, atque, ac, and; dat, facit, format, efficit, makes; suscipit, vindicat, takes; fit, becomes; stat, stands.

† Aboleo, Sup. abolitum: adoleo (or adolesco), Sup. adultum.

(His) In the following, (Perfectum) the Preterperfect Tense (stat in *di*) stands in *di*; (*sum* Supinum terminat) the Supine ends in *sum*:

| Present.                    | Preterp.  | Supine.  |
|-----------------------------|-----------|----------|
| prandeo, <i>I dine</i> ;    | prandi,   | pransum. |
| sēdeo, <i>I sit</i> ;       | sēdi,     | sessum.  |
| vīdeo, <i>I see</i> ;       | vīdi,     | vīsum.   |
| (Sed) But,                  |           |          |
| spondeo, <i>I promise</i> ; | spōpondi, | sponsum. |
| tondeo, <i>I shear</i> ;    | tōtondi,  | tonsum.  |
| mōrdeo, <i>I bite</i> ;     | mōmordi,  | morsum.  |
| pendeo, <i>I hang</i> ;     | pēpendi,  | pensum.  |

(His) In the following (Perfectum) the Preterperfect Tense (fit) is formed (in *si*) in *si*, (*sum* Supinum exigit) the Supine requires *sum*:

| Present.                                                            | Preterp. | Supine. |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|
| jubeo, <i>I command</i> ;                                           | jussi,   | jussum. |
| mulceo, <i>I soothe</i> ;                                           | mulsi,   | mulsum. |
| (Itidemque) and similarly,                                          |          |         |
| mulgeo, <i>I milk</i> ;                                             | mulsi,   | mulsum. |
| tergeo, <i>I wipe</i> ;                                             | tersi,   | tersum. |
| ardeo, <i>I burn</i> ;                                              | arsi,    | arsum.  |
| rideo, <i>I laugh</i> ;                                             | risi,    | risum.  |
| suadeo, <i>I persuade</i> ;                                         | suasi,   | suasum. |
| maneo, <i>I remain</i> ;                                            | mansi,   | mansum. |
| hæreo, <i>I stick</i> ;                                             | hæsi,    | hæsum.  |
| (Sic et) So also,                                                   |          |         |
| algeo, <i>I am chill</i> ;                                          | alsi,    | —       |
| fulgeo, <i>I shine</i> ;                                            | fulsi,   | —       |
| (Item) also,                                                        |          |         |
| urgeo, <i>I push</i> ;                                              | ursi,    | —       |
| (Sed) But (his) in these (Supinum) the Supine (deficit) is wanting. |          |         |

(Dant *si* et *tum*) These two make the Preterperfect in *si*, and the supine in *tum*:

| Present.                                                             | Preterp. | Supine.   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|-----------|
| Indulgeo, <i>I indulge</i> ;                                         | indulsi, | indultum. |
| torqueo, <i>I twist</i> ;                                            | torsi,   | tortum.   |
| Sed (But),                                                           |          |           |
| Augeo, <i>I increase</i> ;                                           | auxi,    | auctum.   |
| frigeo, <i>I am cold</i> ;                                           | frixi,   | —         |
| lugeo, <i>I mourn</i> } (dant) make luxi.<br>luceo, <i>I shine</i> } |          |           |

(Sed) But (non generant) these three latter do not form (Supinum) a Supine.

(Hæc) The following (volunt) will have (*vi suffici*) *vi* to be added (Perfecto) to the Preterperfect Tense, (*tum* Supino) and *tum* to the Supine: —

| Present                   | Preterp. | Supine  |
|---------------------------|----------|---------|
| cāveo, <i>I beware</i> ;  | cāvī,    | cautum  |
| fāveo, <i>I favour</i> ;  | fāvī,    | fautum. |
| fōveo, <i>I cherish</i> ; | fōvī,    | fōtum.  |
| mōveo, <i>I move</i> ;    | mōvī,    | mōtum.  |
| vōveo, <i>I vow</i> ;     | vōvī,    | vōtum.* |

(His) In the following (*ui stat*) *ui* stands (in Perfecto) in the Preterperfect Tense, (*tum Supinum terminat*) *tum* is the termination of the Supine :

| Present.                   | Preterp. | Supine. |
|----------------------------|----------|---------|
| doceo, <i>I teach</i> ;    | docui,   | doctum. |
| misceo, <i>I mingle</i> ;  | miscui,  | mistum. |
| sorbeo, <i>I suck in</i> ; | sorbui†, | sorptum |
| teneo, <i>I hold</i> ;     | tenui,   | tentum. |
| torreo, <i>I roast</i> ;   | torrui,  | tostum. |

(His) In the following (Præteritum) the Preterperfect (scribitur) is written (Passivè) Passively, (Præsens) the Present (Activè) Actively :

| Present.                   | Preterp.     | Supine. |
|----------------------------|--------------|---------|
| audeo, <i>I dare</i> ;     | ausus sum.   | —       |
| gaudeo, <i>I rejoice</i> ; | gavisus sum. | —       |
| soleo, <i>I am wont</i> ;  | solitus sum. | —       |

§ 81. (Verborum tertia conjugatio) the third conjugation of Verbs, (cui *o*, *is*, *ere*, terminatio) the termination of which is *o*, *is*, *ere*, (dat Perfectum) makes its Preterperfect Tense (variæ formæ) of diverse form; (*tum vel sum*) *tum* or *sum* (*stat*) stands (Supino) in the Supine.

§ 82. (*Bo, po, habent*) *Bo* and *po* have (*psi additum* Perfecto) *psi* to end the Preterperfect, (*ptum Supino*) and *ptum* the Supine : (ut) as,

| Present.               | Preterp. | Supine.  |
|------------------------|----------|----------|
| nubo, <i>I marry</i> ; | nupsi,   | nuptum.‡ |

(Tamen) But,

| Present.                 | Preterp. | Supine.    |
|--------------------------|----------|------------|
| rumpo, <i>I break</i> ;  | rupi,    | ruptum.    |
| bibo, <i>I drink</i> ;   | bibi.    | bibitum.   |
| strepco, <i>I roar</i> ; | strepui, | strepitum. |

(Sic declino *co, go, ho, quo*) I thus decline *co, go, ho, quo*; (*xi* Perfecto) *xi* in the Preterperfect; (*ctum Supino*) *ctum* in the Supine : (ut) as,

\* Paveo, pavi; ferveo, ferbui.

† Also sorpsi.

‡ Lambo, *I lick*, lambi: cumbo, *I lie down*, cubui, cubitum.

| Present.               | Preterp. | Supine. |
|------------------------|----------|---------|
| duco, <i>I lead</i> ;  | duxī,    | ductum. |
| sugo, <i>I suck</i> ;  | suxī,    | suctum. |
| rego, <i>I rule</i> ;  | rexī,    | rectum. |
| veho, <i>I carry</i> ; | vexī,    | vectum  |

(*Sco* jubet) *Sco* desires (*vi* subjici) *vi* to end (Perfecto) Preterperfect, (*tum* Supino) and *tum* its Supine: (ut) as,

| Present.                                                                | Preterp.   | Supine.  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|----------|
| cresco, <i>I grow</i> ;                                                 | crevī,     | cretum.  |
| suesco, <i>I am habituated</i> ;                                        | suevī,     | suetum.  |
| quiesco, <i>I rest</i> ;                                                | quievi,    | quietum. |
| nosco, <i>I know</i> ;                                                  | nōvī,      | nōtum. * |
| pasco, <i>I feed</i> ;                                                  | pāvī,      | pastum.  |
| compesco, <i>I restrain</i> ;                                           | compescuī. | —        |
| posco, <i>I require</i> ;                                               | poposci.   | —        |
| disco, <i>I learn</i> ;                                                 | didicie.   | —        |
| Ieo, <i>I strike</i> ;                                                  | ici,       | ictum.   |
| vineo, <i>I conquer</i> ;                                               | vīci,      | victum.  |
| linquo, <i>I leave</i> ;                                                | līqui,     | lietum.  |
| Parco, <i>I spare</i> ;                                                 | peperci, † | parsum.  |
| Spargo, <i>I sprinkle</i> ;                                             | sparsī,    | sparsum. |
| mergo, <i>I dip</i> ;                                                   | mersī,     | mersum.  |
| tergo, <i>I wipe</i> ;                                                  | tersī,     | tersum.  |
| Ago, <i>I do</i> ;                                                      | egī,       | actum.   |
| frango, <i>I break</i> ;                                                | fregī,     | fractum. |
| tango, <i>I touch</i> ;                                                 | tet̄gī,    | tactum.  |
| pango, <i>I covenant</i> ;                                              | pepīgi,    | pactum ; |
| (sed Composta) but its Compounds make - <i>pegi</i> , - <i>pactum</i> . |            |          |
| pungo, <i>I prick</i> ;                                                 | pupūgi, †  | punctum. |
| jungo, <i>I join</i> ;                                                  | junxi,     | junctum. |
| lego, <i>I read or gather</i> ;                                         | lēgi,      | lectum ; |

(compositum) when compounded (sæpè lexi dat) it often forms  
lexi. §

| Present.                | Preterp. | Supine.   |
|-------------------------|----------|-----------|
| Figo, <i>I fix</i> ;    | fixī,    | fixum.    |
| fingo, <i>I frame</i> ; | finxi,   | fictum.   |
| pingo, <i>I paint</i> ; | pinxi,   | pictum.   |
| stringo, <i>I tie</i> ; | strinxī, | strictum. |

(*Do* jubet) *Do* requires (*si* suffici) *si* to be joined (Perfecto) to its Preterperfect, (*sum* Supino) and *sum* to its Supine :

\* Of its compounds, agnosco makes Sup. agnitus ; cognosco, cognitus.

† Compareo, comparsi.

‡ Compounds of pungo make Preterp. punxi.

§ Of the compounds of lego, *I gather*, diligo forms dilexi ; intelligo intellexi ; negligo, neglexi. The others form lēgi, as colligo collegi ; so do the compounds of lego, *I read*, as perlego, perlegi.

| Present.                                | Preterp.         | Supine.  |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------|----------|
| lādo, <i>I hurt</i> ;                   | læsi,            | læsum.   |
| (Verum) But,<br>cedo, <i>I yield</i> ;  | cessi,           | cessum.  |
| (Sic) So,<br>illido, <i>I beat on</i> ; | illis <i>i</i> , | illisum. |
| divido, <i>I divide</i> ;               | divisi,          | divisum. |

(Flecte) Form (vertendo) by changing (*do* in *di*) *do* into *di* (quæ exeunt) those which end (in *ando*, *endo*) in *ando* *endo*. \*

| Present.                  | Preterp. | Supine. |
|---------------------------|----------|---------|
| pendo, <i>I weigh</i> ;   | pependi, | pensum. |
| tendo. <i>I stretch</i> ; | tetendi, | tensum. |

(tamen) but,

|                               |         |          |
|-------------------------------|---------|----------|
| findo, <i>I cleave</i> ;      | fīdi,   | fissum.  |
| scindo, <i>I cut</i> ;        | scēdi,  | scissum. |
| fundo, <i>I pour</i> ;        | fūdi,   | fūsum.   |
| tundo, <i>I hammer</i> ;      | tutūdi, | tusum.   |
| cudo, <i>I fashion</i> ;      | cudi,   | cusum.   |
| cado, <i>I fall</i> ;         | cecidī, | casum.   |
| cædo, <i>I beat or kill</i> ; | cecīdi, | cæsum.   |
| ēdo, <i>I eat</i> ;           | ēdi,    | ēsum.    |

Abdo, *I hide* ; addo, *I add* ; condo, *I store up* ; credo, *I trust* ; obdo, *I block up* ; perdo, *I lose* ; reddo, *I restore* ; edo, *I utter* ; prodo, *I betray* ; trado, *I deliver* ; vendo, *I sell* ; dedo, *I give up* ; (quæ) which (composta sunt a do) are compounded of do, *I give* ; (-didi, -ditum, efferunt) form *didi*, *-ditum* : (ut) as,

| Present.                | Preterp. | Supine.   |
|-------------------------|----------|-----------|
| edo,                    | edidi,   | editum.   |
| dedo,                   | dedidi,  | deditum.  |
| flecto, <i>I bend</i> ; | flexi,   | flexum.   |
| necto, <i>I twine</i> ; | nexi,    | nexum.    |
| pecto, <i>I comb</i> ;  | pexi †,  | pexum.    |
| peto, <i>I seek</i> ;   | petivi,  | petitum.  |
| meto, <i>I mow</i> ;    | messui,  | messum.   |
| mitto, <i>I send</i> ;  | misi,    | missum.   |
| verto, <i>I turn</i> ;  | verti,   | versum. ‡ |

(Verbum) A verb (quod fit a sisto) which is formed from sisto (sufficit *-st̄ti* Perfecto) joins to its Preterperfect *-st̄ti*.

§ 83. (*So, sivi, situm, fit*) *So* makes *sivi, situm*; (*sic* formatur) thus is formed :—

\* As scando, scandi, scansum ; defendo, defendi, defensum.

† Also, nexui, pexui.

‡ Sterto, *I snore*, stertui.

| Present.                     | Preterp.   | Supine.       |
|------------------------------|------------|---------------|
| arcesso, <i>I send for</i> ; | arcessivi, | arcessitum.   |
| lacesto, <i>I provoke</i> ;  | lacessivi, | lacecessitum. |
| viso, <i>I visit</i> ;       | visi,      | —             |
| pinso, <i>I pound</i> ;      | pinsui,    | pistum.*      |

§ 84. *Texo*, *I weave*, (stat) stands (unum in *xo*) the only verb in *xo*, (quod vindicat) which takes *texui*, *textum*.

§ 85. *Lo, lui, tum* : (sic flectitur) thus is formed

| Present.                    | Preterp.  | Supine.    |
|-----------------------------|-----------|------------|
| Consulo, <i>I consult</i> ; | consului, | consultum. |
| occulo, <i>I hide</i> ;     | occului,  | occultum.  |
| (Sed) But,                  |           |            |
| colo, <i>I cultivate</i> ;  | colui,    | cultum.    |
| molo, <i>I grind</i> ;      | molui,    | molitum.   |

(A cello verba cellui) Verbs compounded from *cello*, *I impel*, make *cellui* : (sed) but (conjugabis) you will form,

| Present.                        | Preterp.         | Supine.    |
|---------------------------------|------------------|------------|
| percello, <i>I strike</i> ;     | perculi,         | perculsum. |
| pello, <i>I drive</i> ;         | pepūli,          | pulsum.    |
| vello, <i>I pluck</i> ;         | velli and vulsi, | vulsum.    |
| fallo, <i>I deceive</i> ;       | fefelli,         | falsum.    |
| psallo, <i>I sing or play</i> ; | psalli,          | —          |
| sallo, <i>I salt</i> ;          | —                | salsum.    |

Tollo, *I raise*, (formatum) formed in the Preterperfect sustuli, (fit) becomes (in Supino) in the Supine sublatum.

(*Mo, mui, mitum fit*) *mo* forms *mui*, *mitum* ; (*ut*) as,

| Present.                             | Preterp. | Supine.   |
|--------------------------------------|----------|-----------|
| fremo, <i>I bellow</i> ;             | fremui,  | fremitum. |
| gemo, <i>I groan</i> ;               | gemui,   | gemitum.  |
| tremo, <i>I tremble</i> ;            | tremui,  | —         |
| (Supino carens) Which has no supine. |          |           |
| como, <i>I deck</i> ;                | comsi,   | eomtum.   |
| promo, <i>I produce</i> ;            | promsi,  | promtum.  |
| (Sic flectuntur) So are formed,      |          |           |
| sumo, <i>I take</i> ;                | sumsi,   | sumtum.   |
| demo, <i>I take away</i> ;           | densi,   | demtum.   |
| (Sed) But,                           |          |           |
| emo, <i>I buy</i> ;                  | ēmi,     | emtum.    |
| premo, <i>I press</i> ;              | pressi,  | pressum.  |

(Latini) Latin writers (sæpè ponunt *p*) often interpose *p* (inter *m* et *s* vel *t*) between *m* and *s* or *t*. (Sic fiunt) Thus are formed sumpsi, dempsi, demptum, comptum, promptum, sumptum, emptum, &c.

\* Also pinsum.

| Present.                                                        | Preterp.          | Supine.   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------|
| <b>Cano, I sing;</b>                                            | cecini,           | cantum;   |
| (composita) its compounds make <i>-cinui</i> , <i>-centum</i> . |                   |           |
| pono, <i>I place</i> ;                                          | posui,            | positum.  |
| gigno, <i>I beget</i> ;                                         | genui,            | genitum.  |
| temno, <i>I despise</i> ;                                       | temsi, or tempsi, | temtum.   |
| sterno, <i>I strew</i> ;                                        | stravi,           | stratum.  |
| sperno, <i>I despise</i> ;                                      | sprevi,           | spretum.  |
| cerno, <i>I discern</i> ;                                       | crevi,            | cretum.   |
| lino, <i>I anoint</i> ;                                         | lēvi,             | lītum.    |
| sino, <i>I allow</i> ;                                          | sīvi,             | sītum.    |
| verro, <i>I brush</i> ;                                         | verri,            | versum.   |
| curro, <i>I run</i> ;                                           | cucurri,          | cursum.   |
| quāero, <i>I seek</i> ;                                         | quāsivi,          | quāsitus. |
| tero, <i>I rub</i> ;                                            | trivi,            | tritum.   |
| uro, <i>I burn</i> ;                                            | ussi,             | ustum.    |
| gero, <i>I carry on</i> ;                                       | gessi,            | gestum.   |
| fero, <i>I bear</i> ,                                           | tuli,             | latum.    |
| sero, <i>I sow, or plant</i> ;                                  | sevi,             | sātum.    |

Sero (dat) makes serui, sertum, (si stat) if it stands (cum vi nec-tendi) with the meaning of joining.

### § 86.

|                                                           |         |          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------|----------|
| Facio, <i>I make</i> ;                                    | fecī,   | factum.  |
| jacio, <i>I cast</i> ;                                    | jeci,   | jactum.  |
| (Dant a lacio) Compounds of                               |         |          |
| lacio, <i>I tice</i> ; make                               | lexi,   | lectum.* |
| (Et a specio) and compounds of                            |         |          |
| specio, <i>I spy</i> ;                                    | spexi,  | spectum. |
| fodio, <i>I dig</i> ;                                     | fōdi,   | fossum.  |
| fugio, <i>I fly</i> ;                                     | fūgi,   | fūgitum. |
| capio, <i>I take</i> ;                                    | cēpi,   | captum.  |
| rapio, <i>I snatch</i> ;                                  | rapui,  | raptum.  |
| pario, <i>I bring forth</i> ;                             | peperi, | partum.† |
| eupio, <i>I desire</i> ;                                  | cupivi, | cupitum. |
| quatio, <i>I shake</i> ;                                  | —       | quassum. |
| (Sed) But (in Compositis) in the Compounds (dat) it forms |         |          |
| <i>-cussum</i> .                                          |         |          |

### § 87. (*Uo* format) *Uo* forms *ui*, *utum*: (ut) as,

| Present.                                                            | Preterp. | Supine.    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|------------|
| tribuo, <i>I afford</i> ;                                           | tribui,  | tributum.‡ |
| (Vo inflectit) <i>Vo</i> forms <i>vi</i> and <i>utum</i> : (ut) as, |          |            |
| solvo, <i>I loose, or pay</i> ;                                     | solvi,   | solutum.   |
| volvo, <i>I roll</i> ;                                              | volvi,   | volutum.   |

\* As allicio, allexi: but elicio, elicui, elicitum.

† Fut. Part. pariturus.

‡ Ruo, Sup. rūtum; Fut. Part. ruiturus.

(Tamen) but,

| Present.                   | Preterp. | Supine.    |
|----------------------------|----------|------------|
| Fluo, <i>I flow</i> ;      | fluxi,   | fluxum.    |
| struo, <i>I build</i> ;    | struxi,  | structum.  |
| vivo, <i>I live</i> ;      | vixi,    | victum.    |
| stinguo, <i>I quench</i> ; | stinxi,  | stinetum.* |

§ 88. (Verborum quarta conjugatio) the fourth conjugation of Verbs, (cui *io*, *is*, *ire*, terminatio) the termination of which is *io*, *is*, *ire*, (fit) becomes (in Perfecto) in the Preterperfect Tense *ivi*, (Supino *itum* sufficit) and makes its Supine end in *itum*.

| Present.                                                      | Preterp.           | Supine.    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|------------|
| Sancio, <i>I ratify</i> ;<br>(nec respuit) nor does it reject | sancivi, sancitum. | sanctum :  |
| vincio, <i>I bind</i> ;                                       | vinxi,             | vincutum   |
| fulcio, <i>I prop</i> ;                                       | fulsi,             | fultum.    |
| sarcio, <i>I darn</i> ;                                       | sarsi,             | sartum.    |
| farcio, <i>I stuff</i> ;                                      | farsi,             | fartum.    |
| amicio, <i>I clothe</i> ;                                     | amicui,            | amictum.   |
| salio, <i>I dance</i> ;                                       | salui or salii,    | saltum.    |
| At (but)                                                      |                    |            |
| singultio, <i>I sob</i> ;                                     | singultivi,        | singultum. |
| sepelio, <i>I bury</i> ;                                      | sepelivi,          | sepultum.  |
| venio, <i>I come</i> ;                                        | vēni,              | ventum.    |
| vēneo, <i>I am sold</i> † ;                                   | vēnii,             | —          |
| sepio, <i>I fence in</i> ;                                    | sepsi.             | septum.    |
| aperio, <i>I open</i> ;                                       | aperui,            | apertum.   |
| comperio, <i>I find out</i> ;                                 | comperi,           | compertum. |
| reperio, <i>I find</i> ;                                      | repperi,           | repertum.  |
| haurio, <i>I drain</i> ;                                      | hausi,             | haustum.   |
| sentio, <i>I perceive</i> ;                                   | sensi,             | sensum.    |

§ 89. (Flexeris) You must form (Deponentia) Deponent Verbs (ex regulis) according to the rules (Activorum) of Active Verbs : (nam) for (Præteritum Passivum) the Preterperfect Passive (est) is (Derativum) a Derivative (Supini) of the Supine.

| Present.                                                            | Preterp.       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| (1.) Reor, <i>I think</i> ;                                         | ratus sum      |
| misereor, <i>I pity</i> ;                                           | misertus sum.‡ |
| fateor, <i>I confess</i> ;                                          | fassus sum :   |
| (flecte sis) form (-fessus in Compesitis) -fessus in the Compounds. |                |
| (2.) Labor, <i>I fall</i> ;                                         | lapsus sum.    |
| utor, <i>I use</i> ;                                                | usus sum.      |

\* Only known in its compounds distinguo, extinguo.

† Veno is from venuim-eo, as vendo from venum-do.

‡ Also miseritus sum.

## Present.

loquor, *I speak* ;  
 sequor, *I follow* ;  
 nitor, *I strive*,  
 irascor, *I am angry* ;  
 queror, *I complain* ;  
 gradior, *I step* ;  
 patior, *I suffer* ;

(et) and (-pessus in Compositis) -pessus in its Compounds  
 ulciscor, *I avenge* ;  
 apiscor, *I acquire* ;

## (Sed) but

adipiscor, *I acquire* ;  
 proficiscor, *I go* ;  
 expurgiscor, *I awake* ;  
 obliviscor, *I forget* ;  
 comminiscor, *I imagine* ;

## (Sed) but

nanciscor, *I find* ;  
 paciscor, *I covenant* ;  
 morior, *I die* ;  
 nascor, *I am born* ;  
 orior, *I arise* ;

## Preterp.

locutus sum.  
 secutus sum.  
 nitus, or nixus, sum.  
 iratus sum.  
 questus sum.  
 gressus sum.  
 passus sum :  
 ultus sum.  
 aptus sum.

adeptus sum.  
 profectus sum.  
 experrectus sum.  
 oblitus sum.  
 commentus sum. \*

nactus sum.  
 pactus sum.  
 mortuus sum. †  
 natus sum.  
 ortus sum. ‡

(Quies Futura) The Future Participles of which last three Verbs  
 are moriturus, nasciturus, oriturus.

## (Quartae) of the fourth conjugation,

## Present.

Metior, *I measure* ,  
 ordior, *I begin* ;

## At (but)

exerior, *I try* ;  
 opperior, *I wait for* ;

## Preterp.

mensus sum.  
 orsus sum.

expertus sum.  
 opportus sum.

§ 90. (Flexeris) You must conjugate (Inceptiva) Inceptive Verbs (ducta a Verbis) derived from Verbs (ut Primitiva) as their Primitives; (sic) thus

## Present.

exardesco, *I begin to blaze* ;  
 obsolesco, *I grow out of date* ;  
 tremisco, *I begin to tremble* ;  
 rescisco, *I begin to know* ;

## Preterp.

exarsi (from ex, ardeo).  
 obsolevi (from obs, oleo).  
 tremui (from tremo).  
 rescivi (from scio).

\* Commisicor, and reminiscor (which has no Supine), are Compounds of an obsolete verb meniscor.

† Morior, Infin. mori, and sometimes moriri.

‡ Orior is partly declined after the 3d Conjugation, partly after the 4th. Pres. Orior, orēris, orītur, orīmur, &c. But Infin. Oriri; Imperf. Conj. Orirer.

So Potior, *I obtain*. Pres. Potior, potiris and potēris, potītur and potītūr, &c. Imperf. Subj. Potirer and potērer, potireris and potēreris, &c. Preterp. Potītūs sum. Infin. Potiri.

(*Ui terminus*) *Ui* is the termination (Perfecto) to the Preterperfect (factorum) of those formed (ex Nominibus) from Nouns : (sic) thus,

| Present.                        | Preterp.                           |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>evanescō, I vanish ;</i>     | <i>evanui (from e, vanus).</i>     |
| <i>consanescō, I get well ;</i> | <i>consanui (from cum, sanus).</i> |

(Plurima) Very many (carent Supinis) have no Supines ; (multis) in many (Perfecta) Preterperfects (non apparent) do not appear.\*

(Fūixeris) you must form (Impersonalia) Impersonal Verbs (ex regulis) according to the rules (Personalium) of Personals.

| Present.                               | Preterp.                         |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>pudet, it shames ;</i>              | <i>puduit.†</i>                  |
| <i>pœnitet, it repents ;</i>           | <i>pœnituit.</i>                 |
| But,                                   |                                  |
| <i>miseret, it affects with pity ;</i> | <i>miseratum est.‡</i>           |
| <i>libet, it pleases ; §</i>           | <i>libuit and libitum est.</i>   |
| <i>tædet, it wearies ;</i>             | <i>pertæsum est and tæduit.</i>  |
| <i>piget, it irks ;</i>                | <i>pigitum est and piguit.  </i> |

(In operibus Latinis) in Latin works (apparent) appear (lectitantibus) to readers (multa Verba) many Verbs

- \* The following are the only Inceptive Verbs which have Supines :—
- Abolesco, adolesco, obsolesco, exolesco, coalesco, congelasco, exardesco, concupisco, convalesco, indolesco, obdormisco, inveterasco, scisco, revivisco.

The following have neither Supine nor Preterperfect :—

Ægresco, arboresco, albesco, ditesco, dulcesco, grandesco, hebesco, herbesco, ignesco, incurvesco, juvenesco, mitesco, mollesco, pinguesco, plumesco, puerasco, silvesco, sterilesco, tenerasco, fatisco, augesco, hiseo, labasco, renidesco.

Most of the others have Preterperfects, but no Supines.

† Or puditum est.

‡ Or miseratum est.

§ Also written lubet. Its compound is collibet, collibuit, and collibitum est.

|| Add also licet, it is lawful, licuit and licitum est.

Pudet and licet have the Active Future Participles, puditurus, liciturus. Pudet, piget, pœnitet, have Gerunds and Passive Participles in *dus*, pudendi, &c., pigendi, &c., pœnitendi, &c.

Many Verbs have the 3d Person Singular used impersonally : as, delectat and juvat, it delights ; constat, it is acknowledged ; præstat, it is better ; restat, it remains ; appetet, it appears ; accidit, contingit, it happens ; sufficit, it is enough ; evenit, it comes to pass ; expedit, it is expedient ; tonat, it thunders ; pluit, it rains ; and numerous others.

(quæ carent Supinis) which have no Supines, (multa quæ Perfecto) and many which have no Preterperfect.\*

§ 91. (Converteris) You must change (*a* in *e*) *a* into *e* (horum in Compositis) in the Compounds of the following Verbs : arceo, *I exclude*; carpo, *I crop*; damno, *I condemn*; lacto, *I entice*; fatiscor, *I am weary*; fallo, *I deceive*; farcio, *I stuff*; jacto, *I toss or boast*; gradior, *I step*; patior, *I suffer*; partior, *I divide*; tracto, *I treat*; pario, *I bring forth*; patro, *I perform*; (atque) and cando, *I inflame*; sacro, *I devote*; spargo, *I sprinkle*; (atque) and scando, *I climb*. †

(Converteris) You must change (*a* in *i*) *a* into *i* (horum in Compositis) in the compounds of the following Verbs : ago, *I act*; cado, *I fall*; cano, *I sing*; frango, *I break*; habeo, *I have*; lateo, *I lie hid*; fateor, *I confess*; pango, *I*

\* The Verbs which have no Supines are : —

The Compounds of nuo and gruo (as abnuo, ingruo); the Compounds of cado (except occido); Neuter Verbs in -veo, as paveo; Neuter Verbs in -eo, -ui (except caleo, careo, doleo, jaceo, lateo, meroe, noceo, oleo, pareo, placeo, taceo, valeo); also, algeo, timeo, urgeo, lugeo, fulgeo, frigeo, turgeo, luceo, strideo, ango, clango, disco, posco, compesco, dego, lambo, mico, refello, metuo, psallo, respuo, tremo, sapio, gestio, ineptio, and some others.

The Verbs which have neither Preterperfect nor Supines, besides the Inceptives, are : —

Desiderativa in -urio (except parturio, esurio); also, ægreo, flaveo, caneo, hebeo, scateo, liveo, renideo, polleo, vegeo, humeo, aveo, lacteo, meroe, ambigo, furo, ferio, labo, vergo, pleeto, vado, reminiscor, diffiteor, ringor, medeor, vescor, liquor, liquet, and some others

† Arceo : comp. coerceo, exerceo.

Carpo . . . decerpo, excerpto, discerpo.

Damno . . . condemno.

Lacto . . . delecto, oblecto.

Fatiseor . . . defetiscor.

Fallo . . . refello.

Farcio . . . confercio, differcio, infercio, refercio.

Jacto . . . disjecto, objecto, &c.

Gradior . . . aggredior, congregdior, egredior, ingredior, prægredior, progredior, trausgredior, digredior.

Patior . . . perpetior.

Partior . . . dispertior, impertior.

Tracto . . . attracto, contrecto, detrecto, obtrecto.

Patro . . . impetro, perpetro.

Cando . . . accendo, incendo, succendo.

Sacro . . . consecro, desecro, execro, obsecro.

Spargo . . . adspergo, conspergo, disperso, inspergo, respergo,

Scando . . . adscendo, concendo, descendendo, transcendendo.

*fusten*; *salio*, *I dance or leap*; *statuo*, *I decree*; (*atque*) and *tango*, *I touch*; *capiro*, *I take*; *rapio*, *I snatch*; *sapiο*, *I am wise*; *facio*, *I do*; *jacio*, *I cast*; *lacio*, *I entice*; *placeo*, *I please*; *taceo*, *I am silent*.\*

(Excepta) The following are excepted : *perago*, *I perform*; *perplaceo*, *I please thoroughly*; (*et*) and *facio*, *I do*, (*mistum cum Adverbiis*) compounded with Adverbs.

(Convertito) Change (*a* in *u*) *a* into *u* (ex) in Verbs compounded of *calco*, *I tread*; *salto*, *I dance*; *quatio*, *I shake*.†

(Converteris) You must change (*e* in *i*) *e* into *i* (horum in

|               |                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| * Ago . . .   | comp. abigo, adigo, exigo, transigo, ambigo. But circumago, perago, satago : (-ēgi, -actum).                                                                    |
| Cado . . .    | accido, concido, decido, excido, incido, occido, procido : (-cidi, -casum).                                                                                     |
| Cano . . .    | accino, concino, occino, præcino, recino, succino (cinui, -centum).                                                                                             |
| Frango . . .  | confringo, diffringo, effringo, infringo, perfringo, præfringo, refringo : (-fregi, -fractum).                                                                  |
| Habeo . . .   | adhibeo, exhibeo, inhibeo, perhibeo, prohibeo. But posthabeo.                                                                                                   |
| Lateo . . .   | deliteo.                                                                                                                                                        |
| Fateor . . .  | confiteor, profiteor, diffiteor : (-fessus).                                                                                                                    |
| Pango . . .   | compingo, impingo, oppingo : (-pegi, -pactum).<br>But repango.                                                                                                  |
| Salio . . .   | adsilio. So circumsilio, desilio, dissilio, exsilio, insilio, præsilio, prosilio, resilio, subsilio, transilio : (-silui or -silii, -sultum).                   |
| Statuo . . .  | constituo, destituo, instituo, restituo, substituo.                                                                                                             |
| Tango . . .   | attingo, contingo, pertingo : (-tigi, -tactum).                                                                                                                 |
| Capiro . . .  | accipio, concipio, decipio, excipio, incipio, percipio, præcipio, recipio, suscipio : (-cepi, -ceptum).                                                         |
| Rapio . . .   | abripi, arripi, corripi, deripi, diripi, eripi, præripi, proripi, surripi : (-ripui, -reptum).                                                                  |
| Sapiο . . .   | desipio, resipisco.                                                                                                                                             |
| Facio . . .   | afficio, conficio, deficio, efficio, inficio, perficio, præficio, proficio, reficio, sufficio : (-feci, -fectum).<br>But benefacio, malefacio : (feci, factum). |
| Jacio . . .   | abjicio, adjicio, conjicio, disjicio, ejicio, injicio, objicio, projicio, rejicio, subjicio, transjicio : (-jxi, jectum).                                       |
| Lacio . . .   | allicio, elicio, illicio, pellicio.                                                                                                                             |
| Placeo . . .  | displaceo. But perplaceo, complaceo.                                                                                                                            |
| Taceo . . .   | conticeo, reticeo.                                                                                                                                              |
| Calco : comp. | conculco, inculco, proculco.                                                                                                                                    |
| Salto . . .   | adsulto, exsulto, insulto, resulto.                                                                                                                             |
| Quatio . . .  | decutio, discutio, executio, incutio, percutio, recutio, succutio : (-cussi, -cussum).                                                                          |

Compositi) in the Compounds of the following Verbs: egeo, *I want*; teneo, *I hold*; (atque) and emo, *I buy*; specio, *I spy*; sedeo, *I sit*; (atque) and premo, *I press*; (adde) add dedi, *I gave*; (atque) and lego, *I gather*; (adde) add steti, *I stood*; (atque) and rego, *I rule*.\*

(Sunt excepta) The following are excepted: relego, *I read again*; perlego, *I read through*; (et) and prælego, *I read publicly*.

(Si) If (mutato Simplici) the Simple Verb being changed (Composti Præsens) the Present Tense of the Compound Verb (sumsit *i*) has taken *i*, (sumet ē) it will take ē (in Perfecto) in the Preterperfect, (si) if (valet) it is able (fingere) to make the vowel (longam) long: (sic) thus,

| Present.                               | Preterp.   |
|----------------------------------------|------------|
| deficio, <i>I fail</i> ;               | defēci.    |
| projicio, <i>I throw</i> ;             | projēci.   |
| conspicio, <i>I behold</i> ;           | conspēxi.  |
| dirigo, <i>I direct</i> ;              | dirēxi.    |
| pergo (per-rego), <i>I proceed</i> ;   | perrēxi.   |
| surgo (sus-rego), <i>I rise</i> ;      | surrēxi.   |
| porrigo (pro-rego), <i>I stretch</i> ; | porrēxi. † |

(Composta) The Compounds (a) from quæro, *I seek*; cædo, *I beat or kill*; (et) and (a) from lædo, *I hurt*; (mutant) change (*æ* in *i*) *æ* into *i*. ‡

\* Egeo: comp. indigeo.

Teneo . attineo, contineo, detineo, distineo, obtineo, pertineo, retineo, sustineo: (-tinui, -tentum).

Emo . adimo, dirimo, eximo, interimo, perimo, redimo: (-emi, -emtum). But coemo, dēmo (for de-imō).

Specio . adspicio, conspicio, despicio, dispicio, inspicio, perspicio, prospicio, respicio, suspicio: (-spexi, -spectum).

Sedeo . assideo, consideo, desideo, dissideo, insideo, obsideo, præsideo, residueo: (-sedi, -sessum).

Premo . comprimo, deprimo, exprimo, imprimō, opprimo, perprimo, represso, supprimo: (-pressi, -pressum).

Lego, *I* } gather } . colligo, deligo, diligo, eligo, intelligo, negligo, se-ligo. The Compounds of Lego, *I read*, keep *e*.

Rego . corrigo, dirigo, erigo, &c.: (rexi, -rectum).

† This rule applies only where the Simple Verb has *e* in the Stem-syllable of the Preterperfect, as in the examples given. When the Stem-vowel is not lengthened in the Preterperfect, *i* is kept, as continui: also when the Stem-vowel of the Simple Preterperfect is not *e*, as illisi.

‡ Quæro: comp. acquiro, conquirō, disquirō, exquirō, inquirō, per-quirō.

Cædo . accido, concido, decido, excido, incido, occido, præcido, recido, succido.

*Plaudo, I applaud,* (convertit) changes *au* in *o*) *au* into *o* : *clando, I shut,* (commutat) changes (*au* in *u*) *au* into *u* : *obedio, I obey,* (solummodo) only (ex audio) compounded from *audio, I hear,* (dat *au* in *e*) changes *au* into *e.*\*

(Reduplicatio) The Reduplication (Simplicis) of the Simple Verb (exibit) will disappear (a Compositis) from the Compounds : (sic) thus (a) from *pello, I drive away, pepuli,* (fit) comes *impello, I impel, impuli.*

(Sed) But (Composta) the Compounds (a) from *disco, I learn* ; *posco, I require* ; *do, I give* ; (et) and (a) from *sto, I stand* ; (servant) keep the Reduplication. †

§ 92. (Præpositio *cum*) The Preposition *cum* (fit *con-*) becomes *con-* (quando stat compositum) when it appears in Composition.

*Ambi, re, se, sus, (et)* and *dis* (stant tantum) appear only (in Compositis) in Compounds.‡

(Præpositio) A Preposition (sæpe mutat) often changes (terminantem consonantem) its final consonant (sic) in such a way (ut fiat) that it may become (similis) assimilated (consonanti Simplicis) to the first consonant of the Simple Verb . (ut) as,

|                               |  |                       |
|-------------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| ad-fero (fit) becomes affero. |  | obpeto becomes oppeto |
| in-lino . . . illino.         |  |                       |

(Convertite) Change (*n* in *m*) *n* into *m* (ante *b* vel ante *p*) before *b* or *p* : (ut) as,

|                                |  |                            |
|--------------------------------|--|----------------------------|
| con-bibo (fit) becomes combibo |  | in-pllico becomes implico. |
|--------------------------------|--|----------------------------|

(Alia aliæ transferunt) Other Prepositions make other changes (quæ) which (longa sunt relatu) are long to recount.

Lædo . . . allido, collido, elido, illido.

(The *i* of these Compounds remains in the Preterperfect ; as, *acquisivi, occidi, elisi.*)

\* *Plaudo* : comp. *complodo, explodo, supplodo.* But *applundo.*

*Claudo* . . . *concludo, discludo, excludo, includo, intercludo, ocludo, præcludo, recludo* (-clusi, -clusum).

† *Disco* : comp. *addisco, condisco, dedisco, edisco* ; Preterp. -*didici*.

*Posco* . . . *deposito, exposco, reposco* ; Preterp. -*poposci*.

*Sto* . . . *adsto, consto, exsto, insto, præsto* ; Preterp. -*steti* : *circumsto, supersto* ; Preterp. -*steti*.

‡ *Ambi, around, about* ; *re, again, back* ; *se, apart* ; *dis, in different parts or ways.* Some grammarians think *sus* to be put for *subs*, *under* ; others form it from *susum*, for *sursum, up* ; which is more suitable to the sense of the words in which it is found, though the Participle *sublatus*, from *sustuli*, affords an argument for the first opinion.

(Do) I give (hoc unum) this single thing (notandum) to be remarked \* :

ab-fero (fit) becomes aufero. | ab-fugio becomes aufugio.

---

\* The following are the changes of Prepositions in Composition : —

(1) A, ab, abs, *from*. A, before *m* and *v*; as, amitto, avertio. Abs, before *c* and *t*; as, abscedo, absterreo: shortened into as before *p*, as aspello, asporto. Ab, before other letters. But note, aufero, aufugio.

(2) Ad, *to*. Unchanged before vowels, and before *h, j, m, v*; as, adeo, adhibeo, adjungo, admiror, advoco. Becomes ac before *qu*; as, acquiro. Assimilated before the other consonants; as, accedo, attero: but may remain unchanged before most of them; as, adfero or affero, adsumo or assumo.

(3) Con, for *cum, with*. Becomes com- before *b, m, p*; as, combibo, commoveo, compono. Assimilated before *l, r*; as, colludo, corrumpo. Becomes cō before vowels and *h*; as, coalesco, cohæreo; except comedo. Unchanged before the other consonants; as, concutio, convoco. Observe cognosco.

(4) E, ex, *out of*. Ex, before vowels, and before *c, p, q, s, t*; as, exeo, excludo, expungo, exquirro, excusculo, extraho. Assimilated before *f*; as, effundo. E before the other consonants; as, educo, eniteo.

(5) In, in, *into, towards, against, upon*. Becomes im before *b, m, p*; as, imbibo, immitto, impello. Assimilated before *l* and *r*; as, illudo, irruo. Unchanged before other letters; as, ineo, incumbo. Observe ignosco.

(6) Ob, *over-against*. Assimilated before *c, f, g, p*; as, occurro, offero, oggannio, oppono: unchanged before other letters. But note obsolesco, ostendo.

(7) Sub, *under (secretly)*. Assimilated before *c, f, g, m, p, r*; as, succumbo, sufficio, suggero, summoveo, suppono, surripio: but sometimes remains unchanged before these letters; as, subrideo, subruo. Unchanged before vowels and the other consonants; as, subeo, subraho.

(8) Trans, *across, beyond*. Becomes trā in a few Verbs; as, tradō, tranō. Tran before *s*; as, tran-scribo. Unchanged before other letters.

(9) Ambi, *around, about*. Becomes amb before vowels; as, ambeo. Am before *p*; as, amplector. An before *c, q, f*; as, anquiro, anfractus.

(10) Dis, di, *in different parts or ways*. Dis before *c, p, q, s, t*; as, discumbo, displiceo, disquiro, disseco, distraho. Assimilated before *f*; as, differo. Before *j* sometimes dis; as, disjicio: sometimes di; as, dijudico. Before other consonants, di; as, dimoveo. But disrumpo and dirumpo.

(11) Re, *again, back*. Unchanged before consonants; as, requiro. Becomes red before vowels; as, redarguo. Buttman considers red the original form of this preposition (as also sed of se, prod of pro); whence reddo for re-do; rē-cidit for red-cidit; rettuli, reppuli, repperi, for red-tuli, red-puli, red-peri.

(12) Ante, *before*; circum, *around*; de, *from*, (*down*); inter, *among, between*; per, *through*; præ, *before*; pro, *for, instead of* (*forward*); post, *after*; præter, *beside*; subter, *beneath*; super, *above*; se, *apart*; sus, *up*, are unchanged in Composition. Except the following instances: anticipo, circuit, intelligo, pellicio, pelluceo, pejero. Note prodeo and prodigo for pro-eo and pro-ago.

§ 93. A. I. Adjectives, Participles, and Pronouns, agree with their Substantives in-gender, number, and case : as, *No friend will-go to lost wealth.*

The-Substantive is-understood by Ellipse\* : as, *Most shun toil.* (Supply *men.*)

Neuter Adjectives perform the-office of-Substantives : as, *Death is last of-all things.*

II. A-finite Verb agrees with its-Nominative-Case in-number and person : as, *All vices war against nature.*

Sometimes an-Infinitive, or some Phrase, is-put for the-Nominative : as, *To-lie is not mine. — How long life is going-to-be, is uncertain.*

The-Nominative of-Pronouns is-expressed seldom : as, *We-lean always towards the-forbidden, and we-desire things-denied.*

Unless it-avail for-distinction or emphasis : as, *I expelled kings; ye bring-in tyrants.*

Impersonal-Verbs have not a-Nominative expressed : as, *It-irks and earnestly repents himself.*

The-Persons of-the-Verb *sum* (I am) often are-understood : as, *Nothing (is)-good except what (is)-honourable.*

The-Infinitive sometimes is-put-after the-Nominative : as, *Then pious Æneas began-to-tear-off the-robe from-his-shoulders.*

But the-Infinitive generally is-put-after the-Accusative, a-finite Verb going-before : as, *Men-report that-Homer was blind.*

III. The-Relative agrees with its-antecedent † in-gender, number, and person, but in-case it-is-construed with its-own sentence : as, *That is the-pleasantest friendship, which resemblance of-characters has-coupled.*

B. A-Substantive, Singular in form but not in-meaning, often has a-Verb, an-Adjective, or a-Relative, plural : as, *Part load the-tables with-viands. — The-Tegeatan youth come-up slow to-the-succour.*

Two or more singular Nouns generally have an-Adjective, Verb, or Relative, plural : as, *Hannibal and Philopæmen were taken-off by-poison.*

The-plural Verb agrees generally with the-Nominative of-the-worthier Person : but the-Adjective or Relative with the-Noun of-the-worthier Gender.

The-First Person is worthier than the-Second, the Second than the-Third : as, *If thou and Tullia are-well, I and Cicero are-well.*

In things having-life the-Masculine Gender is worthier than the-Feminine : as, *My (literally, to-me) father and mother are dead.*

\* Ellipsis (ellipse) is a Figure of Syntax which leaves out some word or words belonging to the regular construction of the Sentence.

† The Antecedent of the Relative is that word or those words to which the Relative is referred.

But in things without-life, the-Adjective or Relative will-be most-frequently in the-Neuter Gender: as, *Riches, honour, glory, are placed within your-view.* (literally, eyes.)

Copulative Verbs\*, *sum* (I-am) *fio* (I-become) *videor* (I-seem) *vocor* (I-am-called), with the-like, whether of-a-Finite or Infinitive Mood, have the-same case on-either-side: as, *A-long syllable placed-after a-short, is-called Iambus.—I-am-acknowledged a-royal boy by established tokens.—It-is-allowed you to-be happy!*

A-Verb, placed between two Nominatives, sometimes agrees with the-latter alone: as, *The-quarrels of-lovers are the-renewal of-love.*

A-Relative placed between two Substantives of-the-same thing†, often agrees with the-latter alone: as, *Thebes, which is the-capital of-Bœotia.*

To-a-Substantive, Pronoun, and sometimes to-a-Sentence, a-Substantive of-the-same thing‡ may be-put-in-Apposition in the-same case: as, *Riches, incentives of-evils, are-dug-out (of the earth).—We consuls are-wanting.—Let-him-reflect (that) an-orator is-being-formed, a-difficult matter.*

When two Substantives of-different things come-together, one is-put in the-Genitive-Case: as, *Reclining under the-cover of-a-beech-tree.*

§ 94. C. I. Verbs Transitive govern an-Accusative of-the-nearer Object: as, *Despise pleasures.—In-the-first-place, worship God.*

Some Neuter and Passive Verbs admit an-Accusative of-their-own operation§: as, *He-serves a-hard slavery.—Claudius played hazard.*

Some Verbs, especially those of-asking and *teaching*, have a-double Accusative: as, *We-all demand of-thee peace.—Why now should-I-teach thee letters, O-ass?*

Most of these-Verbs keep the-Accusative of-the-thing in the-Passive Voice: as, *She-delights to-be-taught Ionic movements.*

The-Accusative of-respect in-the-Greek manner is-placed-after Neuter and Passive Verbs as-well as Adjectives: as, *He-quivers with-his-ears and trembles in-his-limbs.—(She is) all dyed with-redness in-her-tender cheeks.—They-are naked as-to-their arms.*

\* See § 101.

† That is, which are both used to define the same person or thing; as, *Animal and hominem: Thebæ and caput.*

‡ By a Substantive of the same thing is meant one which expresses the same person or thing in another character or by another title, for the purpose of definition or explanation.

§ Called the Cognate Accusative

These Prepositions govern an-Accusative: *Ante* (before), *apud* (at, with, among), *ad* (to, at), *adversus* (over-against, towards), *circum* (around), *circa* (around, about), *citra*, *cis* (on-the-near-side-of), *contra* (against, over-against), *inter* (between, among), *erga* (towards), *extra* (out-of), *infra* (beneath), *intra* (within), *juxta* (near), *ob* (on-account-of, before), *penes* (in-the-power-of), *pone* (behind), *post* (behind, after, since) *præter* (beside, beyond, except), *prope* (near), *propter* (on-account-of, nigh), *per* (through, by), *secundum* (after, along, according to), *supra* (above), *versus* (towards), *ultra* (beyond), *trans* (across). To-these add *super* (above, over), *suhter* (beneath), and *in* (into, towards, to, upon, against, &c.), *sub* (under, about) if motion takes-place.

II. The-Vocative, the-Case of-one-called, is-governed by an Interjection either expressed or understood: as, *Son*, or, *O Son*.

The-Interjections *en* and *ecce* (lo!) govern the-Accusative and the-Nominative; *O*, *ah*, *heu*, *hem*, *proh* (alas), the Accusative, the-Nominative, and the-Vocative: as, *Lo a-wretched man!*—*Lo a-new disturbance and quarrel!*—*Alas pitiable boy!*—*Alas (for) human emptiness!*—*The-honour of-gods and men forfend!*—*Holy Jupiter forfend!*

*Hei* and *væ* (alas!) govern a-Dative: as, *Alas me wretched!*—*Woe-to-thee, pleader!*

III. Almost all Adjectives and Verbs, also Adverbs and Substantives, govern a-Dative of-the-remoter Object, for-the-sake of which something is or is-done: as, *We-wish to-be rich not only for-ourselves.*—*For-me in-yon-place (there-is) neither sowing nor reaping.*—*Numa chose virgins for-Vesta.*—*For-the-city he-is a-father, and for-the-city a-husband.*

Accordingly *sum* signifying possessively has a-Dative of-the-possessor: as, *For there-is to-me* (i. e. *I have*) *a-father at-home*; *there-is* (i. e. *I have*) *a-cruel stepmother*.

Very-many Adjectives, Adverbs, and Verbs govern a-Dative, sometimes even Substantives, by which is-signified advantage, communication, comparison, consecration, agreement, habit, help, and fitness, kindness, nearness, pleasantness, affinity, delivery, indulgence, demonstration, promise, trust, and narration, compliance, command, and whatever (is) contrary to-these; together with *nubo* (I-marry), *vaco* (I-am-at-leisure-for): other-instances will stand under the-First Rule: as, *Let-him-be serviceable to-his-country, useful to-the-fields.*—*A-poet is bordering-on an-orator.*—*A-multitude burdensome to peace, and hostile to-quiet rest.*—*It-is proper-to-live agreeably to-nature.*—*He-lends a-patient ear to-cultivation.*—*What he-gives to-another, he-takes-from himself.*—*(He) assured this to-me, and persuaded (me of it).*—*Fortune guarantees safety to-us.*—*Philosophy heals minds.*—*We-favour thee.*—*I-am-wroth-with thee.*—*The-conquering side pleased the-*

*Gods, but the-conquered (pleased) Cato.—Spare a-pious race.—A snake appeared to-Sulla sacrificing.—O beautiful boy, trust not too-much to-complexion.—Amassed money rules or serves each-man.—Wilt-thou-combat even a-love which-has-pleased?—Venus married Vulcan.—I-give-my-leisure always to-philosophy.—(There is) no trusting to-partners of-sorereignty.*

*Communis (common), similis (like), proprius (peculiar), par (equal), and alienus (foreign), and more-Adjectives, sometimes prefer a-Dative, sometimes a-Genitive: as, Middle-things are likest to-true.—Thinkest-thou (that) the-Gods are like thyself?—Activity of-mind is natural to-us.—To-speak ornamenteally is the-property of-an-orator.*

*Delecto (I-delight); juvo (I-help or please); jubeo (I-order); rego (I-rule); laedo (I-hurt); guberno (I-govern); are-joined to-an-Accusative contrary-to the-rule: as, The-camp pleases many.—Thou, O-Roman, remember to-rule the-nations with-thy-sway.*

*Tempero and mouleror (I govern or restrain) have a-Dative or an-Accusative: as, This-person restrains horses, who (will) not restrain his-anger.*

Verbs compounded with the-Adverbs *bene* (well), *satis* (enough), *male* (ill), and with Prepositions, especially these, *ad*, *ante*, *ab*, *in*, *inter*, *de*, *sub*, *super*, *ob*, *con*, *post*, and *præ*, generally govern a-Dative: as, *I-satisfy the-rest always; never myself (mihi ipsi).*—*Sicily formerly was-contiguous to-Italy.—The-giants waged war upon-the-Gods.—(We) often put-under hens the-eggs of-ducks.*

Many of these vary their-construction: as, *The-Helretii surpass the-remaining Gauls in-valour.—These faults exist in love.*

The-Dative of-the-Agent follows Verbal-Adjectives in *bilis*, and the-Gerundive in *dus*; sometimes Perfect Participles, rarely Passive Verbs; as, *He died lamented by-many good-men.—Chremes remains, who is to-be-entreathed by-me.—A-great citizen died and dreaded by-Otho.—Here I am a-barbarian, because I-am-understood not by-any-one.*

Passive Verbs and Particiles generally have an-Ablative of-the-Agent with the-Preposition *a* or *ab*: as *He-is-praised by these, he-is-blumed by those.—The-death of-Crassus was bewailed by many.*

The-Dative of-the-purpose is-added to-the-Verb *sum* and many others, either for a-Nominative or for an-Accusative: as, *The-ant is for-a-pattern of-great toil.—I-have-lost the-kernel: he-has-left the-shells for-pawn.*

Often a-double Dative is-admitted; as, *The-greedy sea is a-destruction to-sailors.*

IV. The-Genitive of-the-possessor follows almost all Substantives, likewise the-Verbs *sum* (I-am); *facio* (I-make); *fio* (I-become); by the-Ellipse of -Substantive as, *The-properties of-*

*individuals are the-riches of-the-state.—All-things which were the-woman's become the man's.—Scipio made Spain of-Roman dominium.*

*Est Impersonal is-put-before a-Genitive, if nature, token, office, or duty, is-understood: as, It-is (the-nature) of-any man to-err.—It-is (the-token) of-a-dishonest man to-deceive by-a-lie.—It-is (the-duty) of-a-young-man to-reverence (his) elders (majores natu).*

An-Ellipse of-other Nouns also happens before a-Genitive: as, *Hector's Andromache.* (supply wife.)—*Glaucus's Deiphobe.* (supply daughter.)—*We-had-come to Vesta's.* (supply temple.)—*I-see this-man's Byrrhia.* (supply slave.)

The-Personal Genitive concealed in the-Possessive Pronoun takes another Genitive agreeing-with itself: as, *The-commonwealth was preserved by-the-exertion of-me alone.—You-saw the-eyes of-me weeping.*

The-Genitive of-Quality follows Substantives: as, *A-boy of-ingenuous countenance and ingenuous modesty.* Quality is-put also in the-Ablative: as, *An-old-man with-long beard, with-rough hair.*

Partitive words, Numerals, Comparatives, and Superlatives, govern a-Genitive, with-which they-agree in-gender: as, *Many of-these trees were planted by-my own hand.—I-am-charmed with-each of-you.—We-follow thee, holy-one of-gods.—Sulla lost a-hundred and-twenty of-his-men.—The-elder of-the-Neroes.—Bravest of-the-Gauls.—Of-mortals nobody is-wise at-all hours.—Least of-all.*

These Genitives, *gentium, terrarum,* and others, follow the-Adverbs of-Place, *huc* (hither), *eò* (thither), *quò* (whither), *ubi* (where) and-the-like: as, *I-think we-must-migrate to-some-quarter of-the-world.*

Adverbs and Substantives signifying Quantity, also Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns, govern a-Genitive: as, *Enough of-equence, too-little of-wisdom.—Justice requires no reward.—He-preserves something of-his-ancient strength.—As-much of-credit as of-money.*

(These) govern a-Genitive: — Verbal-Adjectives in *ax*, some Particles put Adjectively, and Adjectives signifying knowledge, care, and desire, memory, fear, crimination, power, and those-which stand in-a-contrary sense; the-poets give many others: as, *Time devourer of-things.—A-mind covetous of-another's-property, lavish of-his-own.—The mind of-men is ignorant of-fate.—All-men hate one-forgetful of-a-benefit.—Innocent of-a-brother's blood.—Anger is without-control of-itself.—O late in-your-studies.*

Certain Verbs of-accusing, acquitting, condemning, reminding, govern a-Genitive of-the-thing: as, *We-condemn soothsayers (as guilty) of-folly.—Adverse circumstances remind us of-religious-duties.*

*Memini* (I-remember), *recordor*, *reminiscor* (I-recollect), *obliviscor* (I-forget), govern sometimes a-Genitive, sometimes an-Accusative-case : as, *God commands thee to-remember death*.—*Dying he-remembers sweet Argi*.

*Misereor*, *miseresco* (I-pity), are-joined to-a-Genitive ; as, *Thou-pities us not-at-all*.

V. Adjectives, Verbs, and sometimes Substantives, admit an-Ablative signifying the-causc, or instrument, or manner, or material, or respect, or any-soever limitation : as, *Dido wild with-horrid purposes*.—*The-bad hate to-sin from-fear of-punishment*.—*These strive to-defend with-javelins, those with-stones*.—*Wrong is-done in-two manners, by-violence or deceit*.—*We-consist of-soul and body*.—*Ennius mightiest in-genius, untrained in-art*.—*Mardonius, a-Mede by-nation*.—*He-is not aged, but yet already advanced in-life*.

*Fungor* (I-discharge), *fruor* (I-enjoy), *utor* (I-use), *vescor* (I-eat), govern an-Ablative, *potior* (I-gain), an-Ablative or a-Genitive : as, *I-will-discharge the-office of-a-whetstone*.—*When he-was-able to-use his-victory, he-chose-rather to-enjoy (it)*.—*The-Numidians feed-on wild flesh*.—*He-gains the-gold by-force*.—*The-Romans gained the-standards*.

Adjectives and Verbs which relate to *plenty* or *want* govern an-Ablative, many also a-Genitive; as, *Love is very-fruitful both in-honey and gall*.—*The-soul is never void of-motion*.—*It-is shameful to-be-dissolved in-luxury*.—*To-be-free from-blame is a-very-great comfort*.—*Rich in-wealth, rich in-embroidered furniture and gold*.—*The-king of-the-Cappadocians, wealthy in-slaves, wants money*.—*These things sate me of-life*.

*Opus* and *usus* (need) govern an-Ablative : as, *Where facts are-at-hand, what need is-there of-words?*—*My-son has need of-twenty minas*.

The-Adjectives, *dignus* (worthy), *indignus* (unworthy), *præditus* (endued), *fretus* (relying), *contentus* (contented), also the Verb *dignor* (I-deem-worthy), govern an-Ablative : as, *The-Muse forbids the-man worthy of-praise to-die*.—*Lentulus is endued with-uncommon modesty*.—*I-indeed deem not myself worthy of-such an-honour*.

The-Ablative of-Price follows Verbs and Adjectives, signifying *purchase*, *sale*, or *valuation*. as, *I buy not hope at-a-price*.—*Many an-honour is-sold for-gold*.—*The-victory cost the-blood of-many*.—*What is not needful, is dear at-a-penny*.

These Ablatives, *vili*, *parvo*, *minimo* (for a-little), *nimio* (for-too-much), *mugno*, *plurimo* (for-a-great-price), *duplo* (for-twice-as-much), and *dimidio* (for-half), are-used by Ellipse, the-word *pretio* being-understood : as, *Hunger costs little, daintiness a-great-deal*

The-value of-a-thing generally has a-Genitive, espccially those

elliptical (Genitives), *magni, parvi, minimi, pluris, and plurimi*: as, *A-wise-man deems pain of-no-account.—Virtue holds pleasure of-very-little-worth.—One eye-witness is of-more value than ten hearsay-(witnesses)*.

*Pluris, minoris, tanti, quanti, maximi, signify price as-well-as value: as, He-bought the pleasure-garden at-as-large-a-price as Pythius wished.*

The-Ablative of Difference is-joined to-Adjectives, Adverbs, and Verbs of Comparative and Superlative meaning: as, *The-sun is by-many times larger than the-moon.—Doctrines differing from the Cynics by a coat.*

Especially the-elliptic Ablatives: *altero* (by-as-much-more), *hoc* (by-this-much), *eo* (by-that-much), *quo* (by-how-much), *nihil* (by-nothing), and *nimio* (by-too-much), *dimidio* (by-half), *duplo* (by-twice-as-much), *quanto* (by-how-much), *tanto* (by-so-much), *paullo* (by-a-little), *multo* (by-much), *ali quanto* (by-a-good-deal): as, *Regret is so-much heavier as the-fault is greater.—By-so-much the-worst poet of-all as thou (art) the-best patron of-all.*

The-Ablative of-Comparison is-governed by Comparatives, whether Adjectives or Adverbs: as, *Silver is poorer than-gold, gold than-virtues.—I-think death lighter than-disgrace.*

*Quam* is-omitted elegantly after *plus, amplius, minus*: as, *He-inflicted on-me more (than) five-hundred blows.*

These Prepositions govern an-Ablative: *a, ab (abs)* (from, after, by, on-the-side-of), *absque* (without), *coram* (in-the-presence-of), *de* (from, of, concerning), *palam* (in-the-sight-of, with-the-knowledge-of), *clam* (without-the-knowledge-of), *cum* (together-with, with), *ex, e* (out-of, of, after, agreeably-to, on-the-side-of), *sine* (without), *tenus* (as-far-as), *pro* (before, for, according-to), *præ* (before, owing-to): to-these add, *subter* (under), *super* (upon, concerning), and *in* (in, upon, among), *sub* (under, just-at) if station occurs.

A-Preposition in Composition sometimes governs the-same Case which it-governed also out-of Composition: as, *They-thrust-off the-ships from-the-rock.—Now I-address thee, O-Africanus.*

Verbs of-departing, separating, repelling, removing, and the-like, govern an-Ablative, even omitting the-Preposition: as, *Thou-wilt-retire from-thy-wide-purchased parks and mansion.—The-Athenian people drove Phocion from-his-country.*

To-this-Rule refer the-Ablative after Verbs and Participles of-origin, such-as are *natus, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, ortus* (born, sprung, descended): as, *Atreus grandson of-Tantalus, son of-Pelops.—O-thou-sprung from-the-blood of-Gods.*

*Tenus* governs either a-Genitive Plural or an-Ablative, and is-placed after its Case: as, *The-dewlaps hang from the-chin as-far-as the-legs.—Antiochus was commanded to-reign us-far-as Taurus.*

*Cum* is joined to-the-Cases of-Personal Pronouns, and usually

of-the-Relative, so that of-two words one is-formed : as, *mecum*, *tecum*, *secum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*, *quicum* or *quocum*, *quibuscum*.

A-Substantive and a-Participle are-placed together in the-Ablative, which they-call Absolute : as, *Kings having-been-expelled consuls were appointed*.—*Cæsar being-on-the-point-of-coming, O-morning-star, restore the-day*.—*Obedience failing, government also falls*.

A-Substantive is-put also absolutely with a-Substantive or Adjective, where the-Participle of-being is-understood : as, *Nothing must-be-despaired*, *Teucer being-leader and Teucer omen-giver*.—*And now Hector was dust, his-brothers being-alive*.

§ 95. D. I. Definition of-time is-put in the-Ablative, if (the question) *when* or *within what time*, is-asked : as, *All wars rest in-winter*.—*Whatever befalls, we-shall-know in-two-days*.

The-use of-Prepositions in defining time is frequent : as, *The-sun makes two-turns in each year*.—*De die* (that is, *before the-close of-day*).—*De nocte* (that is, *before the-close of-night*).—*De multâ nocte* (that is, *long before the-close of-night*).—*Sub vesperum* (that is, *on-the-approach-of evening*).—*I-wait day after day*.

*How-long a-time ago, before, or after*, is stated sometimes by the-Ablative, sometimes by the-Accusative : as, *The-assembly had-been held already thirty days ago*.—*This was done almost two-years ago*.

Duration of-time, when (the question) *how-long* is asked, is-put most-commonly in the-Accusative, less-usually in the-Ablative : as, *Pericles presided-over Athens forty years*.—*The-Assyrians held empire one-thousand three-hundred years*.

II. The Place in which something is or is-done is-put in the-Ablative, either without a-Preposition or far more-commonly with the-Preposition *in* : as, *By-chance I-was-walking in-the-Sacred Road*.—*He-marries a-wife in Lemnos*.

The-name of-a-Town, in which something is or is-done, is-put in the-Ablative, provided it-be either of-the-third Declension or of-the-Plural Number : as, *Alexander died at-Babylon*.—*Philippus is at-Naples, Lentulus at-Pozzuoli*—*Bred at-Thebes or at-Argi*.

But it-is-put in the-Genitive, if it-is both of-the-first or second Declension, and of-the-singular Number : as, *What can-I-do at-Rome?*—*I-know-not (how) to-tell-a-lie*.—*He dwells at-Miletus*.

The-name of-a-Place is-governed generally by a-Preposition after a-Verb of-Motion : as, *He-marched into Gaul*.—*From Europe you-seek Asia*.

The-name of-a-Town, to which one-goes, is-put in the-Accusative usually without a-Preposition : as, *Regulus returned to-Carthage*.

The-name of-a-Town, from which one-goes, is-put in the-Ablative usually without a-Preposition : as, *Demaratus fled from-Corinth*.

But both Towns often take, and other Nouns reject a-Preposition after Verbs of-motion : as, *No rumour had-come from Brundisium*.—*Part-of-us will-come to-Scythia and Crete's rapid Oaxes*.

*Humus, domus, and rus imitate the-construction of-towns : as, Cudmus scatters on-the-ground the-teeth, mortal seeds. — Arms abroad are of-little-worth, unless there-is safe-counsel at-home. — Go home full, evening comes, go, she-goats. — I-see the-old-man returning from-the-country.*

III. The-Space of-Distance is-put more-commonly in the-Accusative, sometimes in the-Ablative : as, *I-was-distant from Amanus one day's journey. — The-temple of-Æsculapius is-distant from Epidaurus five thousand paces (i. e. five Roman miles).*

The-Space of-Progression is-put in the-Accusative : as, *Then having-dined we-crawl three miles.*

The-Space of-Dimension is-put most-commonly in the-Accusative, sometimes in the-Ablative, sometimes in the-Genitive : as, *The-walls of-Babylon were 200 feet high. — A-foot-and-a-half long, a-foot wide. — Make floors 10 feet broad.*

• § 96. E. I. *Libet* (it-pleaseth), *licet* (it-is-lawful), *liquet* (it-is-clear), and most Impersonal-Verbs, govern a-Dative : as, (*Let*) not (that) please thee which (is) not lawful.—*Savage bears agree among themselves.* (lit. *it-is-agreed to-savage bears.*)

*Piget* (it-irketh), *pudet* (it-shameth), *pænitet* (it-repenteth), *tædet* (it-wearieth), and *miseret* (it-pitieth), govern an-Accusative of-the-person, with a-Genitive of-the-thing, or with an-Infinitive : as, *Thou pitiest others ; for-thyself thou (hast) neither pity nor shame* (lit. *It-pitieth nor shameth thee.*)—*I am-sorrowed and wearied of-the-morals of-the-state. — It-repenteth them partly of-their-crimes, partly of-their-follies. — (He) whom it-repenteth to-have-sinned is almost innocent.*

*Delectat* (it-delighteth), *juvat* (it-pleaseth), *decet* (it-beseemeth), *dedecet* (it-misbeseemeth), *oportet* (it-behoveth), take an-Accusative : as, *It-delighteth me to-have-cultivated Helicon in earliest youth. — Least-of-all does-it-beseem an-orator to-be-angry. — It-behoveth a-law to-be brief.*

*Pertinet, attinet* (it-belongeth, relateth, or concerneth), take the-Preposition *ad* with an-Accusative : as, *It-concerneth the-commonwealth, that-I be-preserved. — Let-him-squander, waste, be-ruined, it-concerneth me nought.*

*Interest* (it-imports or concerns), *refert* (it-matters or concerns), admit a-Genitive : as, *It-imports all-men to-act rightly. — It-matters-in composition, what-things you-place-before what.*

With these Verbs are-joined instead of-Personal Pronouns, the-Feminine Ablatives : *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ*, the word *re* being-understood : as, *It-concerns both me and thee (that) thou be-well. — What matters-it to-me, whom I-am-a-slave-to ?*

To-these Verbs are-added the-Genitives of-value, *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, pluris* : as, *It-concerns both of-us greatly that I-should-see you. — This avails not more than if-you-should-carry water to a-sieve*

Neuter Verbs are-used Impersonally in the-Passive Voice for any persons : as, *A-shout-of-dissent-was-uttered by all* (that is to say, *all shouted-dissent*). — *What is-doing ? there-is-a-standing-still* (that is to say, *there-is-a-standing-still by us*, or *we-stand-still*).

II. Almost every Active Sentence may be-changed into a-Passive (sentence), so that the Nominative of-the-Active Sentence shall-become in the-Passive an-Ablative of-the-Agent.

(A.) If the-Verb of-the-Active Sentence has an-Accusative of-the-nearer Object, the-Verb in-the-Passive will-be Personal ; the-Accusative of-the-Active passing into the-Nominative of-the Passive : as,

ACT. *The-consul managed the-affair admirably.*

PASS. *The-affair was-managed admirably by the-consul.*

(B.) If not, the-Verb of-the-Passive-Sentence will-be Impersonal, and either will-stand without a-case, or will-govern the-same case which it-governed in the-Active : as,

ACT. *The-enemy fought steadily.*

PASS. *(There was) steady fighting by the-enemy.*

ACT. *We need medicine.*

PASS. *There-is-a-need by us of-medicine.*

Where there-can be no ambiguity, the-Ablative of-the-Agent is-suppressed after Passive Impersonals : as, *We-go (itur a nobis) into an-ancient forest.*

Hence it-appears that-the-same Cases are-governed by Passive Verbs as by Active, except only the-Accusative of-the-nearer Object.

*Vapulo* (I am beaten), *veneo* (I am sold), *exulo* (I am banished), *liceo* (I am bid for), *fio* (I am made), with some other-Verbs, are-construed in-a-Passive sense : as, *The-witness was-beaten with-a-stick by the-defendant.* — *I-had-rather be-plundered by a-citizen than be-sold by an-enemy.* — *I-am-tortured lest my-husband fall by an-incensed enemy.*

§ 97. F.I. The-Infinitive with the-Gerunds and Supines makes the-Substantive of-the-Verb.

The-Infinitive is-joined to-many Verbs and Participles, and in-poetry to-Adjectives : as, *To-envy occurs not to a-wise-man.* — *I-seem to-wander through holy groves.* — *They-use to-think long who wish to-perform great-things.* — *Both well-matched to-sing, and ready to-answer.*

For the-Accusative of-the-Infinitive the-Gerund in *dum* is-put after Prepositions : as, *A-short time is long enough for living well.* — *The-characters of-boys reveal themselves in playing.*

For the-Genitive the-Gerund in *di* is-put after Adjectives and Substantives : as, *I-am-desirous of-satisfying the-republic.* — *Thucydides surpasses all in-skill of-language.*

For the-Dative the-Gerund in *do* is-put after some Adjectives and Verbs : as, *Crassus could not be a-match for-the-argument.*

For the-Ablative the-Gerund in *do* is-put signifying Cause, Instrument, or Manner, or with the-Prepositions, *ab, de, ex, in, cum* : as, *By-doing nothing men learn to-do ill. — Jove we-name from helping.*

Gerunds (have) an-Active signification ; but if they-are Transitive, their construction may be-represented passively, indeed (is) oftener represented, by the-Participle in *dus*, which thence receives the-name of-Gerundive.

The-Gerundive Construction is of-this-kind, that the-Substantive is-drawn into the-Case of-the-Gerund, with which (Case) the-Gerundive must-agree : as, *We-extract from-the-earth fire for agriculture. — It-seemed an-opportunity for-making a-revolution.*

For signifying Necessity Passively, the-Gerundive is-used Impersonally in the-Neuter Gender : as, *You must consult for-the-properties of-the-citizens. — (We) must pray that (there) be a-sound mind in a-sound body.*

II. The-Supine in *um*, like an-Accusative, is-put-after Verbs signifying motion : as, *They-come to-see, they-come that they-may-be-seen themselves. — We-send to-learn-of the-oracles of-Phæbus.*

The-Supine in *u* is-put, like an-Ablative of respect, both (after) many Adjectives, and also (after) the-Substantives, *fas, nefas, opus* : as, *(Let) nothing shameful to-be-spoken and seen approach these doors, within which is a-boy. — Lo! ill-omened sight, a-serpent issues-from the-altars.*

III. Participles, Gerunds, and the-Supine in *um*, govern the-Cases of-their Verbs : as, *All having-dared monstrous wickedness and having-achieved their-daring.*

§ 98. G. Neuter Adjectives of-each Number sometimes are-put Adverbially, especially by poets : as, *He-will-be-a-slave for-ever, who cannot enjoy a-little. — He-returns backward fierce, looking sourly.*

Conjunctions Sociative and Dissociative connect like Cases, Moods, and Tenses : as, *He admires the-gates, and the-bustle, and the-pavement of-the-streets. — Virtue can neither be-snatched nor stolen-away.* Unless a-different principle of-construction interfere.

H. *Ne* the-prohibitive Conjunction is-joined to-an-Imperative or Subjunctive Mood : as, *Let-there be no delay (in performing) my commands. — Lay not the-blame on me.*

These-Conjunctions require the-Subjunctive : *ut (that) &c.*

These Conjunctions take the-Subjunctive or Indicative according-to the circumstances : *quum (when) &c.*

These Conjunctions generally take the-Indicative, unless the-nature of-the-passage require the Subjunctive : *quod (that, because) &c.*

*Quamvis* is-found with the-Indicative in historians and poets: as, *Although he-prevails not by-genius, he-prevails by-art.*

The Relative, *qui quæ quod*, governs the-Subjunctive, when it-signifies *because*, *although*, *in-order-that*, or *such-that*; as, *I pity you, because you-make this-man your foe.* — *I-sent a-letter by-which (I-might) both pacify and admonish him.* — *He-is one-who may be conquered.* — *Who is-there that hates not saucy boyhood.*

The-Subjunctive is-joined to-Pronouns and Particles of-interrogation, when-put subordinately\*: as, *He-knows-not even this, who himself is, whether he-is, or is not.*

Such-Interrogatives are: *quis* (who or what), *quantus* (how great), *qualis* (of-what sort), *qui* (who or what), *quot* (how many), *quotus* (which in order of number), *unde* (whence), *ubi* (where or when), *quando* (when), *quam* (how), *quamobrem* (wherefore), *quare* (wherefore), *cur* (why), *quomodo* (how), *num*, *ne* (whether), *ut* (how) *an* (whether), *utrum* (whether).

A-Relative or Conjunction, when it-is-subordinated\* to-an-In infinitive or Subjunctive, governs a-Subjunctive: as, *Cæsar wrote to me, that-it-was very-agreeable to-him that I-have-been quiet.* — *I-am-striving that Cæsar may-allow me to-be-absent, when anything is-moved against Cneüs in the-senate.*

A-Conjunction is-understood sometimes: as, *It-behoves (that) you-devote-yourself to-philosophy.* (supply *ut*.) — *I-will inquire (whether) a-poem be complete or not.* (supply *utrum*.) — *O-Icarus, thou-shouldst-have a-share in so-great a-work, did-grief allow.* (supply *si*, if.) — *Though-you drive-out nature with-a-fork, it-will-return continually.* (supply *etsi*.)

§ 201. ((Prosodia) Prosody (dissertat) treats (de quantitate) concerning the-quantity (syllabarum) of-syllables, (et) and (de legibus) concerning the-laws (metrorum) of-metres

1. (*Tempus*) Time (est) is (mensura) the-measure (eloquendæ syllabæ) of-uttering a-syllable: (quod) which (et) also (vocatur) is-called *Quantitas* (quantity).

(Vocalis observetur) Let-the-vowel be-observed; (quantitas syllabarum) the-quantity of-syllables (stat) depends (in quantitate vocalium) on the-quantity of-the-vowels.

2. (Habes) you-have (notas) these-marks (longi Temporis) of-long Time [-], (brevisque) and of-short-Time [-].

(Singulis longis) One long-Time (brevibusque binis) and two short (est) have (par eademque potestas) one and the same power.

(Illa vocalis) That vowel, (quæ) which (sonat) sounds (interdum) sometimes (brevis) short, (et rursus) and again (eadem) likewise (longa) long, (audit) is called (*communis*) common.

(H) The-letter-*h* (non habetur) is-not reckoned (consonans) a-

\* These expressions must be explained by the Master from the Larger Syntax.

consonant, (exercetque) and exercises (nullam vim) no power (**in** Prosodiâ) in Prosody.

§ 202. (Omnis diphthongus) Every diphthong (contractaque syllaba) and contracted syllable (longa est) is long : (ut) as (*præs*) a-surety, (*heu*) alas, (*gaudens*) rejoicing : (*coago*) I-compel (fit *cōgo*) becomes *cōgo*, (*nihil*) nothing (*nil*) becomes-*nil*; (*bōbus*) to-oxen (pro *bovibus*) is-put-for *bovibus*; (*mōmentum*) an-impulse (pro *movimentum*) for *movimentum*.

(At) But (tu corripies *præ*) you will-shorten *præ* (*præeuntem* vocali) going-before a-vowel.

§ 203. (Primaria) Primitives (dant) give (proprium tempus) their-own quantity (Derivatis) to-their-derivatives : (sic) thus (*sālix*) a-willow (format) forms (*sāliceta*) willow-grounds, (*pōnum*) an-apple (*pōmaria*) orchards.

(Tamen) Yet (in multis) in many-instances (fit aliter) it-happens otherwise : (sic) thus (*ārena āret*) sand is-dry; (sic) thus (*hōmo est hūmanus*) man is human; (sic) thus (*parva lūcerna lūcet*) a-little candle shines.

(Nec non) Moreover (Composta) Compound-words (sequuntur) follow (tempus Simplicium) the-quantity of-their-Simples : (sic) thus (*repūto*) I-consider (exstat) comes (a *pūto*) from *pūto*, I-think, (sic) thus (*immēmor*) unmindful (a *mēmor*) from *mēmor*, mindful.

(Tamen) Yet (sunt excepta) there-are exceptions : (sic) thus (*nubo*) I marry (format *pronūba*) forms *pronuba*, a bridesmaid.

§ 204. (Vocalis) A-vowel (*prævia vocali*) going-before a-vowel (corripitur) is-shortened : (ceu) as, (*principiūm*) a-beginning; (*prōhibe*) forbid.

(Sed) But (hinc excipe) except from-this-rule (multa Græca) many Greek-words : as, *Chaonis*, *Æneas*, *Clio*, *Myrtous*, *Enyo*.

(Priscus Genitivus) The-old Genitive (Primæ) of-the-first-declension (habebit) will-have (a longam) long a : (*terrāi*, *aulāi*) as-*terrāi*, of-earth, *aulāi*, of-a-hall : (sic) thus (Quinta) the 5th Declension (format *dīēi*) makes *dīēi*, of-a-day : (tamen) but (scribe) write (*rēi* atque *rēi*) *rēi* and *rēi*, of-a-thing, (*fidēi* atque *fidēi*) *fidēi* and *fidēi*, of-faith.

(Penultima) The last-syllable-but-one (Vocativo) of-the-Vocative-Case (vocis) of-a-word (in *aius* aut *eius*) ending in *aius* or *eius* (longa est) is long : (hac lege) by-this rule (sonantur) are-sounded (*Cāi*) O-Caius, (*Pompēi*) O-Pompeius.

(I verbi *fio*) The-i of-the-verb *fio*, I-become, (longa est) is long, (nisi) except (cum comes est *er*) when *er* follows it : (*omnia nunc fient*) all-things will-happen now (*fieri quæ posse negabam*) which I-said could (not) happen.

(Genitivus in *ius*) A-Genitive-Case in *ius* (*i* dat communem) makes *i* common : (ut) as (*ille*) he (*illius illiusque facit*) makes *illius* and *illius* : (sic) so (*totus*) whole, (*et*) and (*unus*) one, (*ipse*) self, (*que*) and (*iste*) that, (*nullus*) none, (*et*) and (*ullus*) any

(habent *iūs iūsque*) have *iūs* and *iūs* (in the Genitive): (*alteriūs*) the-Genitive *alteriūs* (semper breviat) always shortens *i*, (producit *aliūs*) the-Genitive *aliūs* lengthens-it.

(Nunc *Diana*) Sometimes *Diana* (feras agitat) chases beasts, (nunc) sometimes (*dia Diana*) divine *Diana*: (sic) thus (*dicimus*) we-say (*ōhe vel ōhe*) *ōhe* or *ōhe*, oh! (sed semper *ēheu*) but always *ēheu*, alas.

§ 205. (Vocalis) Any-vowel (erit) will-be (longa situ) long by-Position, (quam) which (bina consona) two-consonants (sequetur) shall-follow; (ceu) as (*pallor tristis*) sad paleness: (quam) or-which (voce in eadem) in the-same word (*j subit*) *j* follows (*x aut z*) or *x* or *z*: (sic) thus, (*Ajax*) Ajax, (*axis*) an-axle, (*Amazon*) an-Amazon.

(Excipe) except (*quadrijugus*) yoked-with-four-horses, (*bijugus*) yoked-with-two-horses, (quæ corripiunt *i*) which shorten the-*i*.

(Vocalis) A-vowel (vi curta suâ) short by-its-own power (com-munis erit) will-be common, (si) if (consona muta) a-mute con-so-nant (postponens liquidam sibi) with a liquid after it (sequetur) shall-follow: (sic) thus (rectè dices) you-will rightly say (*lugubre* melos) a-mournful melody (vel *lugubre*) or *lugubre*: (*dūplex*) double (sive *dūplex*) or *dūplex*: (*Tēcmessam*) Tecmessa (sive *Tēcmessam*) or *Tēcmessam*.

(*N post g*) *Gn* (semper dat longam) always makes a-long-syllable, (ut) as (*āgnus*) a-lamb (et) and (*ignis*) fire: (nec minus) and likewise (*m post g*) *gm*; (quod) which (*tegmen*) a-covering (et) and (*agmen*) a-troop (monstrat) shews.

(Si) If (altera syllaba) another syllable (diviserit) shall-have-divided (liquidam mutâ) the-liquid from-the-mute, (prior) the-former-syllable (longa semper) is-always long; (quod) which (*sub-ruit*) he-undermines, (*ab-lue*) wash-away, (monstrant) shew.

§ 206. (Syllaba prima) The-first syllable (Præteriti geminati) of-a-reduplicated Preterperfect (brevis est) is short: (ut) as (*pepuli*) I-have-driven-away, (*didici*) I-have-learnt, (*pupugi*) I-have-pricked, (*cecidi*) I-have-fallen, (atque) and (*cecidi*) I-have-beaten.

(Perfecta disyllaba) Preterperfects of-two-syllables (efficiunt) make (primam longam) the-first-syllable long: (ut) as, (*vidi*) I-have-seen, (*legi*) I-have-read, (que) and (*movi*) I-have-moved: (sed) but (excipis octo) you-except eight: (*bibi*) I-have-drunk, (*dedi*) I-have-given, (*fui*) I-have-been, (*fidi*) I-have-cleft, (*steti*) I-have-stood, (*stiti*) I-have-stopped, (*tuli*) I-have-borne, (*scidi*) I-have-cut.

(Que) also (Supina disyllaba) Supines of-two-syllables (ritè producunt) properly lengthen (primam) their-first-syllable: (ut) as (*visum*) to see, (*lotum*) to-wash, (que) and (*motum*) to-move: (sed excipis octo) but you-except eight: (*citum*) to-rouse, (*datum*)

to-give, (*itum*) to-go, (*litum*) to-smear, (*ratum*) to-think, (*rutum*) to-throw-down, (*satum*) to-sow, (*situm*) to-allow.

§ 207. (Produces) You-will-lengthen (pleraque monosyllaba) most words-of-one-syllable, (qualia) such-as (*me*) me, (*ver*) spring

(In *l, b, d, t,*) Words-of-one-syllable ending-in *l, b, d, t,* (corripiuntur) are shortened : (*ut*) as (*vel*) even, (*sub*) under, (*id*) that, (*et*) and (*stat*) he-stands : (*es*) thou-art (cum compositis) with its-compounds, (*ut*) as (*ades*) thou-art-present ; (*que*) and, (*ve*) or, (*quumque rogat, ne*) and *ne* when it-is-interrogative : (*fac*) make, (*nec*) neither, (*an*) or, (*in*) in, (*fer*) bear, (*per*) through, (*ter*) thrice, (*vir*) a-man, (*cor*) a-heart, (*quis*) who? (*bis*) twice, (*is*) he, (*et cis*) and *cis* on-this-side-of.

§ 208. (In A) Words-ending-in A (producuntur) are-made-long : as, (*frustra*) in-vain, (*que*) and (*intra*) within, (*que*) and (*para*) prepare.

(Sed excipe) But except (*casus rectos*) Nominative Cases (*et quartos*) and Accusatives : (*quales*) such as (*musa*) the-muse (*carmina canit*) sings songs : (*silvæ*) the-woods (resonant *Amaryllida*) resound Amaryllis : (*atque*) and (Vocativos plerosque) most Vocatives, (*ut*) as (*Oresta*) O-Orestes, (*Thyesta*) O-Thyestes : (*particulas*) the particles (*eja*) ho! (*ita*) so, (*cumque his*) and with these (*quia*) because : (*quæ breviant a*) which shorten *a*.

§ 209. (Corripiuntur in E) Words-in *E* are-made-short : (*ceu*) as (*lege timete carere*) fear to-be-without law.

(Casus) The-Cases (Primæ Quintæque) of-the-first and fifth-declension (requirunt *e longam*) require *e* long : (*ut*) as, (*Thisbe*) Thisbe, (*specie*) by-appearance : (*quæ derivantur ab illis*) and-words-which are-derived from them : (*ut*) as (*quare*) wherefore, (*atque*) and (*hodie*) to-day ; (*contractaque*) and contracted-words (*qualia*) such-as (*Tempe*) Tempe : (*Verba in eo*) Verbs of-the second-conjugation (mandantia) in-the-Imperative-Mood (primi numeri) Singular Number : (*ut*) as (*aude*) dare-thou: [(*sed*) but (*scribendi est æqua potestas*) we may equally write (*cavē sive cavē*) *cavē* or *cavē*, beware] : (*Adverbia*) Adverbs (*ducta*) derived (ex Adjectivis secundæ) from Adjectives of-the-second-declension, (*ut*) as (*miserè*) wretchedly : (*jungantur*) let-there-be-added (*ohe*) oh! (*que*) and (*fermē*) generally (*que*) and (*ferè*) commonly.

§ 210. (Producuntur in I) Words-in I are-made-long, (*ceu*) as (*dici*) to be said, (*que*) and (*orbi*) to-a-circle, (*que*) and (*doli*) deceits.

(Attamen) But (*deme hinc*) except from-this-rule (multos Dativos) many Datives (atque Vocativos) and Vocatives (Græcorum) of the Greeks : (*ut*) as (*Thyrsidi*) to-Thyrsis, (*Phyllidi*) to-Phyllis, (*Chlori*) O-Chloris : (*deme*) except (*sicubi*) if-any-where, (*neccubi*) lest-any-where, (*nisi*) unless, (*et*) and (*quasi*) as-if, (*queis*

brevis est *i*) which have *i* short. [(At) But (*michi*) to-me, (*ubi*) where, (*tibi*) to-thee, (*ibi*) there, (*sibi*) to-himself, (communem faciunt *i*) make *i* common.]

§ 211. (Producuntur in O) Words-in O are-long; (ceu) as (*virgo*) a-virgin, (que) and (*ultra*) spontaneously, (que) and (*juvo*) I-help.

(At) But (*puto*) I-think, (*scio*) I-know, (*nescio*) I-know-not, (corripiunt finalem O) shorten final O. (Adde) add (*modò*) only (et composta) and its-compounds, (*duo*) two, (*octo*) eight, (*ego*) I, (queis) to which (*junge*) join (*citò*) quickly. (O proprium claudens nomen) O at-the-end-of a-proper name (communis habetur) is-reckoned common, (ut) as (*Matho*) Matho: (sed) but (in Graecis) in Greek-names (*longa* est semper) it-is always long; (ut) as (*Argo*) the-ship-Argo. (Flaccus) Horace (habet) has (quædam communia) certain-words common, (Naso) Ovid (plurima) very-many: (corruption ætas) a-more-corrupt generation (poetarum) of-poets (addidit) added (plura) more-instances.

(Producuntur in U) Words-in U are-long, (sic) thus (*tu*) thou, (que) and (*dictu*) to-be-said, (que) and (*diu*) long.

(Corripiuntur in Y) Words-in Y are short; (sic) thus (poetæ dant) poets have (*chely*) O-lute, (*Tiphy*) O-Tiphys.

§ 212. (In C producuntur) Words-in C are-long, (ut) as (*illic*) there: (excipe) except (*donec*) until.

(Corripe in L, D, T,) shorten words-in L, D, T; (sic) thus (*Hannibal*) Hannibal, (*illud*) that, (*amarit*) he-loved.

(Corripiuntur in N) Words-in N are-short: (ceu) as (*culmen*) a summit. (At excipe) But except (Græca multa) many Greek-words (vocali prædita longâ) possessing a-long vowel, (ut) as, (*Hymen*) Hymen, (*Acron*) Acron.

(Corripiuntur in R) Words-in R are-short: (ceu) as (*calcär*) a spur, (*amabitur*) he-will-be-loved, (*Hector*) Hector.

(Tamen) But (producis) you-lengthen (Græca) the Greek-words: as (*cratēr*) a bowl, (*æthér*) the sky, (*aér*) the atmosphere.

§ 213. (Producuntur in As) Words-in As are long: (ut) as (*terras*) lands. (Excipe) Except (Græca) Greek-words (queis Genitivus *ādis*) which have a Genitive in-*ādis*, (ceu) as (*Pallas*) Minerva: (et excipe) except too (casus quartos) accusatives (cre-scentū) of-nouns-increasing, (ceu) as (*lampadas*) torches; (hi adde) add to-these (*anas*) a-duck.

(Producuntur in Es) Words in Es are-long; (ut) as (*sedes*) a-seat, (et) and (*videres*) you-might-see. (Excipienda tamen) But we-must-except (quæ Græci corripiunt) words-which the-Greeks shorten; (ut) as (*Troades*) Trojan-women: (excipias etiam) except also (*penes*) in-the-power-of, (excipiasque) and except (queis brevis est) nouns-which have short (penultima) the-last-syllable-but-one (crescentis Genitivi) of-an-increasing Genitive, (ut) as (*seges*) standing-corn: (at) but (*paries*) a-house-wall (semper pro-

ducitur) is-always lengthened, (atque) and (*pes*) a-foot (cum compositis) with-its-compounds : (que) and (*abies*) a-fir-tree, (que) and (*aries*) a-ram, (que) and (*Ceres*) Ceres.

§ 214. (Corripiuntur in *Is*) Words in *Is* are-short ; (ceu) as (*diceris*) thou-art-said, (*utilis*) useful, (*ensis*) a-sword.

(Obliqui casus plurales) The-oblique-cases plural (excipiuntur) are-exceptioned, (ut) as (*terris*) by-lands, (*vobis*) to-you : (etiam) also (persona secunda in primo numero) the-second-person singular (Præsentis) Present-tense (Quartæ) of-the-Fourth-conjugation, (ut) as (*audis*) thou-hearest : (composita a *vis*, *sis*) the-compounds of *vis* thou-wilt, *sis* thou-mayst-be ; (*malis*) thou-mayest-prefer, (que) and (*nolis*) thou-mayst-refuse, (que) and (*velis*) thou-mayst-wish. [(*Sed ris*) but *ris* (persona secunda) the-second person-singular (Præteriti et Futuri) of-the-Preterperfect and Future (Activæ vocis) of the Active voice (rectè communis habetur) is-properly held common ; (as) (*feceris*) thou-mayst-have-done, (*ad-dideris*) thou-mayst-have-added, (*tuleris*) thou shalt have borne.] (At produc nomina) But lengthen nouns (queis longa est) which have long (penultima) the-penultimate (crescentis Genitivi) of-an-increasing Genitive, (ut) as (*Samnis*) a-Samnite : (itidem) likewise (*Simois*) the-Simois, (que) and (*gratis*) freely, (que) and (*foris*) abroad.

§ 215. (Producuntur in *Os*) Words-in *Os* are-long, (ut) as (*ventos*) winds (atque) and (*sacerdos*) a-priest.

(Corripienda tamen) But we-must-shorten (quæ Græci corripiunt) words-which the-Greeks shorten, (ut) as, (*Phasidos*) of-the-Phasis, (*Argos*) Argos, (*epos*) an-epic-poem : (sic) so (*compos*) master-of, (et) and (*impos*) powerless, (*os*) a bone, (*exos*) bone-less.

(Corripiuntur in *Us*) Words-in *Us* are-short : (ceu) as (*tempus*) time, (*amamus*) we-love, (et) and (*intus*) within.

(Hinc excipe) Except from-this-rule (casus contractos) the-contracted cases (quartæ) of-the-fourth-declension, (ut) as (*artus*) limbs : (queisque longa est) and nouns-which have long (penultima) the-penultimate (crescentis Genitivi) of-an-increasing-Genitive : (ut) as (*tellus*) earth, (que) and (*incus*) an-anvil, (*juventus*) youth, (atque) and (*senectus*) old-age : (producta a Græcis) words-lengthened by the-Greeks, (ut) as (*Sapphûs*) of-Sappho, (atque) and (*Melampus*) Melampus, (atque) and (*Iesus*) Jesus, (nomen) a-name (venerandum) to-be-adored (piis cunctis) by-all pious-persons.

(Corripiuntur in *Ys*) Words in *Ys* are-short : (ut) as, (*chelys*) a-lute, (*chlamys*) a mantle, (*Othrys*) mount-Othrys, (*Erinnys*) a-Fury.

*Not.* (Ea syllaba) That syllable (quam) which (regula nulla) no rule (facit) makes (longam brevemve) long or short, (ducit tempus) derives its-quantity (ab auctorum scriptis) from-the-writings of authors.

§ 216. 1. Call a-raising of-the-voice in uttering syllables, *Arsis*, (*Ictus* accompanies this); and on-the-other-hand a-dropping of-the-voice is (called) *Thesis*. A-Foot is a-certain succession of-syllables, and *Rhythm* a-certain succession of-Feet. In-the-works-of poets the-name of-Rhythm is *a-Verse*: and a-certain order of-Verses call *Measure* or *Metre*: also a-certain part of-a-Verse is-called *Metre*.

§ 217. 2. A-long syllable following a-short is called *Iambus* (˘ -) : but if a-long-syllable goes-before a-short-one, that (is) a-*Trochee* (- ˘) : a-*Pyrrhich* will consist of-two short-syllables (˘ ˘) : a-*Spondee* will consist of-two long-syllables (--) : a-*Dactyl* is-formed by-a-long and two short-syllables (- ˘ ˘) : and an-*Anapæst* by-one long after two short-syllables (˘ ˘ -). Add to-these a-*Tribrach* formed by-three short-syllables. (˘ ˘ ˘).

You-will-say that-a-Rhythm, which a-Thesis begins, is-*ascending*; a-specimen of-which-kind thy verse, O-*Iambus*, will-give. On-the-other-hand, if-it-begins with *Arsis*, you-will-say it-is-*descending*; thou-makest such, O-*Dactyl*, and thou, O-*Trochee*.

One foot makes a-metre in Dactylic verse, and two-feet in others

That verse which wants one syllable for-completing its-metres, is-called *Catalectic*. That which wants two syllables for-completing its metres is-called *Brachycatalectic*. A-verse which (has) one syllable over, when-its-metres are-complete, is-called *Hypercatalectic*. That Verse, which has-nothing wanting or too-much, being-smooth and round, is-called *Acatalectic*.

§ 218. *Scansion*, which Figures adjust by-various art, distributes a-Verse according to-feet.

A. *Synalæpha* (Elision) cuts-off a-Vowel at the-end of-a-word, if there-shall-be a-vowel at the-beginning of-the-following word : (as) *I-love Phyllis before other-women : for she-wept that-I was-departing.*

Sometimes *Hiatus* violates the-law of-Synalœpha : (as) *Thrice they-endeavoured to-place Ossa on-Pelion.*

A-following vowel never elides *heu*, *O*, and *ah* (alas!).

*Ecthlipsis* cuts off a-vowel and *m* from the-end, if there-shall-be a-vowel at the-beginning of-the-following word : (as) *O the-cares of-men, O what-great emptiness there-is in things.*

§ 219. C. One-syllable wrought out-of two is-called *Synæresis*, as *deest* (it is wanting), *dein* (next), *aureos* (golden), *alvearia* (hives), *Thesei* (of Theseus) show.

In-the-works-of poets *I* and *U* sometimes take the-privileges of-consonants : (as) *Eridanus king of-rivers. The-wall totters from-the-battering-ram. Knees tremble. And Serians comb light fleeces.*

D. But one-syllable divided into two is-called *Diæresis*, which *Naiades* and yellow-haired *Suëvi* show to-you.

*U* is-put for *V*. you-will-see *silias* (woods) and *soliuit* (he-hath loosed).

§ 220. E. *Cæsura* ends words before the-end of-feet: (as) *Ye-Lights which lead in-heaven the-gliding year.*

A-vowel, which nature has-made short, sometimes is-made long in Arsis, Cæsura and Ictus helping: (as) *Poring-over the-breasts he-consults the-palpitating entrails.*"

F. *Dialysis* (Incision) separates both a-word and foot at-once: (as) *Ye-Lights which lead in-heaven the-gliding year.*

*Not.* The-last syllable of-a-verse is-held common.

§ 221. The-Hexameter is-formed by-six feet: of-these the-fifth is a-dactyl: a-spondee is-put in-the-sixth place: and either-of-the two is-found in-the-other places.

Gravity of-topics stations a-spondee in-the-fifth place.

Cæsura is-wont to-divide an-Hexameter, where the-third or fourth foot is separated at an-Arsis.

Sometimes the-only Cæsura of-a-verse is after a-Thesis: (as) " *Active, passionate, inexorable, fierce.*"

You-will-condemn a-verse which is-without any Cæsura.

A-word of-two-syllables or of-three-syllables, by custom, makes the-termination of-an-Hexameter, seldom a-word-of-more-than-two-syllables, seldom a-word-of-one-syllable, unless another go-before, closes the-verse.

The-last syllable of-a-verse (is) seldom absorbed: when this happens, the-verse (is) then called *Hypermeter*: (as) *In-all-things like Mercury, both in-voice and complexion, and yellow locks, and graceful limbs of-youth.*

§ 222. The-Pentameter has two parts: each commences with-two feet, which a-long syllable follows. A-Spondee and Dactyl enter the-first-part as-you-choose: the-second part rejoices only in-dactylic feet.

Cæsura separates the-first part of-a-Pentameter from-the-second: and Synalœpha is-excluded from that place: (as) *Although he-prevails not in-genius, he-prevails in-art.*

A-word-of-two-syllables makes by custom the-end of-a-Pentameter.

*Est* may-be thrown to the-end, if Synalœpha takes place: (as) *Thy letter was read with-unwilling eyes.* Or if a-word of-one-syllable goes-before, as in this: *If I-obtain those rewards by-my-zeal, it-is enough.*

Let-not a-word of-one-syllable be the-end of-the-first part, unless a-word of-one syllable go-before, as in this: *Yet there-is great hope in the-goodness of-God.* Or sometimes a-word formed of-two short-syllables: (as) *She secures to-Jupiter the-formidable sceptre without force.*

§ 223. The-Heroic Muse rejoices in-Hexameters alone: *Elegies* join-together Hexameters and Pentameters.

Elegiac-Distichs prefer containing a-complete sense: nor is-it-

good for-the-construction of-a-simple sentence to-be-divided into (separate) distichs.

§ 224. The goldfinch is a singing bird, but the acanthus blooms in the fields. The maple is in the woods ; the spirited horse gains an Olympic victory. The chief who carries arms on his shoulders is carried on the horse's flank. The wandering bee stores honey : Apis is an *Ægyptian* god. The gad-fly harasses horses ; an asylum is wont to receive the wretched. He who engraves carves ; he who keeps things hidden conceals. You will sing with your voice : he ! lead dogs, unless you are white on the temples. Twined nets are set : the brazen helmet shines. Surround your head with the helmet : boars are caught by nets. *Cedo* (I yield) makes *cessi* (Preterperfect), *cado* (I fall) *cecidi*, *cædo* (I beat) *cecidi*. A club strikes ; a nail holds firm, and a key opens. A maid carries a distaff, moist matter penetrates a strainer. The farmer tills fields, but strains thick wines. You strike close with a sword ; you fall by a spear thrown from a distance. That you may please a companion, put on, as a companion, affable manners. Comedians, seek the stage ; messmates, seek supper. Consult teachers, so you consult for yourself. Often has his own desire injured the man desirous of war. Songs are recited, while temples are being dedicated to the Lord. He trusted not to untie, who severed the knot with a sword. This man trains dogs to take them out soon against boars. If you have not money, you are destitute, and eat not delicacies. The sea often deceives one who relies too much on the clear surface. Fruits grow on trees, corn in the fields. The sun chases the clouds, and irrecoverable time flies. The swallow is a chirping bird : the leech swims, the reed is green in spring. By what a man sins, by the same the same man is soon punished. It is a difficult labour under the weight of which I sink. A boy's forehead is smooth, but a girl's tongue light. Seek hares in woods, elegancies in words. He is not bid for by me at a penny, who bids not for me at a penny. I had rather break with my jaw good apples than bad. Merchandise is sold, and reward comes gained by toil. Sylvia strokes with loving hand, while she milks her cow. You will be dear to the Lord, if you have sent gold to the wretched. Strive, little boy, whoever shalt desire to shine. She who is red, besmeared with paint, is forgetful of decency. He fell by base treachery, whom a friend killed. I wait for Caius, who is clad in dark dress. A mouth commands, but a bone is eaten with the mouth. It is a wife's part to bring forth and obey, a husband's to procure. Obedient children make parents rejoice. If you do not wish to be hanged, you will not refuse to pay yo'r debts. Play at ball : a javelin is hurled ; *pila* is a pillar. *Plāga* is for a net and a country ; *plāga* for a blow. People are the citizens of a city : poplar is a tree. If you can avoid, drink not more than two cups. The prow is the front part (of a ship), the stern the hind part, and the keel the lowest. Thrashin<sup>g</sup> machines bruise grain ;

burrs are wont to injure the fallow. A bail promises, but a vessel contains food. A bail kindly assures the person, but a surety money only. If you wish to cross the waters of the sea, use sails.

Trust, but first see ; he who trusts, and has not well seen, is deceived : therefore see, lest you be inveigled by trust. Tailors delight in shears, barbers in curling-irons : but a smith takes his red-hot work with tongs. The same fortune makes partners ; the same toil comrades ; the same duty colleagues : but school, play, the table, make dear companions. *Lira* is the furrow of a field : *lyra* (the lyre) touched utters notes. Let him not be secure, who is not safe from the enemy : you have banks by a river, shore by the sea. Men are old by time ; ancients lived formerly : I feign what is not, and dissemble what is. A hoof tramples : a talon tears, holds, clutches ; tenacious sedge grows in a pool, sea-weed in the sea. We properly intrench a camp, but hedge in a sheep-fold : a spear can be called rounded, a sphere round. Blot out what is written, but quench the flame of the lamp : the tongue tastes any food which has good flavour. The cuticle is on the flesh, the skin drawn from the body : man spreads a back : a beast has *tergus* (a back). A baker has an oven, stoves are warmed by a furnace : this mark of the grammarian was not known to me. Have you anything new ? Seek another : I know nothing. That chatterer relates what matters very little. If perchance you sit anywhere, and the seat is convenient to you, sit in that seat : perhaps a new one is hardly safe.



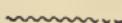
# APPENDIX.

---

## I. GREEK NOUNS.

1. Greek Nouns of the First Declension in *as, es, e*. See § 14., note.
2. Greek Nouns of the Second Declension in *os, on*. See § 15., note 3.
3. Greek Nouns Heteroclite, fluctuating between the Second and Third Declensions:—
  - (a) Sing. N. Pelē-ūs or Pel-eūs  
G. Pele-i or Pele-os  
D. Pele-o  
Acc. Pele-um or Pele-ă  
V. Peleū  
Abl. Pele-o.
  - (b) Achill-eūs or Achill-es  
Achille-i, Achill-i, Achill-is,  
or Achille-os  
Achill-i  
Achill-em, Achill-en, or Achill-le-a  
Achill-eu or Achill-ē  
Achill-e.
- (c) Sing. N. Thucydid-es  
G. Thucydid-is or Thucydid-i  
D. Thucydid-i  
Acc. Thucydid-em or Thucydid-en  
V. Thucydid-e or Thucydid-es  
Abl. Thucydid-e.
- (d) Pericl-es  
Pericl-is or Pericl-i  
Pericl-i  
Pericl-em or Pericle-a  
Pericl-es  
Pericl-e.
4. Greek Nouns entirely of the Third Declension:—
  - (a) Sing. N. Thal-es  
G. Thal-is or Thalet-is  
D. Thal-i or Thalet-i  
Acc. Thal-em, Thal-en, or Thal-eta  
V. Thal-e or Thal-es  
Abl. Thal-ē or Thalet-ĕ.
  - (b) Sing. N. Ech-o  
G. Ech-us  
D. Ech-o  
Acc. Ech-o  
V. Ech-o  
Abl. Echo
  - (c) Sapph-o  
Sapph-us or Sapphon-is  
Sapph-o or Sapphon-i  
Sapph-o or Sapphon-eta  
Sapph-o  
Sapph-o or Sapphon-ă.

|               |                               |     |                                      |
|---------------|-------------------------------|-----|--------------------------------------|
| (d) Sing. N.  | Memn-on                       | (e) | Æth-er                               |
| G.            | Memnon-is                     |     | Æther-is                             |
| D.            | Memnon-i                      |     | Æther-i                              |
| Acc.          | Memnon-em or Mem-<br>non-a    |     | Æther-em or Æther-a                  |
| Abl.          | Memnon-ꝑ.                     |     | Æther-ꝑ.                             |
| (f.) Sing. N. | Thyrs-is                      | (g) | Tiber-is (Roman word.)               |
| G.            | Thyrsid-is or Thyr-<br>sid-os |     | Tiber-is                             |
| D.            | Thyrsid-ꝑ                     |     | Tiber-i                              |
| Acc.          | Thyrs-in or Thyr-<br>sid-a    |     | Tiber-im                             |
| V.            | Thyrs-ꝑ                       |     | Tiberis                              |
| Abl.          | Thyrsid-e.                    |     | Tiber-i                              |
| (i) Sing. N.  | Nere-is                       | (i) | Erinn-ys                             |
| G.            | Nereid-is or Nere-<br>id-os   |     | Erinny-is or Erin-ny-es.             |
| D.            | Nereid-i                      |     | Erinny-i                             |
| Acc.          | Nereid-em or Ne-<br>reid-a.   |     | Erinn-ym, Erinn-yn, or Erin-<br>ny-a |
| V.            | Nere-i                        |     | Erinn-y                              |
| Abl.          | Nereid-e.                     |     | Erinny-e.                            |
| Plur. N.      | Nereid-es                     |     | Erinny-es                            |
| G.            | Nereid-um.                    |     | Erinny-um                            |
| D.            | Nereid-ibus or Nereis-in      |     | Erinny-sin                           |
| Acc.          | Nereid-es or Nereid-as        |     | Erinny-as                            |
| V.            | Nereid-es                     |     | Erinny-es                            |
| Abl.          | Nereid-ibus or Nerei-sin.     |     | Erinny-ꝑ.                            |



## II. PATRONYMICS.

PATRONYMICS are Proper Names, which denote the descendant, by derivation from the name of his father or ancestor. They are Masculine or Feminine. Masculine Patronymics end in *es* of the First Declension. Feminine, in *is* or *as* of the Third, or in *ne* of the First Declension.

### A. Patronymics derived from Nouns of the First Declension in *as*, *ꝑs*:

#### (a) Masculine.

1. Æne-ꝑdes, *son of* Æne-as.
2. Laert-iades . . . Laert-es.

#### (b) Feminine.

1. Æne-is, *daughter of* Æne-as.
2. Laert-ias . . . Laert-es.

**B. Patronymics derived from Nouns of the Second Declension :—**

(a) **Masculine.**

1. Tyndar-ides, *son of Tyndar-us.*
2. Thesti-ades . . . Thesti-us.

(b) **Feminine.**

1. Tyndar-is, *daughter of Tyndar-us.*
2. Thesti-as . . . Thesti-us.
3. Neptun-ine . . . Neptun-us.
4. Acrisi-one . . . Acrisi-us.

**C. Patronymics derived from Heteroclite Nouns in -us of the Second and Third Declensions :—**

(a) **Masculine.**

- Nel-ides, *son of Nel-eus.*

(b) **Feminine.**

1. Nel-eis, *daughter of Nel-eus.*
2. Peli-as . . . Pel-eus.

**D. Patronymics derived from Nouns of the Third Declension :—**

(a) **Masculine.**

1. Agenor-ides, *son of Agenor.*
2. Cecrop-ides . . . Cecrop-s.
3. Mino-ides . . . Mino-s.
4. Arsac-ides . . . Arsac-es.
5. Atlant-iades . . . Atlas.
6. Telamon-iades . . . Telamon.

(b) **Feminine.**

1. Agenor-is, *daughter of Agenor.*
2. Cecrop-is . . . Cecrop-s.
3. Mino-is . . . Mino-s.
4. Arsac-is . . . Arsac-es.
5. Atlant-is }      Atlant-ias } . . . Atlas.
6. Telamon-ias . . . Telamon.

*Obs.* Personal Names of both Genders are also derived from names of places ; as, Mæon-ides, Mæon-is, *native of Mæon-ia.*



### III. FEMININE FORMS CORRESPONDING TO MASCULINE.

|                                    |  |                                     |
|------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1. us . . a : as,                  |  |                                     |
| Masc. equ-us, <i>a horse.</i>      |  | Fem. equ-a, <i>a mare.</i>          |
| 2. er . . ra : as,                 |  |                                     |
| Masc. magist-er, <i>a master.</i>  |  | Fem. magist-ra, <i>a mistress.</i>  |
| 3. tor . . trix : as,              |  |                                     |
| Masc. vic-tor, <i>a conqueror.</i> |  | Fem. vic-trix, <i>a conqueress.</i> |

4. a . is : as,  
Masc. Pers-a, *a Persian*. Fem. Pers-is, *a Persian woman*.

5. ix . issa : as,  
Masc. Phœn-ix, *a Phœnician*. Fem. Phœn-issa, *a Phœnician woman*.

Add to these many particular forms: as, leo, *a lion*; leona, *a lioness*; rex, *a king*; regina, *a queen*: Cres, *a Cretan*; Cressa, *a Cretan woman*: Tros, *a Trojan*; Troas, *a Trojan woman*: Thrax, *a Thracian*; Threïssa, *a Thracian woman*: Laco, *a Lacedæmonian*; Lacæna, *a Lacedæmonian woman*: Liby, *a Libyan*; Libyssa, *a Libyan woman*, &c.



## IV. ADVERBS.

### A. ADVERBS OF PLACE.

#### (1.) Rest in a Place.

|                                    |              |                  |
|------------------------------------|--------------|------------------|
| Ubi, <i>where?</i>                 | ubiubi,      | } wheresoever.   |
| ibi,                               | ubicumque,   |                  |
| illie,                             | ubique,      | } everywhere.    |
| istic,                             | passim,      |                  |
| hic, <i>here</i> .                 | prope,       | <i>near</i> .    |
| utrobique, <i>in both places</i> . | procul,      |                  |
| utrimque, <i>on both sides</i> .   | intus,       | <i>within</i> .  |
| ibidem, <i>in the same place</i> . | intrinsecus, |                  |
| alibi, <i>elsewhere</i> .          | extrinsecus, | <i>without</i> . |
| alicubi, <i>somewhere</i> .        | foris,       |                  |
| usquam, } <i>anywhere</i> .        | subtus,      | <i>beneath</i> . |
| uspiam, }                          | superne,     | <i>above</i> .   |
| nusquam, } <i>nowhere</i> .        | inferne,     | <i>below</i> .   |
| nullibi,                           | præsto,      | <i>at hand</i> . |
| ubivis, } <i>where you will</i> .  | peregre,     | <i>abroad</i> .  |
| ubilibet,                          |              |                  |

#### (2.) Motion to a Place.

|                                   |            |                                |
|-----------------------------------|------------|--------------------------------|
| Quo, <i>whither?</i>              | quovis,    | } whither you will.            |
| eo,                               | quolibet,  |                                |
| illuc, } <i>thither</i> .         | utrovis,   | } whither of the two you will. |
| istuc,                            | quoquo,    |                                |
| huc, <i>hither</i> .              | quocumque, | } whither soever.              |
| eodem, <i>to the same place</i> . | intro,     |                                |
| alio, <i>to another place</i> .   | foras,     | <i>to without</i> .            |
| quo,                              |            |                                |
| aliquo, }                         |            |                                |
| quopiam,                          |            |                                |

(3.) Motion towards a Place (*versus* or *versum*).

|                                                      |                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Quosum, whitherward?</i>                          | <i>deorsum, downwards.</i>            |
| <i>illorsum, thitherward.</i>                        | <i>sursum, upwards.</i>               |
| <i>horsum, hitherward.</i>                           | <i>retrorsum, backwards.</i>          |
| <i>aliorum, towards another quarter.</i>             | <i>prorsus, straightforward.</i>      |
| <i>utraque versum, towards both quarters.</i>        | <i>seorsum, sideways.</i>             |
| <i>aliquorsum, towards some quarter.</i>             | <i>adversum, } towards, against.</i>  |
| <i>quaque versus, or -um, towards every quarter.</i> | <i>adversus, }</i>                    |
| <i>introrsum, inwards.</i>                           | <i>dextrorsum, towards the right.</i> |
|                                                      | <i>sinistrorsum, towards the left</i> |

## (4.) Motion from a Place.

|                                          |                                           |
|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>Unde, whence?</i>                     | <i>undevis, } from which side you</i>     |
| <i>inde,</i>                             | <i>undeliberet, } will.</i>               |
| <i>illinc,</i>                           | <i>undeunde, }</i>                        |
| <i>istinc,</i>                           | <i>undecumque, }</i>                      |
| <i>hinc, hence.</i>                      | <i>eminus, from far.</i>                  |
| <i>utrimque, from both sides.</i>        | <i>cominus, from near, close.</i>         |
| <i>indidem, from the same place.</i>     | <i>funditus, from the ground, utterly</i> |
| <i>aliunde, from elsewhere.</i>          | <i>radicitus, }</i>                       |
| <i>alicunde, from some place.</i>        | <i>stirpitus, }</i>                       |
| <i>undique,</i>                          | <i>caelitus, from heaven.</i>             |
| <i>undique versus, } from all sides.</i> | <i>divinitus, from the gods.</i>          |

## (5.) Motion by a Way.

|                             |                                           |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>Quà, which way?</i>      | <i>quavis, } which way you will.</i>      |
| <i>èà,</i>                  | <i>qualibet, }</i>                        |
| <i>illac,</i>               | <i>utravis, which of the two ways you</i> |
| <i>istac,</i>               | <i>will.</i>                              |
| <i>hac, this way.</i>       | <i>quaqua, } which way soever.</i>        |
| <i>utràque, both ways.</i>  | <i>quacumque, }</i>                       |
| <i>èàdem, the same way.</i> | <i>rectà, straight.</i>                   |
| <i>alià, another way.</i>   | <i>dextrà, to the right.</i>              |
| <i>aliqua, } some way.</i>  | <i>sinistrà, to the left.</i>             |
| <i>quadam, }</i>            |                                           |

## B. ADVERBS OF TIME.

## (1.) When?

|                                |                                         |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>Quando, when?</i>           | <i>dudum,</i>                           |
| <i>nunc, } now.</i>            | <i>pridem,</i>                          |
| <i>modò,</i>                   | <i>jamdudum, }</i>                      |
| <i>hodie, to-day.</i>          | <i>nuper, lately.</i>                   |
| <i>tunc, } then.</i>           | <i>nudiustertius, three days since.</i> |
| <i>tum, }</i>                  | <i>ante hac, }</i>                      |
| <i>neri, yesterday.</i>        | <i>ante, }</i>                          |
| <i>pridie, the day before.</i> | <i>antea }</i>                          |

|                                           |                                     |
|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| jamdiu, <i>long since.</i>                | nonnunquam,                         |
| jam, <i>now, presently.</i>               | aliquando,                          |
| jamjam, <i>directly.</i>                  | quandoque,                          |
| mox, } <i>soon</i>                        | quondam,                            |
| cito, } <i>soon</i>                       | olim,                               |
| statim,                                   | interim, <i>interea, meanwhile.</i> |
| confestim,                                | interdum, <i>sometimes.</i>         |
| ilicet,                                   | unquam, <i>ever.</i>                |
| illico,                                   | tandem, <i>at length.</i>           |
| protinus,                                 | quandocumque, <i>whencesoever</i>   |
| eras, <i>to-morrow.</i>                   | alias, <i>at another time.</i>      |
| postridie, <i>the following day.</i>      | vixdum,                             |
| perendie, <i>the day after to-morrow.</i> | nondum,                             |
| post,                                     | nunquam, <i>never.</i>              |
| postea,                                   | semper, <i>always.</i>              |
| posthac,                                  |                                     |
| postmodum,                                |                                     |
| postmodo,                                 |                                     |

## (2.) How long ?

|                                           |                                |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Quamdiu, <i>how long?</i>                 | tantisper, <i>so long.</i>     |
| diu, <i>long.</i>                         | parumper,                      |
| aliquamdiu, } <i>some length of time.</i> | paulisper,                     |
| aliquamvisper, }                          | for a short time.              |
| tamdiu, <i>so long.</i>                   | adhuc, <i>hitherto.</i>        |
|                                           | in perpetuum, <i>for ever.</i> |

## (3.) How often ?

|                                   |                            |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Quoties, <i>how often?</i>        | rursus, } <i>again.</i>    |
| toties, <i>so often.</i>          | iterum,                    |
| quotidie, <i>daily.</i>           | plerumque, <i>usually.</i> |
| quotannis, <i>yearly.</i>         | sæpe, <i>often.</i>        |
| aliquoties, <i>several times.</i> | crebrò, <i>frequently.</i> |
| identidem, <i>repeatedly.</i>     | raro, <i>seldom.</i>       |
| interdum, } <i>now and then.</i>  | semel, <i>once.</i>        |
| subinde, }                        | bis, <i>twice.</i>         |
| denuo, <i>afresh.</i>             | &c. &c. see § 31.          |

## C. ADVERBS OF ORDER.

|                                           |                           |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Primum, primò, <i>in the first place.</i> | insuper, <i>moreover.</i> |
| deinde, <i>in the second place.</i>       | tertiò, <i>thirdly.</i>   |
| deinceps, <i>next.</i>                    | denique,                  |
| porrò, } <i>moreover.</i>                 | postremo,                 |
| præterea,                                 | finally.                  |

## D. ADVERBS OF QUALITY, MANNER, AND DEGREE.

(1.) Interrogative : as, cur, quare, quamobrem, *why?* num, an, *whether?* quomodo, *how?* &c.

(2.) Qualitative : as, bene, *well*; male, ill; pulchrè, *beautifully* fortiter *bravely*; sapienter, *wisely*; with many others derived from Adjectives.

(3.) Intensive : as, magnoperè, maximè, *very greatly*; magis, *more*; multùm, *much*; oppidò, perquàm, valdè, *very*; longè, *by far*; potissimàm, præcipuè, præsertim, *especially*; omninò, penitus, prorsus, *wholly*; potius, *rather*; satis, *enough*; nimis, nimìum, *too much*, &c.

(4.) Diminutive : as, parum, *too little*; fermè, ferè, penè, prope, promodum, aknost; paullum, paullulum, *very little*, paullo, *by a little*; ægrè, vix, *scarcely*, &c.

(5.) Limitative : as, duntaxat, modò, tantummodi, solùm, tantùm, *only*; plerumque, *generally*, &c.

(6.) Modal : as, adeo, ita, sic, *so*; itidem, similiter, *in like manner*; aliter, secus, *otherwise*, &c.

(7.) Graduative : as, paullatim, sensim, &c., *by degrees*.

(8.) Distributive : as, sigillatim, separatim, *individually*; partiùn, *partly*; viritim, *man by man*, &c.

(9.) Collective : as, pariter, simul, unà, *together*, &c.

(10.) Affirmative : as, certè, etiam, ita, næ, planè, profectò, sanè, utique, *yes, truly*, &c.

(11.) Negative : as, haud, non, *not*, *no*; nequaquam, haudquaquam, neutiquam, minimè, *by no means*, &c.

(12.) Dubitative : as, fors, forsan, forsitan, fortasse, fortassis, *perhaps*; forte, *by chance*, &c.

(13.) Asseverative : as, pol, edepol, *by Pollux*; hercule, mehercule, *by Hercules*, &c.

(14.) Definitive : as, nempe, nimiruìn, scilicet, videlicet, *to wit*, &c.

## V. CONJUNCTIONS.

### A. CO-ORDINATIVE.

(1.) Sociative : et, que, atque, ac, *and*; etiam, quoque, item, *also*, neque, nec, *nor*; et... et, *both... and*; neque... neque, *neither... nor*.

(2.) Adversative : at, ast, sed, autem, verum, verò, *but*; tamen, *yet*; attamen, verumtamen, *but yet*; atqui, *but indeed*; enimvero, verum enimvero, *but in truth*.

(3.) Dissociative : aut, vel, ve, *or*; aut... aut, vel... vel, ve... ve, *either... or*.

(4.) Causal : nam, namque, enim, etenim, *for*; enimvero, *for in truth*.

(5.) Conclusive : eo, ideo, idcirco, propterea, *on that account*; itaque, ergo, igitur, *therefore*; proinde, *accordingly*; quocirca, quamobrem, quare, quapropter, *wherefore*.

### B. SUBORDINATIVE.

(1.) Local : ubi, *where*; unde, *whence*; quo, *whither*; qua, *in which direction*; quatenus, *how far*.

(2.) Temporal : quum, quando, ut, ubi, *when*; dum, donec, *whilst*, *until*; quoad, *as long as*, *until*; priusquam, antequam, *before*; postquam, ut, *after, since*; simul atque, *as soon as*; quoties, *as often as*.

(3.) Causal : quum, quoniam, quandoquidem, *since*; quia, quòd, *because*; quippe, *for that*.

(4.) Conditional : si, *if*; nisi, *unless*; sin, *but if*; dum, dumur *provided that*; sive, *or if*; seu... sive, *whether... or*.

(5.) Concessive: etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, quamquam, quamvis, ut, licet, although.

(6.) Final: ut, *in order that*; quo, *that*; ne, *that...not, lest*; neve, neu, *and that...not, and lest*; quominus, *but that, that...not*.

(7.) Consecutive: ut, *so that*; quin, *but that*; *that...not*.

(8.) Comparative: ut, sicut, velut, cœu, *as*; tamquam, quasi, *as if*.

(9.) Conclusive: cur, quamobrem, quare, *why, wherefore*.

(10.) Modal: quomodo, quemadmodum, quam, *how, &c.*

(11.) Optative: utinam, si, O si, *would that*.



## VI. INTERJECTIONS.

(1.) Invocative: O! heus! ohe! eho! ehodum! O! ho! ejah, come!

(2.) Moustative: en, ecce, lo!

(3.) Admirative: O! au! hui! hem! ehem! vah! atat! papæ ha! oh!

(4.) Jubilative: io! evoe! hurra! eu! euge! bravo! well-done!

(5.) Lamentative: hei! heu! eheu! ah! vœ! proh! alas, woe's me!



## VII. ORTHOGRAPHY.

The Orthography of the Latin language is very unsettled, on account of the uncertain etymology of many words, and the changes which took place from time to time in the manner of speaking and writing.

The subjoined Table exhibits the preferable Orthography of some disputed words:—

| <i>Write</i> |                    | <i>Write</i> |                             |
|--------------|--------------------|--------------|-----------------------------|
| valētudo     | <i>rather than</i> | valitudo.    |                             |
| genitrix     | :                  | genetrix.    |                             |
| deminutio    | .                  | diminutio.   |                             |
| ceteri       | .                  | cæteri.      |                             |
| frenum       | .                  | frænum.      |                             |
| heres        | .                  | hæres.       |                             |
| lēvis        | .                  | lævis.       |                             |
| prelum       | .                  | prælum.      |                             |
| fecundus     | .                  | fœcundus.    |                             |
| femina       | .                  | fœmina.      |                             |
| fetus        | .                  | fœtus.       |                             |
| fenus        | .                  | fœnus.       |                             |
| suboles      | .                  | soboles.     |                             |
| hiems        | .                  | hyems.       |                             |
| ocius        | .                  | ocyus.       |                             |
| silva        | .                  | sylva.       |                             |
| stilus       | .                  | stylus.      |                             |
| Sulla        | .                  | Sylla.       |                             |
| satira       | .                  | satura.      |                             |
| clypeus      | .                  | clypeus.     |                             |
|              |                    | lacrima      | <i>rather than</i> lacryma. |
|              |                    | cæcus        | .                           |
|              |                    | mæreo        | .                           |
|              |                    | sollers      | .                           |
|              |                    | sollennis    | .                           |
|              |                    | Juppiter     | .                           |
|              |                    | quattuor     | .                           |
|              |                    | rettuli      | .                           |
|              |                    | conjux       | .                           |
|              |                    | have         | .                           |
|              |                    | ahenum       | .                           |
|              |                    | exsul        | .                           |
|              |                    | letum        | .                           |
|              |                    | sulfur       | .                           |
|              |                    | tus          | .                           |
|              |                    | ancora       | .                           |
|              |                    | vicesimus    | .                           |
|              |                    | Caius        | .                           |
|              |                    | Cnæus        | .                           |
|              |                    | obsonor      | .                           |

## VIII. ON THE DIVISION OF SYLLABLES.

**SYLLABLES**, if possible, begin with a Consonant, and end with a Vowel. Hence—

1. A Consonant between two Vowels belongs to the latter syllable; as, *pa-ter, a-ma-tur*.

2. When two or three Consonants come between two Vowels, they all belong to the latter syllable, if they can begin a Latin or Greek word; as, *ma-gnus, a-gri, e-sca, pe-stis, a-stra, A-bdera, pu-blicus, Ara-chne, Pa-phlago, rhy-thmus, seri-ps, a-sthma*: if not, they are divided between the two syllables; as, *an-nus, cur-ro tel-lus, an-te, pun-ctum, ar-ctus, jux-ta*.

*Obs.* 1. A compounded word is divided into the words which compose it; as, *ab-avus*: unless the first element is a mutilated word, when it follows the general rule; as, *a-ni-madverto*.

*Obs.* 2. An euphonic letter between the Compounds belongs to the former syllable; as, *neg-otium, prod-est*. But see § 94. N. 2. (1)

## IX. SIGLARIUM ROMANUM.

### Abbreviations used in the Latin Language.

#### 1. PRÆNOMINA.

|             |             |              |               |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|---------------|
| A. Aulus    | K. Kæso     | P. Publius   | Sr. Spurius   |
| C. Caius    | L. Lucius   | Q. Quintus   | T. Titus      |
| Cn. Cnæus   | M. Marcus   | SER. Servius | Tl. Tiberius. |
| D. Decimus. | M'. Manius. | SEX. Sextus. |               |

#### 2. TITLES.

|                              |                                  |                                            |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Cos. Consul.                 | Coss. Consules or<br>Consulibus. | P. M. Pontifex Maximus.                    |
| Cos. DES. Consul Designatus. |                                  | PROC. Proconsul.                           |
| D. Divus.                    |                                  | S. P. Q. R. Senatus Populusque<br>Romanus. |
| IMP. Imperator.              |                                  | TR. PL. Tribunus Plebis.                   |
| P. C. Patres Conscripti.     |                                  |                                            |

#### 3. IN VOTING ON TRIALS AND ELECTIONS.

|                   |              |                               |
|-------------------|--------------|-------------------------------|
| A. Absolvo.       | C. Condemno. | A. P. Antiquam (legem) proba. |
| N. L. Non liquet. |              | V. R. Ut irogas.              |

#### 4. ON TOMBS.

|                            |                     |
|----------------------------|---------------------|
| F. C. Faciendum curavit.   | O. B. Obiit.        |
| H. C. E. Hic conditus est. | P. C. Poni curavit. |
| H. S. E. Hic situs est.    | V. Vixit.           |

## 5. MISCELLANEOUS.

|                                      |                                     |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| A. U. C. Anno Urbis Conditæ.         | S. C. Senatus Consultum.            |
| D. D. Dono dedit.                    | S. D. Salutem dicit.                |
| D. D. D. Dat, dicat, dedicat.        | S. P. D. Salutem plurimam dicit.    |
| D. M. Diis Manibus.                  | S. V. B. E. E. Q. V. Si vales, bene |
| D. O. M. Deo Optimo Maximo.          | est, ego quoque valeo.              |
| F. Filius.                           | Tr. Pot. Tribuniciâ Potestate       |
| F. F. F. Felix, faustum, fortunatum. |                                     |

## 6. MODERN.

|                                                    |                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| A. B. Artium Baccalaureus.                         | i. q. idem quod.                          |
| A. C. Anno Christi.                                | L. or LIB. Liber.                         |
| A. D. Anno Domini.                                 | L. B. Lectori benevolo.                   |
| A. M. Artium Magister. Anno<br>Mundi.              | l. c. loco citato.                        |
| C. n. ante Christum natum.                         | l. l. loco laudato.                       |
| p. C. n. post Christum natum.                      | leg. lege or legatur.                     |
| C. P. P. C. Collatis pecuniis ponii<br>curaverunt. | LL. D. Legum Doctor.                      |
| Cet. Cetera.                                       | M. D. Medicinæ Doctor.                    |
| Cf. Confer or Conferatur.                          | N. B. Nota bene.                          |
| Coll. Collato or Collatis.                         | N. T. Novum Testamentum.                  |
| Cod. Codex. Codd. Codices.                         | Obs Observa or observetur.                |
| D. Doctor.                                         | P. S. Postscriptum.                       |
| Del. Dele or Deleatur.                             | S. T. P. Sanctæ Theologiæ Pro-<br>fessor. |
| Ed. Editio. Edd. Editiones.                        | sc. scilicet.                             |
| Etc. Etcetera.                                     | s. v. sub voce.                           |
| h. e. hoc. est.                                    | vid. vide or videatur.                    |
| I. C. Jesus Christus.                              | viz. videlicet.                           |
| Ictus. Jurisconsultus.                             | V. Cel. Vir celeberrimus.                 |
| i. e. id est.                                      | V. Cl. Vir Clarissimus.                   |
|                                                    | V. T. Vetus Testamentum                   |

## X. THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

(a) The Roman Calendar agrees with the English, except in the manner of naming the days of the month. Every Roman month had three chief days; Calendæ (Calends), Nonæ (Nones), Idus (Ides.) The Calends were always the 1st day of the month: the Nones were on the 5th: the Ides on the 13th; except in March, May, July, and October, in which month the Nones were on the 7th, the Ides on the 15th.

*Martius, October, cum Maio Julius, exstant,  
Quindecima in queis lux facit Idus, septima Nonas.*

These three days, the Calends, Nones, and Ides, were taken as points, from which the other days were counted backwards. That is, the Romans did ~~such~~ <sup>such</sup>, such and such a day *after*; &c., but such and ~~such~~ <sup>such</sup> a day *before* the Calends, or Nones, or Ides.

| Days of Eng.<br>High Month. | MARTIUS, MAIUS, JULIUS, OCTOBER, 31 Days. | JANUARIUS, AUGUSTUS, DECEMBER, 31 Days. | APRILIS, JUNIUS, SEPTEMBER, NOVEMBER, 30 Days. | FEBRUARIUS, 28 Days — in every fourth Year 29. |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
|                             | Calendas.                                 | Calendis.                               | Calendis.                                      | Calendis.                                      |
| 1                           | Calendis.                                 | a.d. IV.                                | a.d. IV.                                       | a.d. IV.                                       |
| 2                           | a.d. VI.                                  | a.d. III.                               | a.d. III.                                      | a.d. III.                                      |
| 3                           | a.d. V.                                   | Pridie                                  | Pridie                                         | Pridie                                         |
| 4                           | a.d. IV.                                  | Nonis                                   | Nonis                                          | Nonis                                          |
| 5                           | a.d. III.                                 | a.d. VIII.                              | a.d. VIII.                                     | a.d. VIII.                                     |
| 6                           | Pridie                                    | a.d. VII.                               | a.d. VII.                                      | a.d. VII.                                      |
| 7                           | Nonis                                     | a.d. VI.                                | a.d. VI.                                       | a.d. VI.                                       |
| 8                           | a.d. VIII.                                | a.d. V.                                 | a.d. V.                                        | a.d. V.                                        |
| 9                           | a.d. VII.                                 | a.d. IV.                                | a.d. IV.                                       | a.d. IV.                                       |
| 10                          | a.d. VI.                                  | a.d. III.                               | a.d. III.                                      | a.d. III.                                      |
| 11                          | a.d. V.                                   | Pridie                                  | Pridie                                         | Pridie                                         |
| 12                          | a.d. IV.                                  | Idibus                                  | Idibus                                         | Idibus                                         |
| 13                          | a.d. III.                                 | a.d. XIX.                               | a.d. XVIII.                                    | a.d. XVI.                                      |
| 14                          | Pridie                                    | a.d. XVII.                              | a.d. XVII.                                     | a.d. XV.                                       |
| 15                          | Idibus                                    | a.d. XVI.                               | a.d. XVI.                                      | a.d. XIV.                                      |
| 16                          | a.d. XVII.                                | a.d. XV.                                | a.d. XV.                                       | a.d. XIII.                                     |
| 17                          | a.d. XVI.                                 | a.d. XIV.                               | a.d. XIV.                                      | a.d. XII.                                      |
| 18                          | a.d. XV.                                  | a.d. XIII.                              | a.d. XIII.                                     | a.d. XI.                                       |
| 19                          | a.d. XIV.                                 | a.d. XII.                               | a.d. XII.                                      | a.d. X.                                        |
| 20                          | a.d. XIII.                                | a.d. XI.                                | a.d. XI.                                       | a.d. IX.                                       |
| 21                          | a.d. XII.                                 | a.d. X.                                 | a.d. X.                                        | a.d. VIII.                                     |
| 22                          | a.d. XI.                                  | a.d. IX.                                | a.d. IX.                                       | a.d. VII.                                      |
| 23                          | a.d. X.                                   | a.d. VIII.                              | a.d. VIII.                                     | a.d. VI.                                       |
| 24                          | a.d. IX.                                  | a.d. VII.                               | a.d. VII.                                      | a.d. V.                                        |
| 25                          | a.d. VIII.                                | a.d. VI.                                | a.d. VI.                                       | a.d. IV.                                       |
| 26                          | a.d. VII.                                 | a.d. V.                                 | a.d. V.                                        | a.d. III.                                      |
| 27                          | a.d. VI.                                  | a.d. IV.                                | a.d. IV.                                       | Pridie                                         |
| 28                          | a.d. V.                                   | a.d. III.                               | a.d. III.                                      |                                                |
| 29                          | a.d. IV.                                  | Pridie                                  |                                                |                                                |
| 30                          | a.d. III.                                 |                                         |                                                |                                                |
| 31                          | Pridie                                    |                                         |                                                |                                                |

[In Leap-year, Feb. 24th (a.d. VI. Cal. Mart.) was twice reckoned,— hence this day was called DIES BISSEXTUS. and leap-year itself ANNUS BISSEX-TUS.]

b) If we take the month of January as a sample, the first day was *Calendas Januariæ*. The 2d must be reckoned backwards from the Nones, which in January fell on the 5th, *Nonæ Januariæ*. But in this reckoning the day of the Nones itself must be included. Therefore our 4th of January was the 2d day before the Nones, called *pridie (ante) Nonas Januarias*. The 3d of January was *tertio (ante) Nonas Januarias*; the 2d, *quarto (ante) Nonas Januarias*; or, abbreviated, *III. Non. Jan.*, *IV. Non. Jan.* To obtain the Roman name for the 6th of January, we must begin to count backwards from the Ides, which fell on the 13th, *Idus Januariæ*. Thus, the 12th was *pridie Id. Jan.*; the 11th, *III. Id. Jan.*; the 10th, *IV. Id. Jan.* &c; the 6th was therefore *VIII. Id. Jan.* To obtain the name for the 14th of January, we must count back from the Calends of the next month, February, *Calendæ Februariæ*. Thus, January 31st was *pridie Cal. Feb.*; January 30th, *III. Cal. Feb.* &c. &c.; January 14th was, therefore, *XIX. Cal. Feb.*.

(c) From these observations it appears that we may find the Roman name for any given English day by the following rules : —

(1) If the given day is between the Calends and Nones of the Roman month, subtract its English number from the English number of the day on which the Nones fall, increased by one : the remainder will give that number before the Nones by which the day is called in Latin.

(2) Similarly, if the given day is between the Nones and Ides of the Roman month, subtract its English number from the English number of the day on which the Ides fall, increased by one : the remainder will give that number before the Ides by which the day is called in Latin.

Thus, to find the Roman name for the 4th of June, the Nones of June falling on the 5th, subtract 4 from  $5 + 1$ , or 6 ; the remainder is 2 (*pridie*) ; therefore, the 4th of June is *pridie Non. Jun.* Again ; to find the Roman name for the 10th of May, the Ides of May falling on the 15th, subtract 10 from  $15 + 1$ , or 16 ; the remainder being 6, the 10th of May is called *VI. Id. Mai.*

(3) But, if the given day is between the Ides of the given month and the Calends of the next, then subtract its English number from the total number of days in the given month, increased by two ; the remainder will give that number before the Calends of the next month by which the day is called in Latin.

Thus, to find the Roman name for the 18th of August : subtract 18 from  $31 + 2$ , or 33, the remainder is 15, and August 18th is called *XV. Cal. Sept.* For April 21st, subtract 21 from  $30 + 2$ , or 32, there remains 11 ; and April 21st is called *XI. Cal. Mai.* For February 25th, subtract 25 from  $28 + 2$ , or 30, there remains 5 ; and February 25th is called *V. Cal. Mart.*

(d) As regards Construction, *Calendis*, *Nonis*, *Idibus* are used as Ablatives of time ; and when *tertio*, *quarto*, &c., *Culendas*, &c., are used, the words *die ante* are understood. But Cicero does not use these latter phrases : he writes (for instance) *ante diem tertium Calendas Januarias*, or, abbreviated, *a. d. III. Cal. Jan.* to express December 30th, and so in every case.

Here the Preposition *ante* has, by a corruption of custom, quitted its proper place before *Calendas*, to stand before *diem* which it does not govern. So merely idiomatic is this mode of expression, that we find it used in dependence on Prepositions ; as *Consul Latinus in ante diem tertium Idus Sextiles edixit*.—*Liv. De Quinto fratre nuntii nobis tristes venerant ex ante diem Non. Jun. usque ad pridie Cul. Sept.*—*Cic.*

(e) The names of the months are Adjectives agreeing with *mensis* understood : *Januarius*, *Februarius*, *Martius*, *Aprilis*, *Maius*, *Junius*, *Julius*, (so called from Julius Cæsar, but before his time *Quintilis*), *Augustus* (so called from Augustus Cæsar, but before his time *Sextilis*), *September*, *October*, *November*, *December*. With the words *Calendæ*, *Nonæ*, *Idus*, they are always used attributively, never as Possessive Genitives : as, *Natus est Augustus IX. Calendas Octobres*.—*SUET. Memoria tenuit, me a. d. XIII. Calendas Januarias principem revocandæ libertatis fuisse*.—*Cic. Capuam venire jussi sumus ad Nonas Februarias*.—*Cic. VII. Iaus Maius aestatis initium*.—*COLUM.*

## XI. COMPOUND NUMERALS.

a. The General Rules for writing Compound Numbers, Cardinal, Ordinal, and Distributive, are as follows:—

(1) In Compound Numbers less than 20, either the smaller number without *et* precedes the larger, or the larger with *et* precedes the smaller: as, *Nos Tyndaritani in septemdecim populis Siciliæ numeramur*.—CIC. *Oc-tavo decimo ætatis anno Cn. Pompeius, nono decimo Cæsar Octavianus civilia bella sustinuerunt*.—TAC. *Gallinis ova terna dena subjicio æstate*.—PLIN. *Roscius fundos decem et tres reliquit*.—CIC. *Licet dicere decimus et septimus pro septimus decimus*.—PRISC.

(2) In Compound Numbers greater than 20, either the smaller number with *et* precedes the larger, or the larger without *et* precedes the smaller: as, *Romulus septem et triginta regnavit annos*.—CIC. *Macedo Alexander tertio et tricesimo anno mortem obiit*.—CIC. *Plinius scripsit sub Nerone naturæ historiarum libros triginta septem*.—PLIN. *Dentes triceni bini viris attribuuntur*.—PLIN.

(3) In Compound Numbers above 100, the larger with or without *et* generally precedes the smaller: as, *Leontinus Gorgius centum et septem complevit annos*.—CIC. *Annum magnum esse voluerunt omnibus planetis in eundem recurrentibus locum, quod fit post duodecim millia nougentos quinquaginta quatuor annos*.—CIC. *Sexcentesimum et quadragesimum annum urbs Roma agebat, quum primum Cimbrorum audita sunt arma*.—TAC. *Olympiade centesimâ quartâ-decimâ Lysippus fuit*.—PLIN. *Aristidis arbitrio quadringena et sexagena talenta quotannis Delum sunt collata*.—NEP.

(4) The Thousands are expressed either by prefixing the numerical adverbs *bis*, *ter*, &c., to *mille* (a construction chiefly found in poetry), or by prefixing the cardinal numbers to *millia*; as, *duo millia, tria millia*, &c.

*Millia* (better written *milia*), is generally followed by a Genitive, as in example to § 171. (b); but, if smaller numbers intervene between *millia* and the Substantive, the latter will often stand in the same case as the Numeral: as, *Tria millia et septingenti pedites ierunt*.—LIV.

(5) The Numbers above 100,000 are expressed by the Numeral Adverbs joined to *centum millia* or *centena millia*, as stated in the following passage: *Non erat apud antiquos numerus ultra centum millia; itaque et hodie multiplicantur hæc, ut decies centena millia aut sæpius dicantur*.—PLIN.

b. *Unus* is often used in Compound Numbers for the Ordinal *primus*, as in the first example to B.

c. The numbers compounded with 8 and 9 are commonly expressed by a subtraction of *duo* and *unus* from the next multiple of 10: as, *duodevigi-  
ginti* (*duodevicesimus*), 18; *undeviginti* (*undevicesimus*), 19; *duodetriginta* (*duodetricesimus*), 28; *undetriginta* (*undetricesimus*), 29; &c. &c.: *duo-decentum* (*duodecentesimus*), 98; *undecentum* (*undecentesimus*), 99.

## XII. ROMAN MONEY.

a. The *As*, or *Libra*, was originally the weight of a pound of 12 ounces (*unciae*), hence called *as libralis*, and *as grave*. It was divided into parts which were named according to their quouty, or number of ounces they contained, as follows : —

|          |                                      |         |                                      |
|----------|--------------------------------------|---------|--------------------------------------|
| Uncia    | = 1 oz. or $\frac{1}{12}$ of the As. | Septunx | = 7 oz. or $\frac{7}{12}$ of the As. |
| Sextans  | = 2      or $\frac{1}{6}$            | Bes     | = 8      or $\frac{2}{3}$            |
| Quadrans | = 3      or $\frac{1}{4}$            | Dodrans | = 9      or $\frac{3}{4}$            |
| Triens   | = 4      or $\frac{1}{3}$            | Dextans | = 10     or $\frac{5}{6}$            |
| Quincunx | = 5      or $\frac{5}{12}$           | Deunx   | = 11     or $\frac{1}{2}$            |
| Semissis | = 6      or $\frac{1}{2}$            |         |                                      |

The etymology of *bis* is doubtful (some suppose *bis triens*): *dodrans* is for *de-quadrans* (As— $\frac{1}{4}$ ): *dextans* for *de-sextans* (As— $\frac{1}{6}$ ): *deunx* (As—*uncia*). The *Uncia* was also subdivided : viz.

|           |                                                  |          |                                                  |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------------|----------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Semuncia  | = $\frac{1}{2}$ of Uncia = $\frac{1}{24}$ of As. | Sextula  | = $\frac{1}{6}$ of Uncia = $\frac{1}{72}$ of As. |
| Duella    | = $\frac{1}{3}$ — = $\frac{1}{36}$               | Scrupula | = $\frac{1}{24}$ — = $\frac{1}{288}$             |
| Sicilicus | = $\frac{1}{4}$ — = $\frac{1}{48}$               | Siliqua  | = $\frac{1}{144}$ — = $\frac{1}{1728}$           |

*Sescuncia* or *Sescunx* =  $1\frac{1}{2}$  uncia =  $\frac{1}{2}$  quadrans =  $\frac{1}{8}$  As. *Sesquialtera ratio* =  $1 : 1\frac{1}{2} = 2 : 3$ . Of the divisions of the *As*, the *uncia*, *sextans*, *quadrans*, *triens*, *quincunx*, *semis*, were represented by copper coins.

b. *As* was the Roman unit, and was used for any whole divided into 12 equal parts; which parts were called *unciae*. Hence it was applied to measure length, capacity, &c., as well as weight: and "inch," or the 12th part of a foot, as well as "ounce," the 12th part of a lb., is derived from *uncia*. It was also used to calculate interest. Thus (interest being paid monthly at the rate of so much per 100 *Asses*) :

|                     |                                     |                         |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Unciae usuræ</i> | = $\frac{1}{12}$ per cent per month | = 1 per cent per annum. |
| <i>Sextantes</i>    | = $\frac{1}{6}$ — — = 2             |                         |
| <i>Quadrantes</i>   | = $\frac{1}{4}$ — — = 3             |                         |
| &c.                 | &c.                                 | &c.                     |

*Asses usuræ* = 1 per cent per month = 12 per cent per annum.

*Asses usuræ* were also called *centesimæ*; and *binæ centesimæ* = 2 per cent per month = 24 per cent; so *quaternæ centesimæ* = 48 per cent per annum. Horace says: *Quinas hic capiti mercedes exsecat* (i. e. *quinas centesimas*). (This man slices off 60 per cent from the capital; i. e. in lending a sum of money he deducts from it interest at the rate of 5 per cent per month = 60 per cent per annum.) The meaning of *unciarium fænus*, which was the yearly interest legalised by the Twelve Tables, has been disputed. In the *Dictionary of Greek and Roman Antiquities*, it is understood to mean 1 *uncia* per *as* =  $8\frac{1}{2}$  per cent per annum.

|                                     |                                        |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| c. <i>Heres ex asse</i>             | means heir to the whole estate.        |
| <i>Heres ex deunce</i>              | — heir to $\frac{1}{2}$ of the estate. |
| <i>Heres ex semisse, or</i>         |                                        |
| <i>Heres ex diuidiâ parte</i> } &c. | — heir to $\frac{1}{2}$ of the estate. |

d. Fractions might also be expressed by the Ordinals as Denominators and the Cardinals for Numerators (above 1). Thus,  $\frac{1}{2}$  is *dimidia pars*.  $\frac{1}{3}$  *tertia pars*, &c. ;  $\frac{1}{6}$  *sexta pars* or *dimidia tertia* ( $\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{3}$ ) ;  $\frac{1}{8}$  *octava pars* or *dimidia quarta* ( $\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{4}$ ), &c. So  $\frac{1}{21}$  was *tertia septima* ( $\frac{1}{3} \times \frac{1}{7}$ ). Again,  $\frac{2}{3}$  is either *duæ tertiae*, or *duæ partes*, or *dimidia et sexta* ( $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{6} = \frac{2}{3}$ ). And  $\frac{3}{4}$  is *tres quartæ*, or *tres partes*, or *dimidia et quarta* ( $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} = \frac{3}{4}$ ).

e. The *Sestertius* (*Nummus*), or *sesterce*, was a silver coin equal to  $2\frac{1}{2}$  *asses*, and  $\frac{1}{4}$  of the *denarius*. Some derive its symbol HS from IIS ( $2\frac{1}{2}$ ), others from LLS (*Libra Libra semis*), which comes to the same thing.

The *Sestertium* (= 1000 *sestertii*) was not a coin, but a sum, and is only used in the Plural Number.

Some suppose that the Substantive joined with the Numeral Adverbs *decies*, *vicies*, &c., is a Neuter Noun *Sestertium*, only used in the Singular, and signifying 100,000 *sesterces*. Be this correct or not, the practical rule for the student's guidance is as follows : —

(1) *Sestertius*, or *Sestertii* (PLUR.) (often expressed by HS.) joined with the Cardinal or Distributive Numbers, denotes so many *nummi sestertii* (coins called *sesterces*) as in the examples cited § 172. (b).

(2) *Sestertia*, in the Plural (also often represented by HS.) joined with the Cardinal or Distributive Numbers, denotes so many 1000 *nummi sestertii* : as, in the examples cited (c).

(3) The Numeral Adverbs, joined with (or understanding) *sestertii* (Gen. sing.), *sestertiūm*, *nummūm*, or HS., denote so many 100,000 *nummi sestertii*, as in the examples to Obs. When an amount is described by more than one of these Adverbs, they must be added together if the larger Numeral stands first, but multiplied when the smaller is first; care being taken not to reckon the *centena millia*, which is understood, more than once in the whole amount. Thus, *millies quingenties* = 150,000,000 *sesterces*; but *quaterdecies millies* = 1,400,000,000 *sesterces*. When the numbers are in cipher, it is often difficult to know whether *sestertii* or *sestertia* are meant. A distinction is sometimes made by a line over the Numeral.

Thus, HS. X = *Sestertii decem*.

HS. X = *Sestertia decem*.

HS. X = *Sestertii decies*.

Wurm gives the following rule : — When the Numbers are divided into three classes by points, the right-hand division indicates units, the second thousands, the left-hand hundreds of thousands.

Thus, III. XII. DC =  $300,000 + 12,000 + 600 = 312,600$  *sesterces*. But these distinctions are not strictly observed in manuscripts.

### XIII. METRES.

#### A. LIST OF FEET.

(a) Of two Syllables —

Pyrrhichius : *pātēr*.  
Iambus : *āmānt*.

Trochaeus : *aīdūs*.  
Spondeus : *lātōs*.

## (b) Of three syllables —

|                                     |                                     |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| ••• Tribrachys : <i>rēgērē</i> .    | —•— Creticus : <i>dixērānt</i> .    |
| -•• Dactylus : <i>cōrpōrā</i> .     | •— Bacchius : <i>rēgēbānt</i> .     |
| ••— Anapæstus : <i>ānīmōs</i> .     | —•— Antibacchius : <i>rēxissē</i> . |
| •—• Amphibrachys : <i>lātīnūs</i> . | —•— Molossus : <i>dīcēbās</i> .     |

## (c) Of four syllables —

|                                              |
|----------------------------------------------|
| •••• Proceleusmaticus : <i>hōminībūs</i> .   |
| -••• Paon Primus : <i>cōndīdīmūs</i> .       |
| •—•• Paon Secundus : <i>āmābīmūs</i> .       |
| ••—• Paon Tertius : <i>nēmōrālīs</i> .       |
| •••— Paon Quartus : <i>rēgīmīnī</i> .        |
| ••—• Ionicus a Minore : <i>mētūēntēs</i> .   |
| -•—• Ionicus a Majore : <i>tērrēbīmūs</i> .  |
| •—•— Diambus : <i>prōtērvītās</i> .          |
| -•—• Ditrochæus : <i>cōndūdīssē</i> .        |
| -•—• Choriambus : <i>ōppōsītīs</i> .         |
| •—•— Antispastus : <i>rēgēbāmūr</i> .        |
| •—•— Epitrītus Primus : <i>āmāvīstī</i> .    |
| •—•— Epitrītus Secundus : <i>aūdīēbās</i> .  |
| -•—• Epitrītus Tertius : <i>aūdīvērānt</i> . |
| -•—• Epitrītus Quartus : <i>rēxīssēmūs</i> . |
| -•—• Dispondeus : <i>sūspēxērūnt</i> .       |

The Trochee is also called *Choreus*, the Cretic *Amphimacer*

---

## B. ARSIS.

As Arsis properly falls on a long syllable, in Iambic Metre it will fall on the second syllables of the feet, in Dactylic and Trochaic on the first. When a long syllable having Arsis is resolved into two short ones, the Arsis falls on the first of these; hence, when a Tribrach is put for an Iambus, the Arsis is on its second syllable; when for a Trochee, on its first. Cæsura after Arsis is called *strong*; after Thesis *weak*.

---

## C. METRICAL TERMS.

Two feet (Dipodia) make a metre in Iambic, Trochaic, and Anapæstic Verses, one foot in Dactylic and other Measures.

A Verse of one Metre is called *Monometer*.

|   |       |   |                |
|---|-------|---|----------------|
| — | two   | — | Dimeter.       |
| — | three | — | Trimeter.      |
| — | four  | — | Tetrameter.    |
| — | five  | — | Pentameter.    |
| — | six   | — | Hexameter. &c. |

Two feet and a syllable in Dactylic, Iambic, and Trochaic Verses are called *Penthemimeris*, a Penthemimer: as, *Arboribusque comæ*. — *Beatus ille*. — *Truditur dies*. Three feet and a syllable are called *Hephthemimeris*, a Hephthemimer: as, *Quid faciat lata segetes*. — *Locas sub ipsum funus*. — *Truditur dies die*. So *Trihemimeris*, one foot and a syllable; *Ennehemimeris*, four feet and a syllable. *Anacrusis* is a syllable in Thesis at the beginning of certain kinds of verse. A *Base* is a Trochee (or Spondee with Arsis on the first syllable) at the beginning of certain verses.

## D. DACTYLIC HEXAMETER.

a. The Dactylic Hexameter is also called *Senarius* from having six feet (*seni pedes*) and *Heroicus*, because the deeds of Heroes were celebrated in this measure by the oldest poets, Homer, Hesiod, &c., and afterwards by their Latin imitators Ennius, Virgil, &c.

b. When a Spondee occurs in the 5th place (which is a rare licence, and seldom to be imitated) a Dactyl generally precedes it: as,

*Cara dēūm soboles, magnum Jovis incrementum.*—VIRG.

But not always: as,

*Cum patribus populoque, Penatibus et magnis Dts.*

c. Such lines as these, being without Cæsura, are bad and inadmissible:

*Hastis campus longis circum splendet et horret.*

*Lumina dilabentem cælo duciis annum.*

*Efficientia cernite dissociabile marmor.*

d. The following rules are also to be borne in mind by the young composer of Heroic Hexameters:—

(1) A Spondaic word, followed by a stop, and belonging in sense to the preceding verse, seldom begins an Hexameter: as,

*Spiramenta linunt, fucoque et floribus oras*

*Explet, | collectumque hac ipsa ad munera gluten.*—VIRG.

This may, however, be done for the sake of emphasis: as,

*Extinctum Nymphæ crudeli funere Daphnīn*

*Flebant : | vos coryli testes et flumina Nymphis.*—VIRG.

(2) Dialysis after the 2d foot is very rare, and to be avoided: as,

*Scilicet omnibus | est labor impendens, et omnes.*—VIRG.

Unless the 2d foot ends with a monosyllable or a pyrrhich: as,

*Experiar, tu | deinde jubeto certet Amyntas.*—VIRG.

*Ecce duas tibi, | Daphni, duas altaria Phœbo.*—VIRG.

The only common exception to this rule is when *inter* or *intra* forms the 2d foot, followed by a monosyllabic pronoun: as,

*Talibus inter se dictis ad tecta subibant.*—VIRG.

If an elided syllable follows the 2d foot, it is commonly followed by a monosyllabic particle: as,

*Tum durare solum || et discludere Nerea ponto.*—VIRG.

But not always, as,

*Quin etiam patriā || excussos infesta per undas.*—VIRG.

(3) Verses with only weak Cæsuras in the first four feet are rare, but when occasionally introduced they contribute to the melody of the versification: as,

*Dicemus, Daphnīnque tuum tollemus ad astra.*

*Daphnīn || ad astra || feremus, || unavit nos quoque Daphnis.*—VIRG.

(4) The 3d foot may not consist of a single word. Such verses as the following are therefore bad :

*Et liquidi simul ignes, his exordia primis.  
Non aliter quam fervida qui freta remige findit.*

The following exception occurs in Virgil :

*Summa leves hinc nescio quā dulcedine latæ.*

But *nescio quis* was considered as equivalent to a single word.

(5) Verses without Cæsura in the 3d foot are comparatively rare : as,

*Eumenides, quibus anguineo redimita capillo.*—CATULL.

(6) A Verse, which has the strong Hephthemimeral Cæsura without the strong Penthemimeral, generally has the strong Trihemimeral : as,

*Non unquam || gravis ære domum || mihi dextra redibat.*—VIRG.

rarely the weak Trihemimeral without a Penthemimeral : as,

*Degeneremque || Neoptolemum || narrare memento.*—VIRG.

rarely the weak Penthemimeral without a Trihemimeral : as,

*Orphei Calliopea || Lino || formosus Apollo.*—VIRG.

*Armentarius Afer || agit || tectumque Laremque.*—VIRG.

rarely the two weak Cæsuras together : as,

*Una Eurusque || Notusque || ruunt, || creberque procellis.*—VIRG.

(7) Dialysis with stop after the 3d foot is rare, and to be very sparingly introduced : as,

*Montibus audiri fragor : | et resonantia longè.*—VIRG.

(8) The strong Ennehemimeral Cæsura (after the first syllable of the 5th foot) is rare and harsh : as,

*Nec saturare fimo pingui pudeat || solu, neve.*—VIRG.

When the verse ends with a quadrisyllabic word, forming an *Ionic a Minore*, this Cæsura is unavoidable : as,

*Per connubia nostra, per inceptos || hymenæos.*—VIRG.

(9) Verses, in which the latter half makes a double rhyme to the former, should be avoided : as,

*Trajicit : i, verbis virtutem illude superbis.*—VIRG.

(10) The sound and rhythm of Verses may often be suited to the sense ; thus Virgil uses Spondees to express slowness and difficulty ; Dactyls to mark rapidity and ease : as,

(a) *Illi inter sese magna vi brachia tollunt.*—VIRG.

*Ter sunt conati imponere Pelio Ossan*

*Scilicet, atque Ossæ frondosum involvere Olympum.*—VIRG.

(b) *Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum.*—VIRG.

*Sed fugit interea, fugit irreparabile tempus.*—VIRG.

*Labitur et labetur in omne volubilis ævum.*—HOR.

A final Monosyllable often expresses ponderousness : as,

*Sternitur exanimisque tremens procumbit humi bos.*—VIRG.

Crowded Elisions, especially Ethlapses, give a harsh and rugged sound to a Verse, and are sometimes used where the idea conveyed is of that character : as in the well-known description of the Cyclops :

*Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum.*—VIRG.

Both the pauses, Cæsura, and Dialysis, are often accommodated to the sense with great effect and beauty.

### E. DACTYLIC PENTAMETER.

a. A trisyllabic word at the end of the Pentameter is ungraceful, and to be avoided, though sometimes found : as,

*Abdita quæ senis fata canit pedibus.*—TIBULL.

A quadrisyllabic or quinquesyllabic termination is not so ungraceful as the trisyllabic, but it occurs seldom in Ovid, and is not generally proper for imitation : as,

*Maxima de nihilo nascitur historia.*—PROPERT.

*Lis est cum formâ magna pudicitiae.*—Ov.

b. The following additional rules for the Pentameter will be found useful by the young composer :—

(1) The first Penthemimer seldom ends with an Iambic word ; but when it does, the 1st foot is usually a Spondee : as,

*Pascebatur suas ipse senator oves.*—Ov.

But not always : as,

*Si tibi cura mei, sit tibi cura tui.*—Ov.

(2) The first Penthemimer seldom begins with a spondaic word ; seldom contains two spondees ; and begins more frequently with a dactyl than with a spondee.

(3) Elisions in the second Penthemimer are inelegant : before the final disyllable an elision, such as in the following verse, is to be entirely avoided :

*Quis scit an hæc sævas tigridas insula habet ?*—Ov.

(4) The final disyllabic word should be either a verb, a substantive, or a pronoun (personal or possessive). An adverb is seldom placed there ; an adjective or participle very seldom, unless as a predicate or with a strong emphasis : as,

*Hoc faciet positæ te mihi, terra, levem.*—Ov.

(5) The verse seldom ends with a short vowel : as,

*Qualiter abjectâ de nive manat aqua.*—Ov.

(6) The Penthemimers may end with words that rhyme singly: as,

*Huc ades, et nitidas casside solve comas.*—Ov.

But the double or Leonine rhyme is to be avoided: as,

*Quærebant flavos per nemus omne favos.*—Ov.

(7) The word preceding the final disyllable should not be a monosyllable

~~~~~

## F. THE ELEGIAC DISTICH.

a. Sentences are not often carried on from one distich to another at all: but when they are, there should be some kind of pause in the sense. Attributives are not to be so separated from the words which they qualify: but verbs and other predicates are occasionally so divided from their subjects. As,

*Languor et immodi ci nullo sub vindice somni,  
Aleaque, et multo tempora quassa mero,  
Eripunt omnes animo sine vulnere nervos :  
Adfuit incautis insidiosus amor.*—Ov.

b. The following additional Rules for the Elegiac Distich may also be useful: —

(1) The Elegiac Hexameter is much more restricted in its rhythms than the Heroic. One of the Cæsuras, strong or weak, in the 3d foot, is almost always present: almost always, too, either the strong Penthemimeral or the strong Hephthemimeral Cæsura. A Dialysis at the end of the 2d foot, after a word of more than two times, is bad. Ennehemimeral Cæsuras (except after a monosyllable), spondees in the fifth place, terminations by a word of more than three syllables, &c., must be avoided.

(2) A pause in the sense is found, oftener than not, at the close of the Hexameter. Ovid very seldom intermixes the sense from the beginning to the end of a distich: and when he does so, he takes care to make the arrangement of words as neat and perspicuous as possible: as,

*Roma, nisi immensum vires promosset in orbem,  
Stramineis esset nunc quoque densa casis.*—Ov.

(3) If the sense is carried on to the first word of the Pentameter, after which is a pause, that word is usually a dactyl, often a trochee, seldom a spondee or molossus, more rarely yet a choriambus.

(4) Elisions should be sparingly and never harshly used. It has been observed that in the first 1000 lines of the Fasti there are cut off only 4 final syllables in *m*, 7 long, and 39 short vowels, making a total of 50, or an average of only one elision in 20 lines. And of these 33 are before the word *est*.

## G. OTHER METRES USED BY POETS OF THE AUGUSTAN AGE.

### I SINGLE VERSES.

(Metres consisting of one sort of Rhythm (as the Heroic) are called Monocola.)

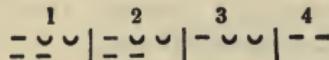
#### a. DACTYLIC RHYTHMS.

(1) Dimeter Hypercatalecticus (Pentheimimer) Archilochius Minor consisting of two Dactyls and a syllable:



*Arbori|busque co|mæ. — HOR.*

(2) Tetrameter Alcmanius, having a Dactyl in the 3d and a Spondee in the 4th foot.



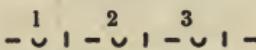
*Mobili|bus po|maria | riviſ. — HOR.*

In the case of a Proper Name Horace has a Spondee in the 3d foot: as.

*Menſo|rem cohi|bent, Ar|chyta.*

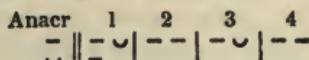
#### b. TROCHAIC RHYTHMS.

(1) Dimeter Catalecticus; three Trochees and a Syllable:



*Non tra|bes Hy|metti|xæ. — HOR.*

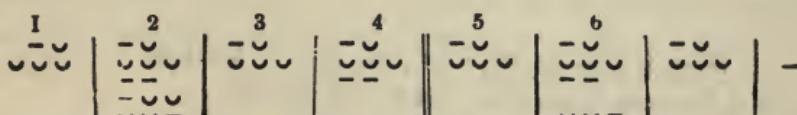
(2) Alcaicus Enneasyllabus, or Trochaic Dimeter with Anacrusis:



*Per||jura | pugna|ces A|chivos. — HOR.*

In Horace, the fifth syllable is always long; the first seldom short.

(3) The Tetrameter Catalectic was used by the Greek Tragic and Comic Poets. The Latin Poem (of uncertain age and author) called Pervigilium Veneris, is a Monocolon in this Metre; of which the following is the scheme:

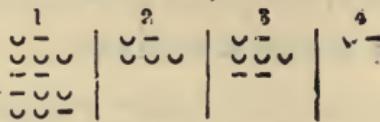


*Cras a|met qui | nunquam a|mavit || quique a|mavit | ras a|met*

Dialysis after the 4th foot is essential in general.

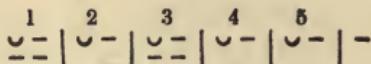
## c. IAMBIC RHYTHMS.

## (1) Dimeter Acatalecticus:



*Forti | seque|mur pec|tore. — Hor.  
Canidi|a tra|ctavit | dapes. — Hor.*

## (2) Trimeter Catalecticus:



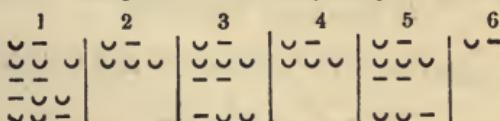
*Meâ | reni|det in | domo | lacu|nar. — Hor.  
Trahunt|que sic|cas ma|chineæ | cari|nas. — Hor.*

There is always a Penthemimetal Cæsura.

## (3) Trimeter Acatalecticus, or Senarius, which sometimes consists of six Iambic feet (Hexapodia Iambica): as,

1      2      3      4      5      6  
*Suis | et ip|sa Ro|ma vi|ribus | ruit. — Hor.  
Geme|le Cas|tor et | gemel|le Cas|toris. — CATULL.*

But usually Spondees are admitted into the 1st, 3d, and 5th places; a Tribrach may stand in any place but the last for an Iambus; a Dactyl in the 1st place, and an Anapæst in the 1st (rarely in the 5th), for a Spondee.



*Pater|na ru|ra bo|bus ex|ercet | suis. — Hor.  
Aliti|bus at|que cani|bus homi|cidam Hec|torem. — Hor.  
Pavidum|que lepo|rem et ad|venam | laqueo | gruem. — Hor.*

A strong Penthemimetal or Hepthemimetal Cæsura is necessary to the harmony of the Verse. This Verse may form a Metrum Monocolon.

## (4) Tetrameter Catalecticus Hipponacteus: as

1      2      3      4      5      6      7  
*Depren|sa na|vis in | mari || vesa|nien|te ven|to. — CATULL.*

There is a Dialysis after the 4th foot. This Verse forms a Metrum Monocolon, not used by Horace.

## (5) Scazon, or Choliambus; which is an Iambic Trimeter with a Spondee in the 6th, and an Iambus in the 5th, place: as,

1      2      3      4      5      6  
*Miser | Catul|le, de|sinas | inep|tire. — CATULL.*

Used as a Metrum Monocolon, but not by Horace.

*Obs.* The Comic Poets, Plautus and Terence, allowed themselves great liberties in the construction of Trochaic and Iambic Verses, admitting Spondees, Dactyls, and Anapæsts, in every place but the last,

sometimes even Proceleusmaties; with frequent Hiatus and other licences: as,

(a) *Juben' an|non ju|bes as|titui| aulas, | patinas | elui.* — PLAUT.  
*Ad te ad|venio| spem, sa|ludem | consili|um, auxili|um app|etens.* — TER.

(b) *Hoc pater| ac domi|nus in|terest : | hoc qui | facit,*  
*Fatea|tur ne|scire in|pera|re li|beris.* — TER.

The Iambic Trimeters of the fabulist Phædrus resemble these, but take fewer feet of three syllables and fewer licences.

#### d. IONIC RHYTHMS.

(1) Ionicus a minore Dimeter Acatalecticus.

1            2  
      u — | u —  
*Patruæ ver|bera linguaæ.* — HOR.

(2) Ionicus a minore Tetrameter Acatalecticus.

1            2            3            4  
      u — | u — | u — | u —  
*Miserarum est | neque amori | dare ludum, | neque dulci.* — HOR.

#### e. MIXED RHYTHMS.

1. Logaœdic. The Logaœdic Rhythm is that in which Dactyls are followed by Trochees. An Anacrusis or a Base often begins it, and sometimes a Choriambus is inserted.

(1) Adonius, consisting of Dactyl and Trochee (Dactylus simplex simpliciter Trochaicus):

1            2  
      — u | —  
*Risit A|pollo.* — HOR.

(2) Aristophanius, consisting of Dactyl and two Trochees (Dactylus simplex dupliciter Trochaicus):

1            2            3  
      — u | — | —

*Lydia | dic per | omnes.* — HOR.

After the Dactyl there is always Dialysis.

(3) Pherecrateus, consisting of an Adonius preceded by a Base, which, in Horace, is always in Spondaic; in Catullus, almost always Trochaic:

Base      1            2  
      — — || — u | — —

*Vix du| rare ca|rinaæ.* — HOR.

*Lute|umve pa|paver.* — CATULL.

(4) Glyconeus, consisting of Dactyl, Trochee, and Syllable (Dactylus simplex dupliciter Trochaicus Catalecticus); preceded by a Base, which, in Horace, is almost always Spondaic; in Catullus, usually Trochaic.

Base      1            2  
      — — || — u | — — | —

*Mater || sæva Cu|pidi|num.* — HOR.

*Tardat || ingenu|us pu|dor.* — CATULL.

(5) Asclepiadeus Minor, consisting of a Choriambus preceded by a Spondaic Base, and followed by Dactylus simplex dupliciter Trochaicus Catalecticus :

Base	1	2	3
— —    - u u -   - u u   - u   -			

*Mæce||nas atavis | edite | regi|bus. — HOR.*

Horace almost always has a Dialysis after the Choriambus. An Elision rarely follows it : as,

*Audi||tam modere|re arbore|bus fi|dem. — HOR.*

It is used as Metrum Monocolon.

(6) Asclepiadeus Major, which differs from A. Minor only in having two successive Choriambic feet instead of one,

Base	1	2	3	4
— —    - u u -   - u u -   - u u   - u   -				

Base  
*Nullam || Vare sacrâ | vite priùs | severis | arbo|rem. — HOR.*

Horace has a Dialysis after each Choriambus. This is used as Metrum Monocolon.

(7) Alcaicus Decasyllabus, consisting of two Dactyls and two Trochees (Dactylus duplex dupliciter Trochaicus) :

1	2	3	4
- u u   - u u   - u   - u			

*Nec vete|res agi|tantur | orni. — HOR.*

If there is a Dialysis after the first dactyl, there should be none after the second. Such a line as the following would be bad :

*Omnia perfidus ille dixit.*

A weak Cæsura in the second dactyl is generally to be avoided : Horace has few such verses as

*O Thaliarche || merum diota. — HOR.*

*Me cichorea || levesque malvæ. — HOR.*

(8) Phalæcius Hendecasyllabus, consisting of a Dactyl and three Trochees (Dactylus simplex tripliciter Trochaicus) preceded by a Base (usually Spondaic), is a Metrum Monocolon, not used by Horace.

Base	1	2	3	4
— —    - u u   - u   - u   - u				

*Soles | occide|re et re|dire | possunt. — CATULL.*

Instead of the Spondaic base we sometimes find an Iambus, seldom a Trochee : as,

*Minister vetuli, puer, Falerni. — CATULL.*

*Aridâ modò pumice expolitum. — CATULL.*

A Spondee is sometimes put for the Dactyl, but very inharmoniously.

This Verse usually has either Dialysis after the second foot, or a Cæsura after the first syllable of the third.

(9) Archilochius Major, consisting of a Dactylic Tetrameter (always with a Dactyl in the 4th place) and three Trochees (or Versus Ithyphallicus).

— 1 — 2 — 3 — 4 — 5 — 6 — 7  
— u u | — u u | — u u | — u u | — u | — u | — u

*Solvitur | acris hi|ems gra|tâ vice||veris | et Fa|voni.* — HOR.

Dialysis after the 4th foot is essential.

(10) Sapphic Minor, consisting of a Dactyl and two Trochees (Dactylus simplex dupliciter Trochaicus) preceded by a double Base (Trochee + Spondee).

Double Base 1 2 3  
— u — || — u u | — u | — u

*Nota qua se||des fue|rat co|lumbis.* — HOR.

Sappho, the inventor of this verse (as also Catullus) often used the double Trochee for Base : but Horace always lengthens the 4th syllable.

The strong Cæsura after the 5th syllable is almost always found ; occasionally the weak Cæsura after the 6th (short) syllable : as,

*Non semel dicemus || io triumphe.* — HOR.

One or the other is essential to the harmony of the verse.

(11) Sapphic Major Anacreontius ; which only differs from the last in having a Choriambus between the Base and Dactyl.

Double Base 1 2 3 4  
— u — || — u u — | — u u | — u | — u

*Sæpe trans fi||nem jaculo | nobilis | expe|dito.* — HOR.

There is a Cæsura after the 5th and a Dialysis after the 8th syllable.

(12) Versus Alcaicus Hendecasyllabus, consisting of Dactylus simplex dupliciter Trochaicus Catalecticus, preceded by a double Base (Trochee + Spondee), which is again preceded by an Anacrusis.

Anacr. Base 1 2  
— || — u — | — u u | — u | —

*Mors || et fugacem || persequi|tur vi|rum.* — HOR.

*Vi||des ut altâ || stet nive | candi|dum.* — HOR.

[The young composer may scan it as consisting of a Spondee (or Iambus), an Iambus, long syllable, and two dactyls.

— — | u — | — | — u u | — u u |

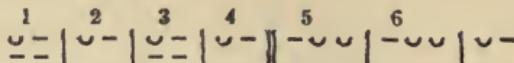
*Qui pri|mus al|mâ | risit a|doreâ.* — HOR.]

The short Anacrusis is used but seldom. There is Dialysis after the 5th syllable. An elision sometimes occurs there : as,

*Regum timendo||rum in proprios greges.* — HOR.

## 2. Asynartete.

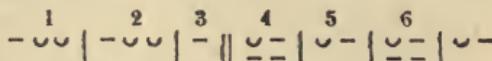
(1) *Iambelegus Archilochius*, composed of an Iambic Dimeter and a Dactylic Penthemimer.



*Tu vi|na Tor|quato | move || consule | pressa me|o.* — HOR.

**There is a Dialysis at the end of the Dimeter.**

(2) Elegiambus Archilochius, in which a Dactylic Penthemimer goes before an Iambic Dimeter.



Jussus ab ire do mum || fere bar in certo | pede.—Hor.

There is a Dialysis at the end of the Penthemimer.

(a) — The Anapaestic Rhythm is the converse of the Dactylic. It admits however Spondees and Dactyls; in which the Ictus falls on the second syllable. The most usual verse is the Dimeter, having a Dialysis after the second foot; as,

O va|ne pudor || falsum} que decus.

The Greek poets used this verse in systems ending with a Dimeter Catalectic, called *Versus Parœmiacus*; but the Roman poets have not imitated them. A monometer is sometimes introduced (in Greek always before the *Parœmiacus*), called a Base. In Anapæstic verse alone, the last syllable of a verse is not held common, and makes position with the succeeding verse.

(b) — The Saturnian Verse, an old Roman measure, not used in the best ages, consisted of an Iambic Heptemimer followed by an Ithyphallic: as,

*Dabunt | malum | Metel|li || Nævi|o po|ëtæ.*

**Many licenses were admitted.**

## II. ON STROPHIC METRES.

Metres consisting of more than one kind of verse in a recurring order are called Strophic. A Metre containing two kinds is called Dicolon; three, Tricolon, &c. When two Verses alternate, the metre is called Distichon (or Distrophon); when the recurrence takes place after four lines, Tetraстиchон (or Tetrastrophon). The following Strophic Metres occur in the Augustan poets.

**a. DICOLA DISTICHA or DISTROPHIA.**

### (1) Metrum Hippocrateum.

### Trochaic. Dimeter Catalectic. + Iambic. Trimeter Catalectic.

### *Nen ebur nevne auren*

*Mes reniset in dorso lacunar.* — Heb. 2, 19.

The Trochaic Verse admits only Trochees. The Iambic has no Dactyls or Anapæsts; and always has the Penthemimeral Cæsura.

(2) Metrum Iambicum Senarium Quaternarium.  
Iambic. Trim. Acat. + Iambic. Dim. Acat.

*Beatus ille qui procul negotiis,  
Ut præsa gens mortalium.* — HOR. EPOD. 2.

(3) Metrum Archilochium Primum.

Dactyl. Hexam. Acat. + Dactyl. Archilochius Minor.

*Diffugere nives ; redeunt jam gramina campis,  
Arboribusque comæ.* — HOR. OD. 4, 7.

(4) Metrum Archilochium Secundum.

Dactyl. Hexam. Acat. + Iambelegus Archilochius.

*Horrida tempestas cælum contraxit, et imbræ  
Nivesque deducunt Jovem ; nunc mare nunc siluæ.*

— HOR. EPOD. 13

(5) Metrum Archilochium Tertium.

Iambic. Trim. Acat. + Elegiambus Archilochius.

*Petti, nihil me, sicut antea, juvat  
Scribere versiculos Amore percussum gravi.* — HOR. EPOD. 11.

(6) Metrum Archilochium Quartum.

Logaædicus Archilochius Major + Iamb. Trim. Cat.

*Solvitur acris hyems gratâ vice veris et Favoni,  
Trahuntque siccas machinæ carinas.* — HOR. OD. 1, 4.

The Iambic line always has a Spondee in the third place, and admits no trisyllabic feet.

(7) Metrum Pythiambicum Primum.

Dactyl. Hexam. Acat. + Iamb. Dim. Acat.

*Mollis inertia cur tantam diffuderit imis  
Oblivionem sensibus.* — HOR. EPOD. 14.

(8) Metrum Pythiambicum Secundum.

Dactyl. Hexam. Acat. + Hexapodia Iambica.

*Altera jam teritur bellis civilibus ætas,  
Suis et ipsa Roma viribus ruit.* — HOR. EPOD. 16.

(9) Metrum Alemanium.

Dactyl. Hexam. Acat. + Dactyl. Tetram. Alemanius.

*Laudabunt alii claram Rhodon, aut Mitylenen  
Aut Ephesum, bimarisve Corinthi.* — HOR. OD. 1, 7. EPOD. 7

(10) Metrum Asclepiadeum Secundum.

Versus Glyconeus + Versus Asclepiadeus Minor.

*Sic te Diva potens Cypri,*

*Sic fratres Helena, lucida sidera. — Hor. Od. 1, 5.*

Horace has twelve Odes in this measure.

(11) Metrum Sapphicum Majus.

Dactylus simplex dupliciter Trochaicus + Sapphicus Major.

*Lydia, dic per omnes*

*Te deos oro, Sybarin cur properes amando. — Hor. Od. 1, 3*

b. DICOLA TETRASTICHA OR TETRASTROPHA.

(1) Strophe Sapphica Minor.

Terni Sapphici Minores + Adonius.

*Integer vita scelerisque purus*

*Non eget Manri jaculis, neque arcu,*

*Nec venenatis gravidâ sagittis,*

*Fusce, pharetrâ. — Hor. Od. 1, 22.*

There are 26 Sapphic Odes in Horace.

The Adonian Verse is so intimately connected with the third Sapphic line that Hiatus at the close of the latter is unusual, and words are sometimes divided between the two verses : as,

*Thracio bacchante magis sub inter-  
lunia vento. — Hor.*

An Hypermeter is sometimes found among the Sapphic lines : as.

*Dissidens plebi numero beato|rum  
Eximit virtus. — Hor.*

(2) Metrum Asclepiadeum Tertium.

Terni Asclepiadei Minores + Glyconeus.

*Jam veris comites, quæ mare temperant,*

*Impellunt animæ linteæ Thraciæ :*

*Jam nec prata rigent, nec fluvii strepunt*

*Hibernâ nive turgidi. — Hor. Od. 4, 12.*

Horace has nine odes in this measure.

c. TRICOLA TETRASTICHA.

(1) Metrum Asclepiadeum Quartum.

Bini Asclepiadei Minores + Pherecrateus + Glyconeus.

*Primâ nocte domum clade : neque in vias*

*Sub cantu querule despicere tibiæ :*

*Et te sæpe vocanti*

*Duram difficilis mane. — Hor. Od. 3, 7, 29*

Horace has seven Odes in this Metre.

## (2) Strophe Alcaica.

Bini Alcaici Hendecasyllabi + Alcaicus Enneasyllabus + Logaœdicus  
Alcaicus Decasyllabus.

*Qui rore puro Castaliæ lavit  
Crines solutos, qui Lyciæ tenet  
Dumeta natalemque sylvam,  
Delius et Patareus Apollo.* — Hor. Od. 3, 4, 61.

Horace has written thirty-seven Odes in this Metre.

The following Rules for the rhythm of the Alcaic stanza must be observed : —

## (a.) First and second lines.

(1) The short syllable at the beginning is to be very sparingly used.  
(2) The Dialysis after the 5th syllable must be generally preserved. The instances of its absence are few : as,

*Hostile aratum ex|ercitus insolens.* — Hor.  
*Mentemque lymphatam Mareotico.* — Hor.

But an Elision often occurs after it : as,

*Quo Styx et invis|i horrida Tænari.*

(3) A Monosyllable before the Dialysis is rare (unless with another preceding) but occasionally found : as,

*Nil Claudiæ non perficient manus.* — Hor.  
*Te fontium qui celat origines.* — Hor.

(4) A Monosyllable rarely occurs at the end of the line : as

*Ne forte credas interitura quæ.* — Hor.

Excepting *et*, with a preceding elision, which is not unfrequent : as,

*Judex honestum prætulit utili et.* — Hor.

## (b.) Third line.

(1) The initial Iambus (short syllable) is to be very seldom used. Horace has only 10 instances, and of these only 2 in the 3rd and 4th Books of the Odes, which are his last and most finished compositions.

(2) Horace never begins with a word of four syllables, unless an elision follows, as,

*Funalia et vectes et arcus.* — Hor.

and that very seldom : never with two disyllables. Such lines as the following are therefore bad, and to be avoided entirely : —

*Immobiles mansere Graii.  
Inter feras horret catervas.*

A Monosyllable and Cretic are also to be avoided, being but once used by Horace :

*Hunc Lesbiv sacraue plectm.*

(3) This Verse should not end with a word of four syllables. Horace has only three instances, all within the 1st and 2nd Books. Nor with two disyllables, though of this rhythm there are eight examples in the first book. Avoid, therefore, these Rhythms:

*Regumque matres barbarorum.  
Pronos relabi posse rives.*

(4) No monosyllable should end the line, except (and that rarely) *et* *si* with an elision: as,

*Cum fiore Maecenas rosarum, et. — HOR.  
Inscide diffingas retusum in. — HOR.*

(5) Hypermeters occur only twice in Horace: as,

*Sors exitura, et nos in ater|num  
Exilium impositura eymbæ.  
Cum puce delabentis Etru|scum  
In mare.*

#### (c.) Fourth Line.

(1) The principal cautions for the structure of this verse have been already given, p. 208. (7).

(2) A rhythm generally objectionable is sometimes justified by its accommodation to the sense of the passage: as,

*Juppiter ipse ruens tumultu.  
Stesichorique graves Camenæ.*

Note 1.—Modern scholars have observed that most of Horace's Odes in Metra Monocola or Dicola contain as many lines as form some multiple of 4. This has justly led them to regard such Metres as Tetraesthetic; and as such they are printed by Orelli, Dillenburger, &c. Such are Carm. I. 1. 3. 4. 8. 11. &c.

Note 2.—A careful examination of the Odes of Horace, especially of those in the 3rd and 4th books, his last and most finished works, will show that this poet carefully regarded the metrical relation of one verse to another, especially in the same strophe: that a verse ending with a vowel or *m* before another beginning with a vowel rarely occurs. Such juxtapositions as the following are therefore rather to be avoided than imitated.

*Neve te nostris vitiis iniquum  
Ocior aura.  
Fias reeantatis amicin  
Oppr.:briis, animumque reddas.*

THE END

---

Spottiswoode & Co. Printers, New-street Square, London.









RETURN TO the circulation desk of any  
University of California Library  
or to the

NORTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY  
Bldg. 400, Richmond Field Station  
University of California  
Richmond, CA 94804-4698

ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS

- 2-month loans may be renewed by calling (510) 642-6753
- 1-year loans may be recharged by bringing books to NRLF
- Renewals and recharges may be made 4 days prior to due date.

DUE AS STAMPED BELOW

JUN 04 1997

U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C042922474

80368

